The Biblatex Package

Programmable Bibliographies and Citations

Philipp Lehman Version 3.7 (with Philip Kime, Audrey Boruvka 16/11/2016 and Joseph Wright)

Biblatex 宏包说明文档摘译

Zhenzhen Hu¹ Wenbo Sheng ²

2016-02-08

译者按: 之所以摘译 biblatex, 一是出于对 keep texing 的兴趣, 二是考虑到中文资料里总体介绍 latex 的资料其实较多, 反而是在一些专项部分中文资料较少, 看宏包的英文说明当然没有问题, 但有的文档内容长达几百页, 一般用户真心没有精力去看, 即便是找一些自己需要的功能也比较麻烦, 所以考虑对参考文献的 biblatex 宏包文档进行摘译, 是希望能在这一方面有所贡献。关于这一点 Wenbo 兄也很有同感, 在几年前 biblatex 还是 2.x 版本的时候他就深入研究了 biblatex 并翻译了 1-4 节很多内容。我在 biblatex-gb7714-2015 样式宏包中提议翻译 biblatex 文档之后, 我们决定合作来推进这个事情, 尽管都只有部分业余时间可以利用, 但我们认为只要有空就积累一点, 那么终有完成的时候。

如同我在 biblatex-gb7714-2015 样式宏包说明文档中介绍的那样, biblatex 宏包具有很多强大功能比如参考文献表划分、文献集、样式定制、动态数据处理等等,在科技论文或书籍写作中特别有用 (尤其是在对参考文献著录和标注格式有特殊要求的情况下)。可以说,biblatex 是 latex 文档写作中参考文献问题的完整解决方案,也一定程度上代表了这一方面的未来趋势。总之,本项目的总体任务是完成biblatex 宏包说明文档关键内容的摘译,希望能对使用 biblatex 和对参考文献样式有深度定制要求的用户有所帮助,当然也希望能使中文 latex 资料库更为全面和深入。需要说明的是,限于作者水平,其中难免存在一些错误和理解不到位的地方,欢迎批评指正,欢迎@译者邮箱。最后感谢 CTEX 和 Latexstudio 论坛,感谢论坛上各位作者关于 biblatex 参考文献方面的工作分享和经验介绍。

目录

表	格		6
1	引言		7
	1.1	关于 Biblatex	7
	1.2	许可	7
	1.3	反馈	7
	1 4	 	7

¹Email:hzzmail@163.com

²Email:wbsheng88@foxmail.com

	1.5	前提与	j必备	8
		1.5.1	必须资源	8
		1.5.2	推荐包	8
		1.5.3	兼容的包	9
		1.5.4	不兼容的包	9
		1.5.5	Biber/Biblatex 兼容性	11
2	米九+戸			
2		库指南		1
	2.1	宋日矢 2.1.1		l 1 l 2
		2.1.1		16
		2.1.2		17
	2.2	2.1.3 条目域		ι / 17
	2.2	东 日 塚 2.2.1		18
		2.2.2		
		2.2.3		20
		2.2.4		29 33
		2.2.4		
	0.0			34
	2.3	2.3.1		35
				35 35
		2.3.2		
		2.3.3		36
		2.3.4		36
				37
		2.3.6		38
		2.3.7		39
		2.3.8		40
		2.3.9		12
		2.3.10		12
	2.4			13
		2.4.1		13
		2.4.2	排序和编码问题 4	14
3	用户	使用手	III 4	∤ 7
	3.1	宏包选	 5项	17
		3.1.1	载入时选项	18
		3.1.2	导言区选项	18
		3.1.3		55
		3.1.4		58
	3.2			58
		3.2.1		58
				5.2

3.3	标准样	式68
	3.3.1	标注样式 69
	3.3.2	参考文献样式 72
3.4	关联条	月
3.5	排序选	项
3.6	数据注	解
3.7	参考文	献命令
	3.7.1	数据源
	3.7.2	参考文献 80
	3.7.3	参考文献列表 83
	3.7.4	参考文献分节 85
	3.7.5	参考文献分段 85
	3.7.6	参考文献分类 86
	3.7.7	参考文献标题与环境 86
	3.7.8	参考文献注记 88
	3.7.9	参考文献过滤和检查 88
	3.7.10	著录文境 90
	3.7.11	动态条目集
3.8	引用命	96
	3.8.1	标准命令 96
	3.8.2	样式相关命令 97
	3.8.3	合格的引用列表 98
	3.8.4	样式无关命令 99
	3.8.5	文本命令 100
	3.8.6	特殊命令
	3.8.7	底层命令
	3.8.8	其它命令
	3.8.9	natbib 兼容命令
	3.8.10	mcite 引用命令
3.9	本地化	命令 Localization Commands
3.10	格式命	†♦ Formatting Commands
	3.10.1	一般命令和钩子 Generic Commands and Hooks 108
	3.10.2	语言相关命令 Language-specific Commands 113
	3.10.3	尺寸和计数器 Lengths and Counters
	3.10.4	多用途命令 All-purpose Commands
3.11	语言注	意点 Language notes
	3.11.1	美语 American
	3.11.2	西班牙语 Spanish 117
	3.11.3	希腊语 Greek
	3.11.4	俄语 Russian
3.12	用法注	意点 Usage Notes
	3.12.1	概述 Overview

		3.12.2	辅助文件 Auxiliary Files	120
		3.12.3	多个参考文献表 Multiple Bibliographies	121
		3.12.4	子参考文献表 Subdivided Bibliographies	124
		3.12.5	条目集 Entry Sets	126
		3.12.6	数据容器 Data Containers	128
		3.12.7	电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information	129
		3.12.8	外部摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations	131
	3.13	提示与	i警告 Hints and Caveats	131
		3.13.1	与кома-Script 类共用的方法 Usage with кома-Script Classes	132
		3.13.2	与 Memoir 类共用的方法 Usage with the Memoir Class	132
		3.13.3	标注中的页码 Page Numbers in Citations	133
		3.13.4	姓名组成部分及其间距 Name Parts and Name Spacing	135
		3.13.5	参考文献筛选器和标注标签 Bibliography Filters and Citation	
			Labels	136
		3.13.6	参考文献标题中的活动字符 Active Characters in Bibliogra-	
			phy Headings	136
		3.13.7	在参考文献分节和分部中的编组 Grouping in Reference Sec-	
			tions and Segments	137
4	样式	作者指	南	137
	4.1	概述	···	137
	4.2	参考文	· 献著录样式	141
		4.2.1	参考文献著录样式文件	141
		4.2.2	参考文献表环境	143
		4.2.3	参考文献驱动	144
		4.2.4	特殊域	146
	4.3	标注样	鉽	160
		4.3.1	标注样式文件	160
		4.3.2	特殊域	162
	4.4	数据接	€□	163
		4.4.1	数据命令	163
		4.4.2	格式化指令	167
	4.5	定制		170
		4.5.1	关联条目	170
		4.5.2	数据源集	172
		4.5.3	数据动态修改	173
		4.5.4	数据模型规范	185
		4.5.5	标签	191
		4.5.6	排序	200
		4.5.7	Bibliography List Filters	209
		4.5.8	Controlling Name Initials Generation	210
		4.5.9	排序微调 Fine Tuning Sorting	211
		4.5.10	特殊域 Special Fields	212

		4.5.11	数据继承 Data Inheritance (crossref)	214
	4.6	辅助命	·令	218
		4.6.1	数据命令	218
		4.6.2	独立判断命令	220
		4.6.3	使用\ifboolexpr和\ifthenelse的判断	230
		4.6.4	综合命令	231
	4.7	标点和	间距	240
		4.7.1	块和单元标点 Block and Unit Punctuation	240
		4.7.2	标点判断 Punctuation Tests	241
		4.7.3	添加标点 Adding Punctuation	242
		4.7.4	添加空格 Adding Whitespace	243
		4.7.5	标点设置和大写 Configuring Punctuation and Capitalization .	244
		4.7.6	Correcting Punctuation Tracking	
	4.8	本地化	字符串 Localization Strings	247
	4.9	本地化	模块 Localization Modules	249
		4.9.1	本地化命令 Localization Commands	249
		4.9.2	Localization Keys	252
	4.10	Format	ting Commands	265
		4.10.1	User-definable Commands and Hooks	265
		4.10.2	Language-specific Commands	269
		4.10.3	用户可定义的尺寸和计数器 User-definable Lengths and Coun-	
			ters	270
		4.10.4	辅助命令和钩子 Auxiliary Commands and Hooks	271
		4.10.5	辅助长度计数器和其它功能 Auxiliary Lengths, Counters, and	
			Other Features	276
		4.10.6	多用途钩子 General Purpose Hooks	278
	4.11	提示与	<u>敬</u> 生 言口	281
		4.11.1	条目集	281
		4.11.2	电子出版信息	281
		4.11.3	外部摘要和注释	282
		4.11.4	消除姓名歧义	282
		4.11.5	浮动体和TOC/LOT/LOF中的追踪器	288
		4.11.6	混合编程接口	288
		4.11.7	使用标点追踪	290
		4.11.8	本地化定制模型	294
		4.11.9	编组	295
		4.11.10	命名空间	296
附	录			297
A	双元	尼 的野	认数据源映射	297
*		hihtev		297

C.I. Alphabetic 1	В	默认继承设置 Default Inheritance Setup	298
C.2 Alphabetic 2 300 C.3 Chronological 300 D biblatexml 300 D.1 Header 301 D.2 Body 301 D.2.1 Key aliases 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格	C	默认的排序方式	299
Daiblatexml 300		C.1 Alphabetic 1	299
D biblatexml 300 D.1 Header 301 D.2 Body 301 D.2.1 Key aliases 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格		C.2 Alphabetic 2	300
D.1 Header 301 D.2 Body 301 D.2.1 Key aliases 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange sctup 236 中英文术语对照表		C.3 Chronological	300
D.2 Body 301 D.2.1 Key aliases 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 121 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表	D	biblatexml	300
D.2.1 Key aliases 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 透项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 41 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 H目期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 Li Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 Li \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表		D.1 Header	301
D.2.2 Names 303 D.2.3 Lists 304 D.2.4 Ranges 304 D.2.5 Dates 305 D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表			301
D.2.3 Lists		D.2.1 Key aliases	303
D.2.4 Ranges		D.2.2 Names	303
D.2.5 Dates		D.2.3 Lists	304
D.2.6 Related Entries 305 E 遊项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 11 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 5考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献蒂录样式 Bibliography Style 158		D.2.4 Ranges	304
E 选项范围 Option Scope 305 F 更新历史 308 表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献香录样式 Bibliography Style 158		D.2.5 Dates	305
表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 (itation style) 5考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style 158		D.2.6 Related Entries	305
表格 2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 11 3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献者录样式 Bibliography Style 140	E	选项范围 Option Scope	305
2 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性	F	更新历史	308
3 支持的语种 31 4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献蒂录样式 Bibliography Style 158	表	格	
4 日期规范 41 5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 增强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 李考文献标注样式 citation style Bibliography Style 158	2	Biber/Biblatex 兼容性	11
5 EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析 42 6 増强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献蒂录样式 Bibliography Style 140	3	支持的语种	31
6 増强的日期规范 43 7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style	4	日期规范	41
7 惟一性选项 64 8 歧义消除计数器 66 9 mcite 命令 106 10 mcite 语法 107 11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 158 参考文献标注样式 citation style 参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style	5	EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析	42
8 歧义消除计数器	6	增强的日期规范	43
9 mcite 命令	7	惟一性选项	64
10 mcite 语法	8	歧义消除计数器	66
11 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用)	9	mcite 命令	106
origdate, eventdate, urldate, 在多数场合已经够用) 155 12 Valid transliteration pairs 209 13 Field types for \nosort 212 14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 参考文献标注样式 citation style 158 参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style 140	10	mcite 语法	107
12 Valid transliteration pairs20913 Field types for \nosort21214 \mkcomprange setup236中英文术语对照表5考文献标注样式 参考文献者录样式itation style Bibliography Style158 140	11	`	
13 Field types for \nosort			
14 \mkcomprange setup 236 中英文术语对照表 参考文献标注样式 citation style		•	
中英文术语对照表5考文献标注样式 参考文献著录样式citation style Bibliography Style158 140			
参考文献标注样式citation style158参考文献著录样式Bibliography Style140	14	\mkcomprange setup	236
参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style 140	¢	·英文术语对照表	
参考文献著录样式 Bibliography Style 140	Ź	参考文献标注样式 citation style	158
域			

条目	entry	136
条目类型	entry type	10
样式	style	10

1 引言

这是关于 Biblatex 包的语法文档,使用范例文档参考文档³。快速开始,请浏览 §§ 1.1、2.1、2.2、2.3、3.1、3.3、3.7、3.8、3.12 节。

1.1 关于 Biblatex

Biblatex 包提供了一套与 ETEX 配合使用的高级参考文献工具。它重新实现了 ETEX 提供的参考文献功能。该包使用后端程序 Biber 来处理 BibTEX 格式的数据文件,并完成排序、标签生成和更多功能。参考文献的格式化完全由 TEX 宏指令控制。具备良好的 ETEX 知识就足以设计新的参考文献著录样式和标注样式。

Biblatex 也支持参考文献表细分、在一个文档内包含多个参考文献表、以及域缩写等参考文献信息表。参考文献表可以根据主题进行分块或者分段。与参考文献著录样式类似,所有的标注引用命令也可以自由定义。

提供的功能还包括:文献数据的 Unicode 支持、自定义排序、不同排序方式的多参考文献表、自定义标签和动态数据修改等。Biber/Biblatex 的版本兼容性见 § 1.5.5 节。该包可完全实现本地化,可与 babel 和 polyglossia 宏包配合使用。该包支持的语言详见表表 3。

1.2 许可

Copyright © 2006–2012 Philipp Lehman, 2012–2013 Philip Kime, Audrey Boruvka, Joseph Wright. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this software under the terms of the LaTeX Project Public License, version $1.3.^4$

1.3 反馈

请使用 Github 的 Biblatex 项目页报告 bug 和提交所需功能⁵。在提出功能需求,请确保你已经彻底研究过本手册。如果你不想报告 bug 或者请求新功能,而只是需要帮助,可以考虑在 comp.text.tex 新闻组或者 TeX-LYTeX Stack Exchange 提交问题。⁶

1.4 致谢

The language modules of this package are made possible thanks to the following contributors: Augusto Ritter Stoffel, Mateus Araújo (Brazilian); Sebastià Vila-Marta (Catalan); Ivo Pletikosić (Croatian); Michal Hoftich (Czech); Jonas Nyrup (Danish);

³http://ctan.org/pkg/biblatex/doc/examples

⁴http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/lppl.txt

⁵http://github.com/plk/biblatex

⁶http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/tagged/biblatex

Johannes Wilm (Danish/Norwegian); Alexander van Loon, Pieter Belmans, Hendrik Maryns (Dutch); Hannu Väisänen, Janne Kujanpää (Finnish); Denis Bitouzé (French); Apostolos Syropoulos, Prokopis (Greek); Baldur Kristinsson (Icelandic); Enrico Gregorio, Andrea Marchitelli (Italian); Håkon Malmedal (Norwegian); Anastasia Kandulina, Yuriy Chernyshov (Polish); José Carlos Santos (Portuguese); Oleg Domanov (Russian); Tea Tušar and Bogdan Filipič (Slovene); Ignacio Fernández Galván (Spanish); Per Starbäck, Carl-Gustav Werner, Filip Åsblom (Swedish).

1.5 前提与必备

本节介绍所需资源和兼容性问题。

1.5.1 必须资源

如下资源是必须的,否则 Biblatex 无法正常工作。

 ε -TeX Biblatex 宏包依赖于 ε -TeX 。很长时间以来,TeX 发行版就带有 ε -TeX ,并且近来 主流的发行版都默认使用。Biblatex 宏包会检查是否在 ε -TeX 下运行。只需要像平常一样编译你的文档即可,基本上是可以运行的。如果你得到错误信息,尝试用 elatex 或 pdfelatex 分别代替 latex 或 pdflatex 来编译文档。

Biber 是 Biblatex 默认的后端程序。你只需要 Biblatex 或者 Biber 中的一个后端程序。 TeXLive 中带有 Biber,也可以从 SourceForge 得到。⁷ Biber 使用 C 程序库 btparse解析 Biblatex 格式文件,这既为了兼容 Biblatex 的解析规则,也用于修正一些常见问题。详见 Perl 的 Text::BibTeX 模块(module)的手册页。⁸

etoolbox 自动加载,提供 Biblatex 所需的通用编程工具,可以从 CTAN 下载。9

kvoptions 自动加载,用于内部选项处理。可以和 oberdiek 宏包集一起从 CTAN 下载。10

logreq 自动加载,它提供的前端可用于将机器可读信息写入辅助 log 文件,可以从 CTAN 下载。¹¹

xstring 自动加载,提供了一些高级字符串处理宏。可以从 CTAN 下载。12

除了上述资源,Biblatex 还需要 keyval、ifthen 以及 url 等标准 图式 宏包。常见的 TeX 发行版中都会带有这些宏包,而且本宏包会自动加载。

1.5.2 推荐包

这一节所列出的宏包对于运行 Biblatex 不是必须的。不过,它们可以提供一些值得推荐的额外功能,或者加强已有的特征。宏包载入的顺序并不重要。

⁷http://biblatex-biber.sourceforge.net/

⁸http://search.cpan.org/~ambs/Text-BibTeX

⁹http://ctan.org/pkg/etoolbox

¹⁰http://ctan.org/pkg/kvoptions

¹¹http://ctan.org/pkg/logreq/

¹²http://ctan.org/pkg/xstring/

babel/polyglossia babel 和 polyglossia 宏包提供了多语种排版的核心架构。如果你使用美式英语以外的语言写作,那么强烈推荐使用这两个宏包中的一个。你应当在 Biblatex 之前载入 babel 或 polyglossia,这样 Biblatex 宏包可以自动检测。

csquotes 如果使用该宏包,Biblatex 会使用它的引用语工具给相应标题加上语言相关的引号。如果没有,那么 Biblatex 会使用作为后备的美式英语的引号。当使用其它语言写作时,强烈推荐使用 csquotes 宏包。¹³

xpatch xpatch 宏包为 Biblatex 宏、驱动和格式指令扩展了 etoolbox 的一些补丁命令。14

1.5.3 兼容的包

Biblatex 宏包专门为本节所列出的文档类和宏包提供了兼容性代码。

hyperref hyperref 宏包将引用转化为超链接。详见§ 3.1.2.1 一节中的 hyperref 和 backref 宏包选项。当使用 hyperref 宏包时,最好在 Biblatex 之后载入。

showkeys showkeys 宏包会打印出文档中标注和文献表中条目的内部键值。宏包载入的顺序不重要。

memoir 使用 memoir 文档类会调整默认的参考文献标题,从而与该文档类默认的页面布局相协调。更多使用提示请参考 § 3.13.2 一节。

KOMA-Script 使用 scrartcl、scrbook 或 scrreprt 文档类中的任何一个都会调整默认的参考文献标题,从而与这些文档类默认的页面布局相协调。更多使用提示请参考 § 3.13.1 一节。

1.5.4 不兼容的包

本节列出了与 Biblatex 不兼容的宏包。Biblatex 从根本上重新实现了 LATEX 的 文献功能,因此很自然地与修改这些功能的所有宏包相冲突。这并不是 Biblatex 独有的——在列出的宏包中,出于同样的原因,有些宏包相互之间也是不兼容的。

babelbib babelbib 宏包为多语种文献提供了支持,这正是 Biblatex 的一个典型特点。使用 langid 域和宏包选项 autolang 即可实现类似的功能。请注意,当载入 bable 或 polyglossia 宏包时 Biblatex 会自动调整主文档的语言。如果想要在文献中每个条 目里切换语言,你只需要以上提到的特性。具体细节请参考 §§ 2.2.3 和 3.1.2.1 以及 § 3.9 几节。

backref backref 宏包可以在参考文献中创建反向引用。类似的功能请参考 § 3.1.2.1 一节中的宏包选项 hyperref 和 backref。

bibtopic bibtopic 宏包支持根据主题、类型或者其它标准细分文献。对于按照主题细分文献,可以参考§3.7.6一节的类型特征以及§3.7.2一节中相应的。另外,你也可以使用 keywords 域结合 keyword 和 notkeyword 过滤器来实现相应功能,细节请参考§§2.2.3 和 3.7.2。对于按照类型细分文献,可以使用 type 和 nottype 过滤器。相关例子请参考§3.12.4。

¹³http://ctan.org/pkg/csquotes/

¹⁴http://ctan.org/pkg/xpatch/

- bibunits bibunits 宏包支持多个部分(例如每一章内)的参考文献。请参考 chapterbib。
- chapterbib chapterbib 宏包支持多个部分的参考文献。使用 refsection 环境和 section 过滤器可以实现相应效果。此外,你也可能需要 refsegment 环境和 segment 过滤器。细节请参考 §§ 3.7.4、3.7.5、3.7.2。相关实例请参考 § 3.12.3。
 - cite cite 可以自动对引用编号进行排序,并且将连续的数字缩写为一个区间。它也可以配置引用中的标点符号。关于引用编号的排序和缩写,请参考§3.1.2.1 一节中的 sortcites 宏包选项和§3.3.1 一节中的 numeric-comp 引用样式。关于可配置的标点请参考§3.10。
 - citeref 另一个可以创建反向引用的宏包。参考 backref 条目。
 - inlinebib inlinebib 宏包用于脚注文献这种传统引用样式。相应的功能请参考§3.3.1 中详细的引用样式说明。
 - jurabib jurabib 宏包原本用于法学和司法文件(主要是德文)中的引用,它也为人文学科中的使用者提供了一些特性。在提供这些特征方面,jurabib 和 Biblatex 有一些类似之处,但是采用的手段是截然不同的。由于 jurabib 和 Biblatex 都是那种功能齐备的宏包,鉴于篇幅这里不再赘述它们的异同之处。
 - mcite mcite 提供了分组引用的支持,也就是说,不同条目可以指向同一处引用,并且在参考文献中作为同一条目列在一起。引用组依照被引用的条目定义,不过这只在未排序的参考文献中有效。Biblatex 宏包同样支持分组引用,在本手册中称之为"条目集"或"参考文献集"。细节请参考 §§ 3.12.5、3.7.11、3.8.10。
- mciteplus mcite 宏包的一个加强版的重新实现,可以支持排序文献的分组。参考 mcite 宏包 条目。
- multibib multibib 宏包支持依照主题或其它标准细分文献。参考 bibtopic 宏包条目。
 - natbib natbib 宏包支持编号和作者—年份引用格式,以及 cite 宏包中的合并排序和压缩代码。它同样提供了一些额外的引用命令和几种设置选项。相应的功能请参考§3.3.1 中的 numeric 和 author-year 引用样式及其变种,§3.1.2.1中的 sortcites 宏包选项,§3.8 中的引用命令,以及§§3.7.7、3.7.8、3.10 中讨论的工具。也可以参考§3.8.9。
- splitbib splitbib 宏包支持按照主题细分文献。参考 bibtopic 宏包条目。
- - ucs ucs 宏包提供 UTF-8 编码输入的支持。可以使用 inputenc 宏包的标准 utf8 模块或者 X-TFX、LuaTFX 等支持 Unicode 的编译引擎来实现这一功能。

Biber 版本	Biblatex 版本
2.6	3.5, 3.6
2.5	3.4
2.4	3.3
2.3	3.2
2.2	3.1
2.1	3.0
2.0	3.0
1.9	2.9
1.8	2.8
1.7	2.7
1.6	2.6
1.5	2.5
1.4	2.4
1.3	2.3
1.2	2.1, 2.2
1.1	2.1
1.0	2.0
0.9.9	1.7x
0.9.8	1.7x
0.9.7	1.7x
0.9.6	1.7x
0.9.5	1.6x
0.9.4	1.5x
0.9.3	1.5x
0.9.2	1.4x
0.9.1	1.4x
0.9	1.4x

Table 2: Biber/Biblatex 兼容性

1.5.5 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性

Biber 的版本与 Biblatex 的版本有着紧密的联系。你需要二者正确的组合。如果发现来自于不兼容的 Biblatex 版本信息,Biber 会在处理过程中发出警告。表 2 展示了最近一些版本的兼容性状况。

2 数据库指南

本节描述 blx-dm.def 中定义的默认数据模型。该文件是宏包的一部分。该数据模型的定义由§4.5.4节中的宏实现。因此,可以重新定义 Biblatex 和 Biber 所用的数据模型,使得数据源可以包括新的条目类型和域(当然这需要样式文件支持)。数据模型规范还允许定义约束,使得数据源可以根据数据模型进行校验(使用 Biber 的--validate_datamodel 选项)。若需要定制数据模型,请参考 blx-dm.def文件和§4.5.4 节。

2.1 条目类型

本节介绍 Biblatex 默认数据模型支持的条目类型及每种条目类型支持的域。

2.1.1 常规类型

下面的列表说明了每种条目类型支持的域。注意,每种条目类型的域的使用是由参考文献样式决定的。因此,下面的列表有两个目的,一是说明有本包提供的标准样式支持的域,二是作为定制样式的模板。注意,所谓"必选"域并不是在所有情况下都严格必不可少的,详见§2.3.2节。而标记"可选"的域技术上是可选的。通常来说,文献格式规则往往不仅需要"必选"域。默认的数据模型为一些数据域、ISBN 和 gender 等特殊域定义了一些约束。但这些约束仅用于校验这些域是否合乎数据模型(通过 Biber 的--validate_datamodel 选项)。通用域如abstract、annotation、label 和 shorthand 并不在下面的列表中,因为它们独立于条目类型;§2.2.3节讨论的特殊域同样也独立于条目类型,因此也不在下面的列表中。默认的支持类型见文件 blx-dm.def,内有 Biblatex 数据模型的完整规范。

article 指期刊、杂志、报纸或其他周期性刊物的文章。它是独立个体,有自己的标题。刊物名在 journaltitle 域中给出。如果在出版物标题外,期号也有自己的标题,那么在 issuetitle 域中给出。注意,editor 及相关域指的是期刊,而 translator 及其相关域则涉及到文章。

必选域: author, title, journaltitle, year/date

可选域: translator, annotator, commentator, subtitle, titleaddon, editor, editora, editorb, editorc, journalsubtitle, issuetitle, issuesubtitle, language, origlanguage, series, volume, number, eid, issue, month, pages, version, note, issn, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

book 单卷本的书籍,有一名或多名作者,并且这些作者作为整体共享该著作。该条目类型也涵盖了传统 BisTrX 的 @inbook 类型,详见 § 2.3.1 节。

必选域: author, title, year/date

可选域: editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

mvbook 多卷本书籍。为了向后兼容,多卷书也可用 @book 条目类型。然而建议最好使用 专用条目类型 @mvbook。

必选域: author, title, year/date

可选域: editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, language, origlanguage, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

inbook 书的一部分。它是一个独立的单元,有自己的标题。注意,该类型的定义不同于标准 BmTrX 给出的定义,见 § 2.3.1 节。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: bookauthor, editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

bookinbook 类似于 @inbook, 但用于原本已经单独出版的作品。典型的例子是在一位作者的作品集中再版的书籍。

suppbook @book (书)的补充材料,与@inbook 条目类型很相近。@inbook 用于一本书中自己带有标题的部分,例如一本散文集中同一作者的单独一篇散文;而本条目用于诸如序言、导论、前言、后记等部分,通常只有一般性的标题。一些样式指南需要定制该类型的格式区别于@inbook。不过标准样式则认为它是@inbook的别名。

booklet 类似于书籍,但没有正式的出版者或赞助机构。如果可以的话,使用howpublished域可以提供自由格式的出版信息。也可以用 type 域。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, type, note, location, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

collection 单卷本的作品集,包括了一些有不同标题和作者的独立作品。作品集没有总体意义上的作者,但通常有一位编辑。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

mvcollection 多卷本作品集。为了向后兼容,也可用@collection条目类型。然而建议最好使用专用条目类型@mvcollection。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, language, origlanguage, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

incollection 作品集中的一篇作品,是一个独立的单元,有自己的标题。author 指的是 title 的作者,而 editor 指的是 booktitle(即文集的标题)的编者。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

suppcollection @collection 中的补充材料。类似于 @suppbook 之于 @book。标准样式将其视为 @incollection 的别名。

manual 技术或其它文档,不必是出版的形式。按照§2.3.2 一节,author 或者 editor 是可以省略的。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, edition, type, series, number, version, note, organization, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

misc 备选类型,用于无法归入任何其它类别的条目。适当的话,使用 howpublished 域,可以提供自由格式的出版信息。也可以使用 type 域。按照 § 2.3.2 节, author、editor和 year 可以省略。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, type, version, note, organization, location, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

online 在线资源。按照§2.3.2 节,author,editor 和 year 可以省略。该类型用于网址等本质上的在线资源。注意: 所有条目类型都支持 url 域。比如,当增加一篇来自在线期刊的文章时,应优先使用 @article 条目和它的 url 域。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date, url

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, version, note, organization, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, urldate

patent 专利或专利申请。号码或记录号在 number 域中给出。type 域用于描述类型,location 域则用于描述专利范围,如果存在与 type 领域不同的情况。注意,location 在本条目类型中以键值列表的方式处理,详见 § 2.2.1 节。

必选域: author, title, number, year/date

可选域: holder, subtitle, titleaddon, type, version, location, note, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

periodical 周期性刊物中完整的一期,比如某一期刊的某一期特刊。标题在 title 域中给出。如果该期在期刊的主标题外有其自己的标题,那么由 issuetitle 域中给出。根据 § 2.3.2 节, editor 域可以省略。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, subtitle, issuetitle, issuesubtitle, language, series, volume, number, issue, date, month, year, note, issn, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

suppperiodical

@periodical 的补充材料,类似于 @suppbook 之于 @book。如果你意识到 @article 类型其实就是 @inperiodical,那么本条目类型的作用显而易见了。该类型应用于只有一般性题目的栏目,例如固定专栏、讣告、致编辑的信等。一些样式指南会严格定制该类型的格式区别于 @article。不过标准样式则认为它是 @article 的别名。

proceedings

单卷本的会议记录。这一类型与 @collection 非常相似。它支持可选的 organization 域用于给出主办机构。根据 § 2.3.2 节, editor 域可以省略。

必选域: title, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volume, part, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

mvproceedings

多卷 @proceedings 条目,类似于 @mvbook 之于 @book。

必选域: title, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

inproceedings

会议集中的一篇文章,与 @incollection 类似。支持 organization 可选域。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volume, part, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

reference

单卷本的参考文献集,诸如百科全书或词典等。它是通用 @collection 条目的特殊变种。标准样式将其视为 @collection 的别名。

myreference

多卷本的 @reference 条目。标准样式将其视为 @mvcollection 的别名。出于向后兼容性,也可以使用 @reference 条目。不过,还是建议使用专门的 @mvreference 条目类型。

inreference

参考文献集中的一篇文章,它是通用@incollection条目的特殊变种。标准样式将 其视为@incollection的别名。 report 由大学或其它机构发行的技术报告、研究报告以及白皮书等。使用 type 域来确定报告的类型。主办机构由 institution 域给出。

必选域: author, title, type, institution, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, number, version, note, location, month, isrn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

set 条目集,是一种特殊类型条目,详见 § 3.12.5 节。

thesis 为满足教育机构的学位要求而写的学位论文。使用 type 域确定学位论文类型。

必选域: author, title, type, institution, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, note, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

unpublished 有作者和标题但是没有正式出版的作品,例如手稿或演讲稿等。需要的话,可使用 howpublished 域和 note 域提供自由格式的附加信息。

必选域: author, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, note, location, isbn, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, url, urldate

xdata 特殊类型,@xdata 条目处理的数据可以被其它条目用 xdata 域继承。这一条目类型只是作为数据容器,不可被引用或加入到参考文献中,详见 § 3.12.6 节。

custom[a-f] 用于特殊参考文献样式的自定义类型,标准样式中不使用。

2.1.2 类型别名

本节中列出的条目类型用于向后兼容传统的 BnsTeX 样式。这些别名由后端在数据处理时一并处理,样式中仅能见到这些别名所指代的类型,而不是别名本身。所有未知的条目类型一般输出为 @misc 条目。

conference BBTFX 遗留的@inproceedings 的别名。

electronic @online的别名。

mastersthesis 类似于 @thesis 不过 type 域是可选的,默认为'Master's thesis'。可使用 type 域重定义。

phdthesis 类似于 @thesis 不过 type 域是可选的,默认为'PhD thesis'。可使用 type 域重定义。

techreport 类似于@report 不过 type 域是可选的,默认为 'technical report'。可使用 type 域重定义。

www @online 的别名,用于兼容 jurabib 宏包。

2.1.3 不支持的条目类型

本节中的条目类型类似于自定义类型 @custom[a-f]。即,标准样式不支持这些类型,若使用标准样式,将会以 @misc 条目类处理。

artwork 视觉艺术作品,例如绘画、雕塑和装饰艺术。

audio 录音品,典型的有音频 CD、DVD、录音磁带或类似媒介。参考 @music 类型。

bibnote 这一特殊条目类型并不像其它类型那样用于 bib 文件中。它主要提供给 notes2bib 等第三方宏包,用于将注记并入文献中。注记应该在 note 域中。请谨记,@bibnote 类型与 \defbibnote 命令毫无关系。\defbibnote 命令用来在参考文献的开始或末尾添加评论,而 @bibnote 类型是为那些提供尾注参考条目的宏包准备的。

commentary 与常规书籍地位不同的评注,如司法评论等。

image 图像、图画、摄影和类似媒介。

jurisdiction 法庭判决、法庭记录和类似物。

legislation 法律、法案、立法提案和类似物。

legal 协议等的法律文书。

letter 私人通信,例如信件、电子邮件、备忘录等。

movie 动画。参考 @video 类型。

music 音乐刻录, @audio 的一种具体变种形式。

performance 音乐或戏剧表演和其它一些表演艺术作品。这一条目类型指的是表演的事件,而不是录制,评论或付印的剧本。

review 一些其它工作的回顾总结。这是 @article 类型的一个具体变种。标准样式将其视为 @article 的一个别称。

software 电脑软件。

standard 由一个标准组织(例如国际标准组织)发布的国家或国际标准。

video 视听记录,典型的包括 DVD、VHS 录像带或其它类似媒介。参考 @movie 类型。

2.2 条目域

本节概述 Biblatex 默认数据模型支持的域。数据模型使用的数据类型的介绍请参考 § 2.2.1 小节,实际的域列表见 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.2.3 小节。

2.2.1 数据类型

在 bib 文件等数据源中,所有的文献数据都在域中指定。其中一些域,例如 author 和 editor,可以包括一个项目列表。在 BibTeX 文件格式中,这种列表结构 通过关键词 "and"来分隔列表中的每一项。Biblatex 宏包实现了三种不同的数据 类型来处理文献数据:姓名列表 (name list)、文本列表 (literal list) 和域 (field)。此外,列表和域中还有一些子类型,以及一个内容类型 (content type)用于从语义上区分那些无法根据数据类型进行区分的域(见 § 4.5.4 节)。这一节大致概括了本宏包所支持的数据类型。关于 BibTeX 文件格式域到 Biblatex 的数据类型的对应,请参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.2.3 等节。

姓名列表(name list) 根据分隔词 and 将其解析并划分成独立的项目。然后列表中的每一项进一步分成四个姓名成分: ¹⁵ 名(given name,默认值)、姓名前缀(name prefix, 如 von、van、of、da、de、della 等)、姓(family name),以及姓名后缀(name suffix, 如 junior、senior 等)。可以通过调整数据模型的定义来定制有效的姓名成分,见§4.2.3 节。在 bib 文件中,姓名列表可以用关键词"and others"来截断。典型的姓名列表是 author 和 editor。

在默认的数据模型中,姓名列表域会为每一个姓名列表自动创建相应的 \ifuse*测试(见§4.6.2节)。同时也自动创建了一个 ifuse*选项用以控制姓名的标记和排序行为(见§3.1.3.1节)。Biber 支持定制姓名成分组合,不过目前的定义与传统 BbTpX 支持的姓名成分相同:

- 姓(family name,即'last'部分)
- 名 (given name, 即'first'部分)
- 前缀 (name prefix, 即'von'部分)
- 后缀(name suffix,即'Jr' 部分)

默认数据模型使用 \DeclareDatamodelConstant 命令(见 4.5.4 节)将支持的姓名成分定义成一个恒定列表。然而,由于姓名成分通常需要硬编码到文献驱动程序和后端处理程序中,因此,如果想支持额外的姓名成分,将其简单地添加到姓名成分列表中是远远不够的。关于如何定义和使用定制姓名成分的细节,可以参考示例文件 93-nameparts.tex。关于如何使用定制姓名成分来消除姓名歧义的信息,参见 § 4.11.4 节中的 \DeclareUniquenameTemplate命令。

文本列表(literal list) 由分隔词 and 划分成独立的项目,但各项不再进一步细分。在 bib 文件中,文本列表可以用关键词"and others"来截断。其中又有两个子类型:

(狭义的)文本列表(literal lists in the strict sense) 按照如上所述进行处理。各独立的项目就简单如实打印。典型的文本列表是 publisher 和 location。

¹⁵ 这是针对西方人名的划分。对于中文来说,姓名无需划分。当然中文名的拼音可以进行对应的划分。——译注

- **关键字列表(key list)** 是文本列表的变种,可以包括可打印的数据和本地化的关键字。对于列表中每一项,首先测试它是否是已知的本地化关键字(本地化关键字的默认定义在§4.9.2 节中)。如果是,那么打印本地化的字符串,否则这些项就按本身打印出来。典型的关键字列表是language。
- 域 (field) 通常以整体打印。有如下多种子类型:

文本域 (literal field) 会如实打印。典型的文本域是 title 和 note。

- 范围域(range field)包含了一个或更多范围,其中所有的短划线都规范 化用 \bibrangedash 命令取代。一个范围指的是一个非短划线部分后 紧跟一个或多个短划线再紧跟一个非短划线部分(比如 5-7)。任意 数目的连续短划线都只会产生一个表示范围的横线。典型的范围域是 pages 域。也可以参考 \bibrangessep 命令,它用于定制多重范围间的 分隔符。如果不包括范围,那么范围域将被忽略并生成警告信息。可以使用 \DeclareSourcemap 命令在解析范围域之前对其进行整理(见 § 4.5.3 节)。
- 整数域 (integer field) 包含的整数当打印时会转化为序数或者字符串。 典型的例子是 extrayear 和 volume 域。这些域会按照数字进行排序。 出于排序的目的,Biber 会尝试将非阿拉伯数字的表示(例如罗马数字)转成相应的整数。
- **日期部分域(datepart field)** 处理未格式化的整数,当打印时会转化为序数或者字符串。典型的例子是 month 域。在数据模型中,对于每一个数据类型为 date 的域 X,会自动创建带有如下名称的日期部分域:

 $\langle datetype \rangle \text{ year, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endyear, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{month, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endmonth, } \\ \langle datetype \rangle \text{ day, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endday, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ hour, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endhour, } \\ \langle datetype \rangle \text{ minute, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endminute, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ second, } \\ \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endsecond, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ timezone, } \langle datetype \rangle \text{ endtimezone} \\$

其中,对于任何 datatype=date 的数据模型域,〈datetype〉是在 'date'之前的字符串。例如,在默认数据模型中,日期域 date 对应的是'event', 'orig', 'url' 和空字符串 ''。

- **日期域(date field)** 处理形如 yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z] 格式的日期,或者格式为 yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z]/yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z] 的日期范围,或者其它 EDTF level 1 允许的格式,见 § 2.3.8节。日期域的特殊之处在于,日期会被解析并分解成各个日期部分类型的成分。当数据模型中定义一个数据类型为 date 的域时,会自动定义并识别相应的 datepart 组件(见上文)。典型的例子是 date 域。
- **抄录域(verbatim field)** 在抄录模式下处理,可以包含特殊字符。典型的 抄录域是 file 和 doi。
- URI 域 在抄录模式下处理,可以包含特殊字符。如果看起来不像其实质,也可以进行 URL 转义。(They are also URL-escaped if they don't look like they already are.)典型的例子是 url 域。

分隔值域(separated value field) 被分隔的文本值列表。例子是 keywords 和 options 域。通过 xsvsep 选项可以将分隔符配置成任何 Perl 正则表达式,其默认值是通常 BmTpX 中的(西文)逗号或者逗号加空格。

模式域(pattern field) 是必须匹配某一特定模式的文本域。例子有§2.2.3 一节中的 gender 域。

关键字域(key field) 可以处理可打印的数据或本地化的关键字。首先测试是否是已知的本地化关键字键值(本地化关键字的默认定义在§4.9.2 一节中)。如果是,就打印本地化的字符串,否则,就按本身来打印。典型的例子是 type 域。

代码域 (code field) 处理 TrX 代码。

2.2.2 数据域

本节所列的域是在默认数据模型中处理可打印数据的常规域。左边的名称是域的默认数据模型名,会在 Biblatex 和后端使用。右边则是相应的 Biblatex 数据类型。不同数据类型的解释请参考 § 2.2.1 节。

一些域标记为"label"域,这说明当打印文献列表时(在§3.7.3 节的意义下)这些域通常用于标签缩写。Biblatex 会自动创建支持这些域的宏,详见§3.7.3。

abstract 域 (文本)

该域用来记录 bib 文件中的摘要,在某些特别的文献样式会打印出来。但在所有的标准文献样式中都不会使用。

addendum 域(文本)

在条目末尾打印的杂项文献数据。它与 note 域类似,而不同之处是在文献条目末尾打印。

afterword 列表 (姓名)

后记的作者。如果与 editor 或 translator 相同,那么标准样式在参考文献中就会自动把这些域关联起来。参考 introduction 域和 foreword 域。

annotation 域(文本)

该域在实现带注释的文献样式时很有用。所有的标准文献样式都不使用。请注意, 该域与 annotator 域毫无关系,后者是释文(被引用著作的一部分)的作者。

annotator 列表 (姓名)

释文的作者。如果与 editor 或 translator 相同,那么标准样式在参考文献中就会自动把这些域关联起来。参考 commentator 域。

author 列表 (姓名)

title 域的作者。

authortype 域 (关键字)

作者的类型。该域会影响介绍作者的字符串。标准文献样式不使用。

bookauthor 列表 (姓名)

booktitle 域的作者。

bookpagination 域 (关键字)

如果该作品是另一件作品的一部分,该域就是被附作品的分页格式。也就是说,bookpagination 相对于 pagination 正如同 booktitle 相对于 title。该域的值会 影响 pages 和 pagetotal 域的格式。关键字应当是简单的形式。可能的关键字包括 page、column、line、verse、section 和 paragraph 等。参考 pagination 域以及 § 2.3.10 节。

booksubtitle 域(文本)

booktitle 的副标题。如果 subtitle 域指的是一个更大出版物中的一部分作品的副标题,那么该域则给出了整个作品的副标题。参考 subtitle。

booktitle 域(文本)

如果 title 域指的是一个更大出版物中的一部分工作的标题,那么该域则给出了整个作品的标题。参考 title。

booktitleaddon 域(文本)

booktitle 的附语,会用不同的字体打印。

chapter 域(文本)

作品的章节或其它单元。

commentator 列表 (姓名)

作品评论的作者。请注意,该域用于那种带评论的作品版本,即,在作者之外还有一位评论者。如果作品是独立的评论,那么评论者应该在 author 域中给出。如果评论者与 editor 或 translator 相同,那么标准样式就会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。参考 annotator 域。

date 域(日期)

出版日期。参考 month 和 year 域以及 § 2.3.8 节。

doi 域 (抄录)

作品的数字对象标识符(Digital Object Identifier, DOI)。

edition 域 (整数或文本)

出版物的版次。这必须是整数而不是序数。不要用 edition={First} 或 edition={1st}, 而要用 edition={1}。文献样式会将其转为跟语言相关的序数。也可以用文本字符串表示版次,例如"Third, revised and expanded edition"。

editor 列表 (姓名)

title、booktitle 或者 maintitle 的编辑,这取决于条目类型。如果不是 "editor"的话,使用 editortype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editora 列表 (姓名)

次要编辑, 执行汇集、编校等不同编辑任务。使用 editoratype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editorb 列表 (姓名)

另一位执行不同任务的次要编辑。使用 editorbtype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editorc 列表 (姓名)

另一位执行不同编辑任务的次要编辑。使用 editorctype 域来确定具体的角色。更 多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editortype 域 (关键字)

editor 执行的编辑任务类型。默认支持的任务包括 editor、compiler、founder、continuator, redactor、reviser 和 collaborator。默认值是"editor",此时该域可以省略。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editoratype 域 (关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editora 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editorbtype 域(关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editorb 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

editorctype 域 (关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editorc 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

eid 域 (文本)

@article 的电子标识符(electronic identifier)。

entrysubtype 域(文本)

该域用于确定一个条目类型的子类型。它不会在标准样式中使用,但可用于支持细粒化条目类型的文献样式。

eprint 域(抄录)

在线出版物的电子标识符。它大致相当于 DOI,但针对于某个档案、资源库、服务或系统。参考 § 3.12.7 一节以及 eprinttype 和 eprintclass 域。

eprintclass 域(文本)

由 eprinttype 域指明的资源额外信息。它可以是档案的一部分、标识服务的路径、某个排序的分类等等。参考 § 3.12.7 一节以及 eprint 和 eprinttype 域。

eprinttype 域(文本)

eprint 标识符的类型,例如 eprint 所指的档案、资源库、服务或系统的名称。参考 § 3.12.7 一节以及 eprint 和 eprintclass 域。

eventdate 域(日期)

会议、研讨会或其它在 @proceedings 和 @inproceedings 条目中事件的发生日期。 该域还可以用于在§ 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。参考 eventtitle 和 venue 域以及§ 2.3.8 一节。

eventtitle 域(文本)

会议、研讨会或其它在 @proceedings 和 @inproceedings 条目中事件的标题。该域还可以用于在 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。请注意,该域处理事件的主标题。诸如 "Proceedings of the Fifth XYZ Conference"之类的信息会归入 titleaddon 或booktitleaddon 域。参考 eventdate 和 venue 域。

eventtitleaddon 域(文本)

eventtitle 域的附语。例如可以用于已知事件的首字母缩写词。

file 域 (抄录)

某个作品的 PDF 或其它版本的本地链接。标准文献样式中不使用。

foreword 列表 (姓名)

作品前言的作者。如果前言的作者与 editor 或 translator 相同,那么标准样式就会在文献中自动将其与这些域关联起来。参考 introduction 和 afterword 域。

holder 列表 (名称)

@patent 的持有者(如果与 author 不同的话)。注意,共同持有者需要各自放到额外的花括号里,参考 § 2.3.3 一节。该域可以用于 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型中。

howpublished 域(文本)

不适合任何常见类型的非常规出版物的出版公告。

indextitle 域(文本)

在索引中用于取代常规 title 域的标题。如果你有一个带有"An Introduction to ..."之类标题的条目,并且想索引为"Introduction to ..., An",那么就可以使用该域。样式作者需要注意,如果 indextitle 没有定义,那么 Biblatex 会自动将 title 域的值复制给 indextitle。

institution 列表 (文本)

大学或其它研究机构的名字,这取决于条目类型。传统的 B_BT_EX 使用 school 域来表示。本宏包也支持 school,但只作为本域的别名。参考 §§ 2.2.5 和 2.3.4。

introduction 列表 (姓名)

作品导论的作者。如果导论的作者与 editor 或 translator 相同,那么标准样式就 会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。参考 foreword 和 afterword 域。

isan 域(文本)

音像作品的视听数码国际标准(International Standard Audiovisual Number, ISAN)。 不会在标准文献样式中使用。

isbn 域(文本)

书籍的国际标准书号(International Standard Book Number, ISBN)。

ismn 域(文本)

乐谱等的发行音乐作品的国际标准印刷音乐作品编码(International Standard Music Number, ISMN)。

isrn 域(文本)

技术报告的国际标准技术报告编码(International Standard Technical Report Number, ISRN)。

issn 域(文本)

连续出版物的国际标准连续出版物号 (International Standard Serial Number, ISSN)。

issue 域(文本)

期刊的卷数。该域适用的期刊特点是,每一卷由"Spring"或"Summer"等名称而不是由月份或数字确定。由于 issue 的位置与 month 和 number 类似,该域也可用于双重卷数或其它特殊场合¹⁶。参考 month 和 number 域以及§2.3.9 一节。

issuesubtitle 域(文本)

期刊或其它连续出版物中某一卷的副标题。

issuetitle 域(文本)

期刊或其它连续出版物中某一卷的标题。

iswc 域(文本)

音乐作品的国际标准音乐作品编码(International Standard Work Code, ISWC)。标准文献样式中不使用。

¹⁶ 例如增刊、特刊等。——译注

journalsubtitle 域(文本)

期刊、报纸或其它连续出版物的副标题。

journaltitle 域(文本)

期刊、报纸或其它连续出版物的标题。

label 域(文本)

如果缺失生成常规标签所需的某一数据,那么该域就是替代常规标签而被引用样式所用的指定文本。例如,当作者-年份引用样式要生成条目的引用,但作者或年份缺失,那么它就会使用后备的 label。详情请参考 § 2.3.2 节。请注意,与 shorthand 域相反,label 只是作为后备而使用。同样参考 shorthand。

language 列表 (关键字)

作品的语言。语言可以按字面或者本地化关键字确定。如果使用本地化关键字,那么前缀 lang 将省略。参考 origlanguage 域并比较 § 2.2.3 节中的 langid。

library 域(文本)

该域可用于记录图书馆名称或书架号码等信息。某些特殊的文献样式可能需要打印出来。但在标准文献样式中不使用。

location 列表 (文本)

出版地,即 publisher 或 institution(取决于条目类型)的所在地。传统 $B_{\rm IB}T_{\rm E}X$ 使用 address 域,在这里作为别名也被支持。参考 §§ 2.2.5 和 2.3.4 几节。在 @patent 条目里,该列表表示专利范围。该文本列表可用于 § 2.1.3 中的定制类型。

mainsubtitle 域(文本)

对应于 maintitle 的副标题。参考 subtitle 域。

maintitle 域(文本)

多卷本书籍(例如著作集)的主标题。如果 title 或 booktitle 域指的是多卷本中某一卷的标题,那么该域则给出了全集的标题。

maintitleaddon 域(文本)

maintitle 的附言,会用不同的字体打印。

month 域(日期部分)

出版月份。必须是整数,而不能是序数或字符。例如使用 month={1} 而不是 month={January}。文献样式会在需要时将它转换为语言相关的字符串或序数。参考 date 以及 §§ 2.3.9 和 2.3.8。

nameaddon 域(文本)

参考文献中立即在作者名之后输出的插入语。标准文献样式中不使用。该域可用 于添加别名或笔名(或者给出原名,如果作者的化名更熟知的话)。

note 域(文本)

不可归类于其它域的杂项文献数据。note 域可以用于记录自由格式的文献数据。典型的 note 域包括一些出版信息,例如"Reprint of the edition London 1831"。参考 addendum。

number 域 (整数)

期刊的期数或者 series 丛书中某本书的卷数/期数。参考 issue 以及 §§ 2.3.7 和 2.3.9。在 @patent 条目中,这是专利或专利申请的号码或记录标识。应该是整数,但实际上不必是阿拉伯数字的形式,因为 Biber 为了排序会自动将罗马数字或者阿拉伯数码转成整数。

organization 列表 (文本)

出版 @manual 或者 @online 资源以及赞助会议的组织。参考§2.3.4 节。

origdate 域(日期)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况,该域指的是原始版次的出版日期。在标准文献样式中不使用。参考 date 域。

origlanguage 域(关键字)

如果作品是译作,该域指的是原作的语言。参考 language 域。

origlocation 列表(文本)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况,该域指的是原始版次的 location。标准文献样式不使用。参考 location 域和 § 2.3.4 节。

origpublisher 列表 (文本)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况,该域指的是原始版次的 publisher。在标准文献样式中不使用。参考 publisher 域和 § 2.3.4 节。

origtitle 域(文本)

如果作品是译作,该域指的是原作的 title。标准文献样式不使用。参考 title 域。

pages 域 (范围)

一个或多个页码数或页码范围。如果这项作品是其它出版作品的一部分,例如期 刊或文集中的文章,该域指的是在那项作品中的相关页码范围。它也可以用于指 明著作中某一特定部分(例如一本书中的一章)。

pagetotal 域(文本)

作品的总页码数。

pagination 域 (关键字)

作品的分页格式。该域的值或影响引用命令的〈postnote〉选项的格式。该域应当以单数的形式给出。可能的关键字包括 page、column、line、verse、section 和 paragraph。参考 bookpagination 域以及 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.13.3 节。

part 域(文本)

部分卷的编号。该域只用于书籍而不能用于期刊。它可以用于一个逻辑卷册包括两个或更多实际卷册的情形。此时逻辑卷册的编号由 volume 给出,而这一卷的每一部分的编号由 part 给出。参考 volume 域。

publisher 列表 (文本)

出版者的名字。参考§2.3.4一节。

pubstate 域 (关键字)

作品的出版状态,例如"in press"。已知的出版状态请参考§4.9.2.11一节。

reprinttitle 域(文本)

作品重印时的标题。标准样式中不使用。

series 域(文本)

丛书的名称,例如"Studies in ...",或者期刊系列的编号。系列出版的丛书通常带有编号。其编号或者卷数由 number 域给出。请注意,@article 条目类型也使用 series 域,但是以一种特别的方式处理。参考 § 2.3.7 一节。

shortauthor 列表 (姓名) Label field

作者名的缩写形式。该域主要用于集体作者的缩写形式。参考§2.3.3一节。

shorteditor 列表 (姓名) Label field

编辑名的缩写形式。该域主要用于集体编辑的缩写形式。参考§2.3.3一节。

shorthand 域(文本) Label field

替代通常的标签而被引用样式使用的指定域。如果有定义,那么它会覆盖默认的标签。参考 label 域。

shorthandintro 域(文本)

本宏包附带一些的引用样式会使用比较冗长的引用格式,例如,在第一次引用时会使用诸如 "henceforth cited as [shorthand]"的短语来声明 shorthand。如果 shorthandintro 域有定义,它将覆盖标准的声明短语。请注意,使用的备选短语必须包含 shorthand。

shortjournal 域 (文本) Label field

journaltitle 的缩写版本或其首字母缩略语。标准文献样式中不会使用。

shortseries 域 (文本) Label field

series 的缩写版本或其首字母缩略语。标准文献样式中不会使用。

shorttitle 域(文本) Label field

缩略形式的标题。该域通常不会包括在参考文献列表中。它可用于 author-title 格式的引用。如果有该域的话,author-title 引用样式使用该域来替代 title 域。

subtitle 域(文本)

作品的副标题。

title 域(文本)

作品的标题。

titleaddon 域(文本)

title 的附文,会用不同字体打印。

translator 列表 (名称)

title 或 booktitle 的译者,具体取决于条目类型。如果译者与 editor 相同,标准样式会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。

type 域 (关键字)

manual、patent、report 或 thesis 的类型。该域可用于 § 2.1.3 节的定制类型。

url 域(uri)

在线出版物的 URL。如果它不是 URL-转义的(没有"%"字符),那么会根据 RFC 3987 ¹⁷ 将其 URI-转义,也就是说,即使 Unicode 字符也会正确转义。

urldate 域(日期)

url 域中网址的获取日期。参考§2.3.8 一节。

venue 域(文本)

@proceedings 和 @inproceedings 条目中的会议、研讨会或其它事件的地点。该域可用于§2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。请注意,location 列表指的是出版地点,因此对应于 publisher 和 institution 列表。而会议事件的会场地点则由 venue 域给出。参考 eventdate 和 eventtitle 域。

version 域(文本)

软件、手册等作品的修订次数。

¹⁷ 参考https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3987——译注

volume 域(整数)

多卷本或连续出版物中作品的卷数。应当是整数,但不必是阿拉伯数字的形式。这是因为 Biber 为了排序会将罗马数字和阿拉伯数码自动转成整数。参考 part 域。

volumes 域 (整数)

多卷本著作的总卷数。根据文献条目类型,该域对应于 title 或 maintitle 域。应 当是整数,但不必是阿拉伯数字的形式。这是因为 Biber 为了排序会将罗马数字和阿拉伯数码自动转成整数。

year 域(文本)

出版年份。不过使用 date 域更好些,因为它也和普通年份兼容。参考 § 2.3.8 节。

2.2.3 特殊域

本节中的域不包括可打印的数据,而是有其它用途。在默认数据模型中可用 于所有条目类型。

crossref 域 (条目关键字)

该域提供的条目关键字可用于交叉引用。带有 crossref 域的子条目可以从由 crossref 域指定的父条目继承数据。如果引用某个父条目的子条目数量达到一个 阈值,该父条目就会自动添加到参考文献中,即使它没有显式地被正文引用。该阈值可以由§3.1.2.1 节中的 mincrossrefs 宏包选项设置。样式作者请注意,在 Biblatex 层面上子条目的 crossref 域是否有定义取决于父条目是否可用。如果父条目可用,那么子条目的 crossref 域将被定义。反之,子条目仍然可以继承父条目的数据但是其 crossref 域是未定义的。父条目是否被添加到文献中(间接地由于阈值或者直接被显式地引用)对于该域的定义并不重要。参考本节中的 xref 域以及§2.4.1 一节。

entryset 域 (分隔值)

该域用于指明条目集。详见§3.12.5 节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl中。

execute 域 (代码)

包含了任意 TEX 代码的特殊域,这些代码会在获取相应的条目数据时被执行。这对处理特殊情况很有用。概念上,该域可以类比于 § 4.10.6 节中的钩子命令\AtEveryBibitem、\AtEveryLositem 和 \AtEveryCitekey,但不同之处在于该域可以基于 bib 文件中的每一条目进行逐条定义。该域中的任何代码都会在这些钩子命令后立即自动执行。

gender 域 (匹配 sf、sm、sn、pf、pm、pn、pp 其中之一的模式)

作者或编辑(如果没有作者的话)的词性。支持以下以下标识符: sf (阴性单数,单独的女性名), sm (阳性单数,单独的男性名), sn (中性单数,单独的中性名),

pf (阴性复数,多个女性名),pm (阳性复数,多个男性名),pn (中性复数,多个中性名),pp (复数,不同词性名的混合)。这一信息只在特殊的文献和引用样式以及某些语言中是需要的。例如,某一引用样式会用拉丁语"idem"等词汇来代替反复出现的作者名字。如果按照英语或法语的习惯使用这一拉丁词汇,那么就没有必要确定词性。然而在德语出版物中,这样的词汇通常用德语给出,此时就依赖于词性。

ids 域(条目关键字的分隔值列表)

主要引用关键字的别称。一个条目可以通过别称引用,Biblatex 会将引用视为它使用了原本的引用关键字。借助于该域,用户可以在改变引用关键字的同时仍然可以使用带有旧引用关键字条目的其它文件。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl 中。

indexsorttitle 域(文本)

排序索引使用的标题。与 indextitle 域不同,该域只用于排序。而索引中打印出来的标题是 indextitle 或title 域。当标题中含有与索引排序相冲突的特殊字符或命令时,该域会很有用。考虑如下例子:

```
title = {The \LaTeX\ Companion},
indextitle = {\LaTeX\ Companion, The},
indexsorttitle = {LATEX Companion},
```

文献样式作者请注意,当 indexsorttitle 没有定义时,Biblatex 会自动将 indextitle 或 title 域的值复制给该域。

keywords 域 (分隔值)

关键词的分隔值列表。这些关键词用于文献过滤(filter),参考 §§ 3.7.2 和 3.12.4 节,通常不会打印出来。请注意,使用默认的分隔符(西文逗号)时,分隔符左右的空格会被忽略。

langid 域 (标识符)

文献条目的语种标识。出于向后兼容性另提供了别称 hyphenation。标识符必须是 babel/polyglossia 宏包中的语言名称。该信息用于文献中切换断词模式和本地化字符串。请注意,语言名称是大小写敏感的。目前本宏包支持的语言在表 3 中给出。需要注意的是,babel 宏包将标识符 english 当作 british 或 american 的别称,具体取决于 babel 的版本。而 Biblatex 宏包总是将其当作 american 的别称。为了避免可能的混淆,最好使用语言标识符 american 和 british(babel)或者语言选项来确定语言变种(polyglossia,使用 langidopts 域)。比较§2.2.2 一节中的 language 域。

langidopts 域(文本)

对于 polyglossia 的用户,该域会允许每个条目有自己的语言选项。当使用本宏包的选项 autolang=langname 时,它们将被传递到 polyglossia 的语言切换机制。例如,以下的域

语言	地区/方言	标识符
加泰罗尼亚语	西班牙、法国、安道尔、意大利	catalan
克罗地亚语	克罗地亚、波黑、塞尔维亚	croatian
捷克语	捷克共和国	czech
丹麦语	丹麦	danish
荷兰语	荷兰	dutch
英语	美国	american, USenglish, english
	英国	british, UKenglish
	加拿大	canadian
	澳大利亚	australian
	新西兰	newzealand
芬兰语	芬兰	finnish
法语	法国、加拿大	french
德语	德国	german
	奥地利	austrian
	瑞士	swissgerman
德语 (新正字法)	德国	ngerman
	奥地利	naustrian
	瑞士	nswissgerman
希腊语	希腊	greek
意大利语	意大利	italian
挪威语	挪威	norwegian, norsk, nynorsk
波兰语	波兰	polish
葡萄牙语	巴西	brazil
	葡萄牙	portuguese, portuges
俄语	俄罗斯	russian
斯洛伐克语	斯洛伐克	slovak
斯洛文尼亚语	斯洛文尼亚	slovene
西班牙语	西班牙	spanish
瑞典语	瑞典	swedish

Table 3: 支持的语种

langid = {english},

langidopts = {variant=british},

会将文献条目置于如下代码块中

\english[variant=british]

. . .

\endenglish

options 域 (分隔的 \(key \) = \(value \) 选项)

《key》=《value》形式的条目选项分隔值列表。该域用于设置每一条目的选项,详见 § 3.1.3 一节。请注意,引用和文献样式会定义额外的条目选项。

presort 域 (字符串)

用于修正文献排列顺序的特殊域。该域是文献排列时排序程序考虑的第一个项目,因此可用于将文献条目分组。这在使用文献过滤创建文献细分时很有用。更多细节请参考§3.5以及§4.5.6节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl中。

related 域 (分隔值)

与本条目相关的其它条目的引用关键字。相互关系由 relatedtype 域来确定。进一步细节请参考 § 3.4 一节。

relatedoptions 域 (分隔值)

为相关条目设置基于类型的选项。请注意,这不会设置相关条目本身的选项,而 只会作用到用作数据源的父条目的临时副本上。

relatedtype 域 (标识符)

标识符,为列在 related 域中的关键字列表指定相互关系类型。该标识符是本地化字符串,会打印在相关条目列表的数据之前。该域也用于为相关条目指明类型相关的格式指令和参考文献宏。更多信息参考§3.4节。

relatedstring 域(文本)

用于覆盖 relatedtype 确定的参考文献字符串。更多信息参考§3.4节。

sortkey 域(文本)

用来修正文献排序的域。该域可以认为是最主要的排序键值。当存在时,Biblatex 会在排序时使用该域,并且忽略除了 presort 域之外的所有信息。详见§3.5 节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl中。

sortname 列表 (姓名)

用于修正文献排序的姓名或姓名列表。当存在时,该列会在文献排序时取代 author 或 editor 域。详见 § 3.5 节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl 中。

sortshorthand 域(文本)

与 sortkey 类似但用于缩略语列表中。当存在时,Biblatex 会在缩略语列表排序中用该域取代 shorthand 域。当 shorthand 域含有带格式命令(如 \emph 或 \textbf)的缩略语时,该域是很有用的。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在 .bbl 中。

sorttitle 域(文本)

用于修正文献排序的域。当存在时,该域会在文献排序时取代 title 域。如果一个条目带有"An Introduction to..."这样的标题,并且你想让它按字母"I"而不是"A"排序,那么 sorttitle 域就会派上用场。这时,你就可以在 sorttitle 域中填上"Introduction to..."。详见§3.5节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在.bbl中。

sortyear 域 (整数)

用于修正文献排序的域。当存在时,该域会在文献排序时取代 year 域。详见 § 3.5 节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在 .bbl 中。

xdata 域 (条目关键字的分隔值列表)

该域从一个或更多 @xdata 条目中继承数据。从概念上讲,xdata 域与 crossref 和 xref 域相关: crossref 创建一个父/子的逻辑关系并继承数据; xref 创建一个不继承数据的父/子逻辑关系; 而 xdata 则继承数据却不创建关系。xdata 的值可以是一个单独的条目关键字或者条目关键字的分隔值列表。详见 § 3.12.6 节。该域在后端过程中被处理,不出现在 .bbl 中。

xref 域(条目关键字)

该域可用于代替交叉引用机制。它与 crossref 域的不同之处在于,子条目不会从其 xref 域所列的父条目中继承数据。如果引用某个父条目的子条目数量达到一个阈值,该父条目就会自动添加到文献中,即使它并没有显式地被引用。该阈值可以由 § 3.1.2.1 节的 mincrossrefs 宏包选项设置。文献样式作者需要注意,在 Biblatex 层面上,子条目的 xref 域是否有定义取决于父条目是否可用。如果父条目可用,那么子条目的 xref 域将被定义。反之,其 xref 域是未定义的。父条目是否被添加到文献中(间接地由于阈值或者直接被显式地引用)对于域的定义并不重要。参考本节中的 crossref 域以及 § 2.4.1 节。

2.2.4 可定制域

本节中的域用于特定的参考文献样式,标准样式不使用。

name[a-c] 列表 (姓名)

特殊文献样式的定制列表。标准文献样式不使用。

name[a-c]type 域 (关键字)

类似于 authortype 和 editortype 域,不过对应的是 name[a-c] 域。标准文献样式不使用。

list[a-f] 列表 (文本)

特殊文献样式的定制列表。标准文献样式不使用。

user[a-f] 域(文本)

特殊文献样式的定制列表。标准文献样式不使用。

verb[a-c] 域(文本)

类似于以上的定制域,不过这些是抄录域。标准文献样式不使用。

2.2.5 域的别名

本节列出的别名用于向后兼容传统 BisTeX 以及其它基于传统 BisTeX 样式的应用。请注意,当 bib 文件被处理时就立即解析这些别名。因此所有的文献和引用样式必须使用它们所指的域的名称,而不能是别名。而在 bib 文件中,既可以使用别名也可以使用原名,但不能同时使用。

address 列表(文本)

location 的别名,用于 $B_{\rm IB}T_{\rm E}X$ 相容性。传统的 $B_{\rm IB}T_{\rm E}X$ 使用这一稍微有些误导性的域 address 来表示出版地点,即出版者的所在地,而 Biblatex 使用更一般的 location 域。参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.4 节。

annote 域(文本)

annotation 的别名,用于 jurabib 宏包兼容性。参考 § 2.2.2 节。

archiveprefix 域(文本)

eprinttype 的别名,用于 arXiv 的兼容性。参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 3.12.7 节。

journal 域(文本)

journaltitle 的别名,用于 BisTrX 兼容性。参考 § 2.2.2 节。

key 域 (文本)

sortkey 的别名,用于 BBTrX 兼容性。参考 § 2.2.3 节。

pdf 域 (抄录)

file 的别名,用于 JabRef 兼容性。参考 § 2.2.2 节。

primaryclass 域 (literal)

An alias for eprintclass, provided for arXiv compatibility. See §§ 2.2.2 和 3.12.7.

primaryclass 域(文本)

eprintclass 的别名,用于 arXiv 的兼容性。参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 3.12.7 节。

school 列表 (文本)

institution 的别名,用于 BBTeX 兼容性。institution 域用于传统 BBTeX 中的技术报告,而 school 域处理与之相关的研究机构。在这两种情况下,Biblatex 宏包都会使用一般的域 institution。参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.4。

2.3 使用注意事项

对于熟悉 BisTeX 的用户来说,本宏包支持的绝大部分条目类型和域都是很直观的。然而,且不说本宏包额外新增的类型和域,一些很常见的类型和域的处理方式也需要进一步解释一下。本宏包考虑到包含一些相容性代码,用于处理那些由传统 BisTeX 样式产生的 bib 文件。但不幸的是,自动处理所有留传下来的文件是不可能的,因为 Biblatex 的数据模型域传统的 BisTeX 有少许不同。因此,为了在本宏包下能正确运行,这样的 bib 文件也许需要稍作修改。大体上,下列事项与传统的 BisTeX 样式不同:

- @inbook 条目类型。详见 §§ 2.1.1 和 2.3.1 节。
- institution、organization、publisher 域以及相应的别名 address 和 school。 详见 §§ 2.2.2、2.2.5、2.3.4 节。
- 一些标题类型的处理。详见 § 2.3.5 节。
- series 域。详见 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.7 节。
- year 和 month 域。详见 §§ 2.2.2、2.3.8、2.3.9 节。
- edition 域。详见 § 2.2.2 节。
- key 域。详见 § 2.3.2 节。

jurabib 宏包的用户请注意,shortauthor 域被 Biblatex 视作姓名列表,详见 § 2.3.3 节。

2.3.1 @inbook 条目类型

@inbook 条目类型只用于那些书籍中有自己标题的独立部分。它与 @book 的关系正如同 @incollection 与 @collection 的关系。参考 § 2.3.5 中的例子。如果你想要指的是书的某一章节,使用 book 类型并添加 chapter 或 pages 域即可。究竟参考文献是否可以引用章节是有争议的,因为章并不是文献实体。

2.3.2 缺失和可忽略数据

在§ 2.1.1 节中标记为"required"的域并不一定在所有情况下都是严格要求的。大部分只含 title 域的条目类型对于本宏包所带的文献样式也可以过得去。就参考文献而言,匿名出版的书籍、没有明确编辑的周期出版物、或者没有明确

作者的软件手册都应当不会有问题。但是,引用样式也许会有不同的要求。例如,author-year 引用格式就明确要求 author/editor 域和 year 域。

一般来说可以使用 label 域代替引用要求的任意缺失数据。label 域的使用方式取决于引用样式。如果 author/editor 域或 year 域缺失,那么本宏包所带的 author-year 引用样式会将 label 域作为后备信息。另一方面,数字样式根本不会用到这些,因为数字格式与可用数据无关。此外,author-title 样式也会忽略这些,因为 title 域足够生成惟一的引用,并且标题几乎在所有情形中都是存在的。label 域也可以用于覆盖自动生成的 labelalpha 域中的非数值部分,这用于按字母排序的引用样式。详见 § 4.2.4 节。

请注意,当 author 和 editor 域都缺失时,传统的 BmT_EX 样式支持 key 域用于依字母排序。Biblatex 宏包将 key 视为 sortkey 的别名。此外,它还提供了非常细致化的排序控制,详见 §§ 2.2.3 和 3.5 节。natbab 宏包使用 key 域作为后备的引用标签。使用 label 域来代替它。

2.3.3 集体作者和编者

集体作者和编辑分别在 author 和 editor 域中给出。请注意,他们必须再用花括号括起来,以防被认为是个人姓名进而被分解成姓名成分。如果你想在引用时给出简称或首字母缩写的形式,请使用 shortauthor 域。

```
author = {{National Aeronautics and Space Administration}},
shortauthor = {NASA},
```

默认的引用样式会在所有的引用里使用短名称而在参考文献中打印全名。对于集体编辑,则使用 editor 和 shorteditor 域。由于这些域都被视作姓名列表,因此,只要把所有的合作者和单位用花括号括起来,就可以将个人姓名和集体名称混合起来使用。

从 jurabib 宏包切换到 Biblatex 宏包的用户需要注意,shortauthor 域被视作姓名列表。

2.3.4 文本列表

按照§2.2节,institution、organization、publisher 和 location 等域是文本列表。origlocation、origpublisher,以及作为别名的 address 和 school 域也是如此。所有的这些域都可以包含一个由关键词"and"分隔的项目列表。如果它们本身带有"and"文本,那么必须用括号括起来。

```
publisher = {William Reid {and} Company},
institution = {Office of Information Management {and} Communications},
organization = {American Society for Photogrammetry {and} Remote Sensing
```

```
and
American Congress on Surveying {and} Mapping},
```

请注意以上例子中作为文本和作为列表分隔符的"and"之间的区别。你也可以把整个名称用括号括起来:

```
publisher = {{William Reid and Company}},
institution = {{Office of Information Management and Communications}},
organization = {{American Society for Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing}}
and
{American Congress on Surveying and Mapping}},
```

对于没有为在 Biblatex 宏包中使用而更新的旧文件,如果它们的域中不含 "and" 文本,那么仍然可以运行。然而,请注意此时你会缺失那些关于文本列表的新特性,例如可配置的格式和自动截词。

2.3.5 标题

以下例子展示了如何处理不同类型的标题。首先是一个作为整体的五卷本作品:

```
@MvBook{works,
  author = {Shakespeare, William},
  title = {Collected Works},
  volumes = {5},
  ...
```

多卷本作品的每一卷通常有自己的标题。假设全集的第四卷是莎士比亚的十四行诗,并且我们要单独引用该卷:

```
@Book{works:4,
  author = {Shakespeare, William},
  maintitle = {Collected Works},
  title = {Sonnets},
  volume = {4},
  ...
```

如果单卷没有标题,我们在 title 域中使用主标题,并标明卷数:

```
@Book{works:4,
  author = {Shakespeare, William},
  title = {Collected Works},
  volume = {4},
  ...
```

在下个例子里,我们引用一卷的一部分,但是该部分自成一个独立作品且有自己的标题。相应的卷也有一个标题,并且整个作品有一个主标题:

```
@InBook{lear,
  author = {Shakespeare, William},
  bookauthor = {Shakespeare, William},
  maintitle = {Collected Works},
  booktitle = {Tragedies},
  title = {King Lear},
  volume = {1},
  pages = {53-159},
  ...
```

假设全集的第一卷是翻版时由一位著名学者写的随笔。这不是通常意义上编辑写的简介,而是一份独立的作品。全集同样另有一位编辑:

```
@InBook{stage,
  author = {Expert, Edward},
  title = {Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Stage},
  bookauthor = {Shakespeare, William},
  editor = {Bookmaker, Bernard},
  maintitle = {Collected Works},
  booktitle = {Tragedies},
  volume = {1},
  pages = {7-49},
  ...
```

更多例子请参考 § 2.3.7 节。

2.3.6 编辑角色

editor域(包括 editor、editora、editorb、editorc)中编辑作用的类型可以由相应的 editor...type 域确定。默认支持以下的角色。缺省值是"editor",此时 editortype 域可以省略。

editor 主要编辑。这是最普遍的编辑角色,也是默认值。

compiler 类似于 editor 但使用场合是编辑主要进行编纂工作。

founder 诸如"全集"或长期的法律评论等连续出版物或综合出版项目的创刊者。

continuator 继续创刊编辑(founder)工作的编辑,不过随后由现任编辑(editor)所接替。

redactor 从事编修工作的次要编辑。

reviser 从事校订工作的次要编辑。

collaborator 次要编辑或者主编的顾问。

例如,如果编辑的任务是编纂的话,你可以在相应的 editortype 域中指明:

```
@Collection{...,
  editor = {Editor, Edward},
  editortype = {compiler},
  ...
```

除主编之外可以有次要编辑:

```
@Book{...,
  author = {...},
  editor = {Editor, Edward},
  editora = {Redactor, Randolph},
  editoratype = {redactor},
  editorb = {Consultant, Conrad},
  editorbtype = {collaborator},
  ...
```

连续出版物或长期出版项目通常有不同阶段的编辑。例如,在现任编辑之外还可以有一位创刊编辑:

```
@Book{...,
  author = {...},
  editor = {Editor, Edward},
  editora = {Founder, Frederic},
  editoratype = {founder},
  ...
```

请注意,只有 editor 在引用和文献排列中起作用。如果一个条目特地引用创刊编辑(并且据此在文献中排列),那么创刊者在 editor 域中给出,而现任编辑则移动到 editor... 域中:

```
@Collection{...,
  editor = {Founder, Frederic},
  editortype = {founder},
  editora = {Editor, Edward},
  ...
```

可以通过初始化和定义新的本地化关键字来增加更多的角色,关键字的名称对应于 editor...type 域中的标识符。详见 §§ 3.9 和 4.9.1 节。

2.3.7 出版物和期刊系列

在传统的 BmT_EX 样式中, series 域既用于多卷本作品的主标题, 也用于出版物的系列, 也就是说,同一位出版者的关系较松散的一系列书籍,主要关于一个

大致的方向或者同一个研究领域。这种用法是模糊不清的。因此,本宏包引入了 maintitle 域来表示多卷本作品,而 series 只用于出版物系列。此时该系列中的 一本书的卷号由 number 域给出:

```
@Book{...,
  author = {Expert, Edward},
  title = {Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Age},
  series = {Studies in English Literature and Drama},
  number = {57},
  ...
```

@article 条目类型也使用 series 域,但是使用方式比较特殊。首先,会执行一个测试来确定该域的值是否是整数。如果是的话,它会以序数的形式打印;反之,会执行另一个测试来确定它是否是本地化关键字。如果是的话,会打印本地化字符串;反之则按照本身打印。考虑下面这个以带有数字系列的期刊的例子;

```
@Article{...,
    journal = {Journal Name},
    series = {3},
    volume = {15},
    number = {7},
    year = {1995},
    ...
```

该条目会打印成"Journal Name. 3rd ser. 15.7 (1995)"。一些期刊会使用"旧系列"和"新系列"等指定名而不是一个数字。这样的指定名也可以由 series 域给出,或者是一个文本字符串,或者是一个本地化关键字。考虑如下这个使用本地化关键字 newseries 的例子:

```
@Article{...,
    journal = {Journal Name},
    series = {newseries},
    volume = {9},
    year = {1998},
    ...
```

该条目会打印成 "Journal Name. New ser. 9 (1998)"。默认定义的本地化关键字列表请参考 § 4.9.2 节。

2.3.8 日期和时间规范

日期域遵循扩展日期时间格式¹⁸ (Extended Date/Time Format, EDTF)标准 0 和标准 1,例如默认数据模型的日期域 date、origdate、eventdate 和 urldate。此

¹⁸https://www.loc.gov/standards/datetime/pre-submission.html

日期规格	日期格式(例)		
	短格式/12 小时格式	长格式/24 小时格式	
1850	1850	1850	
1997/	1997-	1997-	
/1997	-1997	-1997	
1997/unknown	1997-	1997-	
1997/*	1997-	1997-	
unknown/1997	-1997	-1997	
*/1997	-1997	-1997	
1997/open	1997-	1997-	
open/1997	-1997	-1997	
1967-02	02/1967	February 1967	
2009-01-31	31/01/2009	31st January 2009	
1988/1992	1988-1992	1988–1992	
2002-01/2002-02	01/2002-02/2002	January 2002-February 2002	
1995-03-30/1995-04-05	30/03/1995-05/04/1995	30th March 1995–5th April 1995	
2004-04-05T14:34:00	05/04/2004 2:34 PM	5th April 2004 14:34:00	

Table 4: 日期规范

外也支持 ISO8601-2 的当前草案19 的第 4.5 节中的开放式范围规范。相比于有些混 乱的ISO8601v2004允许格式,EDTF是其中一个更严格的子集,更适用于文献数据。 除了 EDTF 空日期范围标记外,还通过给定范围分隔符并省略结束或开始日期的方 式(例如YYYY/、/YYYY)指明无末端或无开端的日期范围。表4列出了一些有效的 日期规范以及由 Biblatex 自动生成的日期格式。日期格式与语言有关,因此会自动 调整。如果条目中没有 date 域, Biblatex 还会考虑 year 和 month 域。不过这仅仅出 于对传统 BmTrX 的向后兼容性,并不鼓励使用。因为显式的 year 和 month 域不能 解析为日期的元信息标记,只能原样使用。样式作者需要注意,date 或 origdate 等日期域只在 bib 文件中有效。随着 bib 文件的处理,所有的日期都被解析并分 为各个日期部件。通过§4.2.4.3 节讨论的特殊域,日期和时间部件可以为样式所 用。更多信息请参考该节和155页的表 11 节。

EDTF 日期是天文学日期,其中第"0"年是存在的。当输出公元前年代(BCE/BC era)的日期时(见下面的 dateera 选项),请注意它们通常要早一年,因为公元前 年代没有第0年(第0年就是公元前1年)。该转换是自动完成的,见表6中的例 子。

如同默认日期域,日期域的名称必须以字符串"date"结尾。当在数据模型中 添加新的日期域时(见 § 4.5.4 节)必须注意这一点。Biblatex 在读入日期模型后会 检查所有的日期域,如果发现有日期域不遵循这一命名约定就会报错并退出。

EDTF 通过负日期格式支持公元前(before common era, BCE/BC)日期,此 外还支持"近似"(circa)和不确定的日期。这样的日期格式设置可以检测的 内部标记,进而可以插入合适的本地化标记(例如 circa 或 beforecommonera)。 另外,未定日期(EDTF 5.2.2)会自动展开成合适的日期范围,随之另有一 个〈datetype〉dateunspecified 域指明未定数据的间隔尺寸。文献样式可以使用该 信息构造合适的日期格式,但标准样式不会使用。42页的表 5列出了允许的 EDTF 未定日期格式、范围扩展和 (datetype)dateunspecified 域的值(§ 4.2.4.1 节)。

 $^{^{19}} http://www.loc.gov/standards/datetime/iso-tc154-wg5_n0039_iso_wd_8601-2_2016-02-16.pdf$

日期规范	扩展范围	元信息
199u	1990/1999	yearindecade
19uu	1900/1999	yearincentury
1999-uu	1999-01/1999-12	monthinyear
1999-01-uu	1999-01-01/1999-01-31	dayinmonth
1999-uu-uu	1999-01-01/1999-12-31	dayinyear

Table 5: EDTF 5.2.2 未定日期解析

表 6 展示了使用恰当的测试和格式化的格式。参考 § 4.6.2 节的日期元信息测试以及 § 4.9.2.21 节的本地化字符串。关于相应测试和使用本地化字符串的完整的例子另参考 96-dates.tex 示例文件。

在标准样式以及没有定制内部宏 \mkdaterange* 的定制样式中,'circa'、不确定信息和年代信息的输出由§3.1.2.1 节中的宏包选项 datecirca、dateuncertain、dateera 和 dateeraauto 控制。43 页中的表 6列出了使用这些选项的例子。

2.3.9 月份和期刊的卷号

month 是整数域。文献样式按照要求将月份转化成不同语言的字符串。出于向后兼容性,你也可以在 month 域中使用以下的三字母缩写形式: jan、feb、mar、apr、may、jun、jul、aug、sep、oct、nov、dec。请注意,这些缩写词是 BbTeX 字符串,不能带有任何括号或引号。即,不要用 month={jan} 或 month="jan",而直接使用 month=jan。像 month={8/9} 这样的月份是不可识别的,此时请使用 date 域来表示日期范围。季刊通常由"Spring"或"Summer"等标识符确定,这些标识符应在 issue 域中给出。在 @article 条目中,issue 域的位置与 month 域类似,并且会覆盖后者。

2.3.10 标记页码

当在条目的 pages 域中或引用命令的 〈postnote〉选项中指明页码或页码范围时,通常习惯让 Biblatex 自动添加 "p."或 "pp."等前缀,而这也确实是本宏包的默认设置。然而,一些作品或许使用不同的页码标记格式,或者不是按页码而是按韵节或者行号引用。此时 pagination 和 bookpagination 就可以起作用了。例如考虑如下条目:

bookpagination 域会影响文献列表中 pages 和 pagetotal 的格式。由于 page 是默认的,因此在上面这个例子中该域可以省略。此时页码范围的格式是"pp. 53-65"。假设引用该作品时习惯使用韵节号而不是页码数。这可以通过 pagination 域反映

日期规范	格式化日期(例)			
	输出格式	输出格式注记		
0000	1 BC	dateera=christian 打印本地化字符串 beforechrist		
- 0876	877 BCE	dateera=secular 打印本地化字符串 beforecommonera		
-0877/-0866	878 BC-867 BC	使用 \ifdateera 测试和本地化字符串 beforechrist		
0768	0768 CE	dateeraauto 设置为 1000,并使用本地化字符串 commonera		
-0343-02	344-02 BCE			
0343-02-03	343-02-03 CE	以及 dateeraauto=400		
0343-02-03	343-02-02 CE	以及 dateeraauto=400 和 julian		
1723~	circa 1723	使用 \ifdatecirca 测试		
1723?	1723?	使用 \ifdateuncertain 测试		
1723?~	circa 1723?	使用 \ifdateuncertain 和 \ifdatecirca 测试		
2004-22	2004	另外,season 设置为本地化字符串 'summer'		
2004-24	2004	另外,season 设置为本地化字符串 'winter'		

Table 6: 增强的日期规范

出来,从而影响任何引用命令的 $\langle postnote \rangle$ 选项格式。如引用命令 $\langle cite[17] \}$ 的随后注记格式就会是 "v. 17"。若设置 pagination 域为 section,那么就会产生 " \S 17"。进一步的使用说明请参考 \S 3.13.3 节。

pagination 和 bookpagination 都是关键字域。如果关键字是已定义的,本宏包会尝试使用它们的值作为本地化关键字的值。在 bib 文件中要使用关键字名称的单数形式,复数形式会自动形成的。预定义的关键字有 page、column、line、verse、section 和 paragraph,其中 page 是默认值。在使用 pagination 和 bookpagination 时,字符串"none"有特殊意义,它将取消相应条目的前缀。如果对于某一条目的页码标记格式没有预定义的本地化关键字,你可以直接添加它们。参考§3.9节中的\NewBibliographyString 和\DefineBibliographyStrings 命令。你需要定义两个本地化字符串来对应额外的页码标记格式:单数形式(本地化关键字对应于pagination 域的值)和复数形式(本地化关键字必须是单数形式加上字母"s")。具体例子可以参考§4.9.2节的预定义关键字。

2.4 提示与警告

本节提供了一些关于本宏包数据层面上的额外提示,另外也说明了一些常见 问题。

2.4.1 交叉引用

Biber 的一大特色就是带有灵活数据继承规则的交叉引用机制并且高度可定制化。因此不再需要从父条目复制域或者向子条目中添加空白域,而可以用很自然的方式指定条目:

```
@Book{book,
author = {Author},
title = {Booktitle},
subtitle = {Booksubtitle},
publisher = {Publisher},
```

```
location
                  = {Location},
                  = \{1995\},
  date
@InBook{inbook,
                 = \{book\},
  crossref
  title
                 = {Title},
                  = \{5 - -25\},
  pages
}
```

父条目的 title 和 subtitle 会分别复制给子条目的 booktitle 和 booksubtitle。父 条目的 author 会成为子条目的 bookauthor,并且由于子条目没有提供 author 域, 它也会复制给子条目的 author 域。继承数据之后的子条目会大致如下:

```
author
                 = {Author},
bookauthor
                 = {Author},
title
                 = {Title},
booktitle
                = {Booktitle},
booksubtitle
                 = {Booksubtitle},
publisher
                = {Publisher},
location
                = {Location},
date
                = \{1995\},
pages
                 = \{5 - -25\},
```

默认的映射法则设置列表请参考附录 B。请注意, 所有这一切都是可以定制的。关 于如何配置 Biber 的交叉引用机制请参考 § 4.5.11 以及 § 2.2.3 节。

2.4.1.1 xref 域 除了 crossref 域之外, Biblatex 也支持一种简化的交叉引用机制。 而该机制则基于 xref 域。如果你想在两个相关条目间创建父/子关系,但就数据而 言又希望保持它们的独立性,那么该域会很有用。xref 域与 crossref 的不同之处 在于子条目不会从父条目继承任何数据。如果一个父条目被若干子条目引用,那 么它将被 Biblatex 自动添加到参考文献中。相关子条目数量的阈值由 § 3.1.2.1 节 的 mincrossrefs 宏包选项所控制。参考 § 2.2.3 一节。

2.4.2 排序和编码问题

Biber 处理 Ascii、Latin 1 等 8 比特编码以及 UTF-8。它的特色在于真正的 Unicode 支持,并且能够在实时运行中以一种鲁棒的方式重新编码 bib 数据。对于排 序, Biber 使用 Perl 实现 Unicode 排序算法 (Unicode Collation Algorithm, UCA),该 算法在 Unicode 技术标准 #10 中有介绍²⁰。基于 Unicode 通用区域数据库 (Common Locale Data Repository, CLDR)的排序裁剪也是支持的²¹。

支持 Unicode 不仅仅意味着处理 UTF-8 输入。Unicode 是一个复杂的标准,不 仅仅涵盖了它最著名的的部分——Unicode 字符编码和 UTF-8 等传输编码。它同样

²⁰http://unicode.org/reports/tr10/

²¹http://cldr.unicode.org/

对字符串排序等方面做了标准化,这对不同语言中的排序是必要的。例如,使用 Unicode 排序算法(uca),Biber 可以处理字符"ß",而不需要任何人工干预。你 需要针对本地化排序所做的就是指定本地化设置:

\usepackage[sortlocale=de]{biblatex}

如果通过 babel 或者 polyglossia 等宏包将德语设置为主文档语言,设置方式为:

\usepackage[sortlocale=auto]{biblatex}

这会使得 Biblatex 将 babel/polyglossia 主文档语言传递过来并映射为合适的默认本地化语言。Biber 不会尝试从操作环境中获取本地化信息,因为这会使得文本处理取决于文档外,而这有悖于 TeX 可移植性的精神。由于 babel/polyglossia 实际上与文档的环境有关,因此这也是有意义的。请注意,这对于 Latin 9 等 8 比特编码也是有效的,也就是说,你可以利用基于 Unicode 的排序,即使你没有使用 UTF-8 输入。关于如何正确地指定输入和数据编码请参考 § 2.4.2.1。

2.4.2.1 **指定编码** 当在 bib 中使用非 Ascii 编码时,重要的一点是要意识到,什么是 Biblatex 能做的,而什么是需要人工调整的。本宏包照顾 图 一次 一方,也就是说,只要 bibencoding 宏包选项设置正确,本宏包确保从 bbl 文件导入的数据能被正确地解释执行。所有的这一切都会自动处理,除了在某些情况下设置 bibencoding 选项外,不需要其它步骤。以下是一些典型的使用场景以及文件导言区中的相关部分:

• tex 和 bib 文件中都使用 Ascii 记法,使用 pdfTrX 或传统的 TrX 编译:

\usepackage{biblatex}

• tex 中使用 Latin 1 编码 (ISO-8859-1), bib 文件中使用 Ascii 记法, 用 pdfTeX 或传统的 TeX 编译:

```
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=ascii]{biblatex}
```

• tex 和 bib 文件中都使用 Latin 9 编码 (ISO-8859-15), 用 pdfTeX 或传统的 TeX 编译:

```
\usepackage[latin9]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=auto]{biblatex}
```

由于 bibencoding=auto 是默认设置,因此该选项可以省略。以下的设置具有相同效果:

\usepackage[latin9]{inputenc}
\usepackage{biblatex}

• tex 文件中使用 UTF-8 编码, bib 文件中使用 Latin 1(ISO-8859-1)编码,用 pdfTpX 或传统的 TpX 编译:

\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=latin1]{biblatex}

在原生 UTF-8 模式下使用 XTT-X 或 Lua T-X 编译的相同场景:

\usepackage[bibencoding=latin1]{biblatex}

Biber 可以处理 Ascii 记法、Latin 1 等 8 比特编码以及UTF-8。它也能在运行中实时重新编码 bib(取代受限宏层面的重新编码是 Biblatex 的特性)。如果你正确指定 bib 文件的编码,这一特性就会在需要时自动执行。除了以上讨论的场景外,Biber 还能够处理以下情况:

• 直接的 UTF-8 工作流,即,在 tex 和 bib 文件中都使用 UTF-8 编码并使用 pdfTpX 或传统的 TpX 编译:

\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc} \usepackage[bibencoding=auto]{biblatex}

由于 bibencoding=auto 是默认设置,因此该选项可以省略:

\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage{biblatex}

在原生 UTF-8 模式下使用 XFTFX 或 Lua TFX 编译的相同场景:

\usepackage{biblatex}

• 甚至可以在 tex 文件使用 8 比特编码,而在 bib 文件中使用 UTF-8 编码,只要 bib 文件中的所有字符都能被所选择的 8 比特编码覆盖:

\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=utf8]{biblatex}

当对 UTF-8 编码使用传统的 TeX 或 pdfTeX 时,可能需要一些变通处理,因为 inputenc 的 utf8 模块并不能覆盖所有的 Unicode。粗略地讲,它只覆盖了西欧字符的 Unicode 范围。当载入带有 utf8 选项的 inputenc 宏包时,Biblatex 通常会指示 Biber 将 bib 数据重新编码为 UTF-8。如果 bib 文件中的字符超出了 inputenc 支持的 Unicode 范围这可能会导致一些 inputenc 的错误,。

• 如果你受到这个问题的影响,尝试设置 safeinputenc 选项:

\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[safeinputenc]{biblatex}

如果该选项被启用,Biblatex 会忽略 inputenc 的 utf8 选项而使用 Ascii。Biber 随后会尝试将 bib 数据转化为 Ascii 记法。例如,它将 Ş 转化为 \k{S}。该选项类似于设置 texencoding=ascii 但是只影响这一特定场合(带有 UTF-8 的 inputenc/inputenx 宏包)。这一处理利用了这一事实: Unicode 和UTF-8 传输编码都与 Ascii 向后兼容。

如果 bib 文件中的数据主要是 Ascii 不过含有一些会导致问题的字符串(例如一些作者的名字),那么这一变通处理办法也是可行的。不过需要注意的是,它不会奇迹般地让传统的 TeX 或 pdfTeX 支持 Unicode。如果偶尔遇到一些奇特字符不被 inputenc 支持,当使用重音命令(例如用 \d{S} 取代 \$)时,这些字符也可以被 TeX 处理。然而,如果你需要完全的 Unicode 支持,请转向 XeTeX 或 LuaTeX 。 inputenc 不能处理某些 UTF-8 字符的典型错误是:

但也可以不那么明显,如:

! Argument of $\UTFviii@three@octets$ has an extra }.

3 用户使用手册

本部分介绍了Biblatex 宏包的用户接口。该使用指南涵盖了要使用Biblatex 自带的标准样式所需的所有信息。无论怎样都应该首先阅读该使用指南。如果你想编写你自己的引用和文献样式,请继续阅读随后的作者指南。

3.1 **宏包选项**

所有的宏包选项都以〈key〉=〈value〉记法给出。对于所有的布尔型键值,true 是可以省略的。例如,给出不带值的 sortcites 等价于 sortcites=true。

3.1.1 载入时选项

以下的选项必须在 Biblatex 载入时使用,即作为 \usepackage 的可选项。

backend=bibtex, bibtex8, biber

default: biber

指定数据库后端程序。支持以下后端:

biber Biber, Biblatex 的默认后端程序, 支持 Ascii、8 比特编码、UTF-8、实时

重新编码、本地化定制排序,以及许多其它特性。本地化定制排序,大小写敏感排序和大小写优先排序分别由选项 sortlocale、sortcase

和 sortupper 控制。

bibtex 遗留下来的 BibTrX。传统的 BibTrX 只支持 Ascii 编码,并且排序总是

大小写不敏感的。

bibtex8 bibtex8 是 BmTrX 的 8 比特实现, 支持 Ascii 和 Latin 1 等 8 比特编码。

使用 BBTFX 作为后端详见 § ?? 节。

 $style=\langle \mathit{file} \rangle$ default: numeric

加载文献样式文件 $\langle file \rangle$. bbx 和引用样式文件 $\langle file \rangle$. cbx。关于标准样式的概览请 参考 § 3.3 节。

bibstyle= $\langle file \rangle$ default: numeric

加载文献样式文件 \(file \) . bbx。关于标准文献样式的概览见 § 3.3.2 节。

citestyle= $\langle file \rangle$ default: numeric

加载引用样式文件 (file).cbx。关于标准引用样式的概览见 § 3.3.1 节。

natbib=true, false default: false

加载兼容性模块,以提供 natbib 宏包引用命令的同名替代命令。详见 § 3.8.9 节。

mcite=true, false default: false

加载引用模块,以提供 mcite/类 mciteplus 的引用命令。详见 § 3.8.10 节。

3.1.2 导言区选项

3.1.2.1 一般选项 下列选项既可以作为 \usepackage 的可选项,也可以在配置文件和导言区中使用。右边列出的是本宏包的默认值。请注意,文献和引用样式可以在载入时修改默认设置,详见 § 3.3 节。

参考文献的排序方式。除非另加说明,文献条目总是按升序排列。有以下预设可 选值。

nty 按照姓名、标题、年份排序。

nyt 按照姓名、年份、标题排序。

nyvt 按照姓名、年份、卷数、标题排序。

anyt 按照标签的字母顺序、姓名、年份、标题排序。

anyvt 按照标签的字母顺序、姓名、年份、卷数、标题排序。

ynt 按照年份、姓名、标题排序。

ydnt 按照年份(降序)、姓名、标题排序。

none 不进行排序。所有的条目按照引用顺序处理。

debug 按照条目键值排列。该选项只用于程序调试。

(name) 使用随 \DeclareSortingScheme (§ 4.5.6) 定义的 ⟨*name*⟩。

只有与打印相应标签的文献样式相结合,使用"字母顺序"排序格式才有意义。请注意,一些文献样式会将宏包选项从宏包的默认值(nty)初始化为另外一个值。详见§3.3.2节。关于以上排序选项的深度解读以及排序过程中涉及的域,请参考§3.5节。关于如何调整预定义格式或者定义新格式也可参考§4.5.6。

sortcase=true, false

default: true

文献和缩略语列表的排序是否是大小写敏感的。

sortupper=true, false

default: true

对应于 Biber 的 --sortupper 命令行选项。当该选项激活时,文献会按照"大写先于小写"的顺序排列。关闭该选项则使用"小写先于大写"的顺序。

$sortlocale=auto, \langle locale \rangle$

该选项设置全局的排序区域语言。如果排序格式没有使用 \printbibliography 命令的 \locale\ 选项,那么就会继承该区域语言设置。如果该选项值设置为 auto,那么需要使用 babel/polyglossia 宏包并设置主文档语言标识符,否则将设置为 en_US。Biber 会将 babel/polyglossia 语言标识符映射为有意义的本地化标识符(参考Biber 文档)。因此,你可以指定常规的本地化标识符,例如 de_DE_phonebook、es_ES;另外如果对 Biber 的语言映射满意的话,还可以指定支持的 babel/polyglossia 语言标识符。

related=true, false

default: true

是否使用相关条目中的信息。参考§3.4节。

sortcites=true, false

default: false

当多个条目关键字传给引用命令时,是否对引用进行排序。如果该选项激活,就会根据当前的文献排序格式(见§3.7.10节)对引用进行排序。该特征对所有的引用样式都有效。

 $maxnames=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 3

影响所有名称列表(author、editor等)的阈值。如果某个列表超过了该阈值,即,它包括的姓名数量超过〈*integer*〉,那么就会根据 minnames 选项的设置进行自动截断。maxnames 是设置 maxbibnames 和 maxcitenames 的主选项。

 $minnames = \langle integer \rangle$ default: 1

影响所有名称列表(author、editor等)的限制值。如果某个列表包含的姓名数量超过〈integer〉,那么就会根据 minnames 选项的设置自动截断。〈minnames〉的值必须小于或等于〈maxnames〉。minnames 是设置 minbibnames 和 mincitenames 的主选项。

 $maxbibnames = \langle integer \rangle$ default: $\langle maxnames \rangle$

类似于 maxnames 但只影响参考文献。

minbibnames=\langle integer \rangle default: \langle minnames \rangle

类似于 minnames 但只影响参考文献。

 $maxcitenames = \langle integer \rangle$ default: $\langle maxnames \rangle$

类似于 maxnames 但只影响正文中的引用。

mincitenames=\langle integer \rangle default: \langle minnames \rangle

类似于 minnames 但只影响正文中的引用。

maxitems=\(integer\) default: 3

类似于 maxnames 但影响所有的文本列表(publisher、location等)。

minitems=\langle integer \rangle default: 1

类似于 minnames 但影响所有的文本列表(publisher、location等)。

autocite=plain, inline, footnote, superscript, ...

该选项控制 § 3.8.4 节中讨论的 \autocite 命令的行为。plain 选项使得 \autocite 相当于 \cite; inline 选项使得它相当于 \parencite; footnote 选项使得它相当于 \footcite; superscript 选项使得它相当于 \supercite。选项 plain、inline 和 footnote 总是可行的,而 superscript 只能用于本宏包所带的数值引用样式中。引用样式也可以定义其它选项值。该选项的默认设置取决于所选的引用样式,参考 § 3.3.1 节。

autopunct=true, false default: true

该选项控制引用命令是否先扫描标点。详见 § 3.8 节和 § 4.7.5 节中的命令 \DeclareAutoPunctuation。

该选项控制多语种支持功能。当其设置为 autobib、autocite 或 auto 时,Biblatex 会尝试从 babel/polyglossia 宏包中获取文档的主语言(如果babel/polyglossia 宏包不可用则设置为后备的英语)。也可以手动选择文档的语言,此时选择的语言会覆盖条目的 langid 域,并且仍需要使用 autolang 选项选择语言切换环境以确定如何处理手动选择语言的切换方式。关于所支持的语言和相应的标识符请参考

default: autobib

换语言。autocite 使用条目中的 langid 域和 autolang 选项确定的语言环境为引用切换语言。而 auto 是同时设置 autobib 和 autocite 的缩略语。

表 3。autobib 使用条目中的 langid 域和 autolang 选项确定的语言环境为条目切

clearlang=true, false

default: true

如果激活该选项,Biblatex 会自动清除那些与文档的 babel/polyglossia 语言(或者由 language 选项显式确定的语言)相匹配的所有条目的 language 域,以便略去冗余的语言设定。该特性所需的语言映射由 § 4.9.1 节的 \DeclareRedundantLanguages命令提供。

autolang=none, hyphen, other*, langname

default: none

如果载入了 babel/polyglossia 宏包并且文献条目包含 langid 域 (见§2.2.3节),那 么该选项可以控制使用哪种 babel 语言环境²²。请注意,当载入 babel/polyglossia 宏包时 Biblatex 会自动适应主文档的语言。在多语言文档中,只要涉及到引用和 文献的默认语言,本宏包也会连续地调整以适应当前语言。切换语言的效果取决 于该选项选择的语言环境,可用的选择有:

none 关闭该特性,也就是不使用任何语言环境。

hyphen 将条目装入 hyphenrules 环境中。如果可用的话,会为条目的 hyphenation 域指定的语言导入断词模式。

hyphenation 域指定的语言导入断词模式。

other 将条目装入 otherlanguage 环境中。这将导入特定语言的断词模式,激活 babel/polyglossia 和 Biblatex 为相应语言提供的所有额外定义,并翻译 "editor"和 "volume"等键项。这些额外定义包括日期格式、序数和其它类似项目的本地化。

other* 将条目装入 otherlanguage* 环境中。请注意,此时 Biblatex 将 otherlanguage* 环境视为 otherlanguage 环境但其它宏包不会。

langname 只用于 polyglossia 宏包。将条目装入〈languagename〉环境中。该 选项值对 polyglossia 用户的好处是注意了 langidopts 域,这样可 以为每一条目增加语言选项(类似于选择语言变种)。当使用 babel 时,该选项值与 other 选项值相同。

block=none, space, par, nbpar, ragged

default: none

该选项控制块(block)之间的额外空白,即文献条目的更大的分段。可用的选项值有:

²² polyglossia 宏包也可以理解 babel 语言环境,因此本选项可以同时控制 babel/polyglossia 语言环境。

none 不添加任何东西。

space 在块之间添加额外的水平间距,类似于标准 ETEX 文档类的默认行

为。

par 每一块都另起一段,类似于标准 LYTEX 文档类的 openbib 选项。

nbpar 类似于 par 选项但是不允许在块的边界和条目内部分页。

ragged 插入一个小的负惩罚项以鼓励在块的边界处断行并设置左对齐。

也可以直接重新定义 \newblockpunct 命令实现不同的效果, 见 § 3.10.1 节。更多信息见 § 4.7.1 节。

notetype=foot+end, footonly, endonly

该选项控制 § 4.10.4 节中 \mkbibfootnote、\mkbibendnote 和类似封装的行为。可用的选项值有:

default: foot+end

default: auto

default: three

foot+end 同时支持脚注和尾注,即,\mkbibfootnote 会生成脚注而

\mkbibendnote 会生成尾注。

footonly 强制脚注,即,\mkbibendnote 也生成脚注。

endonly 强制尾注,即,\mkbibfootnote 也生成尾注。

hyperref=true, false, auto

是否将引用和向后引用转化为可点击的超链接。这一特性需要 hyperref 宏包。它同样需要引用样式的支持。本宏包所带的所有标准样式都支持超链接。hyperref=auto 会自动检测 hyperref 宏包是否载入。

backref=true, false default: false

是否在文献中打印出反向引用。反向引用是一组用于标明引用相应文献的页码数。如果在文档中有 refsection 环境,反向引用在每个引用章节中是局部的。严格地讲,该选项只控制 Biblatex 是否收集所需引用的数据。该特性也需要文献样式的支持。本宏包所带的所有标准样式都支持该特性。

backrefstyle=none, three, two, two+, three+, all+

该选项控制反向引用中的连续页码的格式。可用样式有:

none 不启用该特性,即,不压缩页码列表。

three 将任意连续三页或更多页缩写为页码范围,例如,"1,2,11,12,13,21,

22, 23, 24"会压缩成"1, 2, 11-13, 21-24"。

two 将任意连续两页或更多页缩写成页码范围,例如上面的例子会变成

"1-2, 11-13, 21-24"°

two+ 概念类似于 two, 但是连续两页的打印格式为开始页和本地化字符

串 sequens, 例如上面的例子会变成"1 sq., 11-13, 21-24"。

three+ 概念类似于 two+, 但是连续三页的打印格式为开始页可本地化字符

串 sequentes, 例如上面的例子会变成"1 sq., 11 sqq., 21-24"。

all+ 概念类似于 three+, 但是任意连续页码将打印成末端不封闭的形式, 例如上面的例子会变成"1 sq., 11 sqq., 21 sqq."。

所有这些样式都同时支持阿拉伯和罗马数字。为了避免可能的歧义,不同数字集在生成数字范围时不会混在一起,例如,"iii,iv,v,6,7,8"将缩写为"iii-v,6-8"。

backrefsetstyle=setonly, memonly, setormem, setandmem, memandset,

default: setonly

setplusmem

该选项控制怎样处理指向 @set 条目及其成员的反向引用。可用选项有:

setonly 所有的反向引用都添加到 @set 条目中。而其成员的 pageref 列表为

空。

memonly 条目集成员的引用添加到各自成员中。@set 条目的引用添加到所有

成员中。@set 条目的 pageref 列表为空。

setormem @set 条目的引用添加到 @set 条目中。其成员的引用添加到各自成

员中。

setandmem @set 条目的引用添加到 @set 条目中。其成员的引用添加到各自成

员和@set 条目中。

memandset aset 条目的引用添加到 aset 条目和所有成员中。其成员的引用添

加到各自成员中。

setplusmem @set 条目的引用添加到 @set 条目和所有成员中。其成员的引用添

加到各自成员和 @set 条目中。

indexing=true, false, cite, bib

default: false

该选项控制文献和引用中的索引。更准确地说,它影响§4.6.2 节的 \ifciteindex 和 \ifbibindex 命令。该选项可以在全局、基于每一类型或每一条目设置。可用的 选择有:

true 全局激活索引。

false 全局不激活索引。

cite 只在引用中激活索引。

bib 只在文献中激活索引。

该特性需要引用样式的支持。本宏包所带的所有标准样式都支持引用和文献条目中的索引。请注意,为了得到索引仍然需要用\makeindex命令全局激活索引模式。

loadfiles=true, false

default: false

该选项控制是否载入通过 \printfile 命令所需的外部文件。另参考 § 3.12.8 和 § 4.4.1 节中的 \printfile 命令。请注意,出于性能原因该特性默认不激活。

refsection=none, part, chapter, section, subsection

default: none

该选项自动在文档分段处(例如一章或一节)开始一个新的参考文献分节。这等价于 \newrefsection 命令,参考 § 3.7.4 节。可用的文档分段如下:

none 不启用该特性。

part 在每个\part 命令处开始一个参考文献分节。

chapter 在每个 \chapter 命令处开始一个参考文献分节。

section 在每个\section 命令处开始一个参考文献分节。

subsection 在每个\subsection 命令处开始一个参考文献分节。

这些命令对应带星号的版本不会开始新的参考文献分节。

refsegment=none, part, chapter, section, subsection

default: none

类似于 refsection 选项,但是开始一个新的参考文献片段。这等价于 \newrefsegment 命令,详见 § 3.7.5 节。当两个选项都使用时,请注意该选项 只能应用到比 refsection 选项应用的更低水平的文档分段,同时,嵌套的参考文献片段相对于所附的参考文献分节来讲是局部的。

citereset=none, part, chapter, section, subsection

default: none

该选项在文档分段处(例如一章或一节)自动执行 § 3.8.8 节介绍的 \citereset 命令。可用的文档分段有:

none 不启用该特性。

part 在每个\part 命令后执行重置。

chapter 在每个\chapter 命令后执行重置。

section 在每个\section 命令后执行重置。

subsection 在每个\subsection 命令后执行重置。

这些命令对应带星号的版本不会引起重置。

abbreviate=true, false

default: true

是否在引用和文献中使用较长或者缩写的字符串。该选项会影响本地化模块。如果启用该选项,"editor"等键值项会缩写,反之则会全部写出。

date=year, short, long, terse, comp, ymd, edtf

default: comp

该选项控制日期规范的基本格式。有以下选择:

year 只使用年份,例如:

2010

2010-2012

short 使用短格式和详细的日期范围,例如:

01/01/2010

21/01/2010 - 30/01/2010

01/21/2010-01/30/2010

long 使用长格式和详细的日期范围,例如:

1st January 2010

21st January 2010-30th January 2010

January 21, 2010-January 30, 2010

terse 使用短格式和紧凑的日期范围,例如:

21-30/01/2010

01/21-01/30/2010

comp 使用长格式和紧凑的日期范围,例如:

21st-30th January 2010

January 21-30, 2010

edtf 使用严格的扩展日期/时间格式²³ (yyyy-mm-dd),例如:

2010-01-01

2010-01-21/2010-01-30

ymd 不同于严格的 EDTF 格式,使用可以被其它选项修改的年-月-日格

式,例如:

2010-1-1

2010-1-21/2010-1-30

注意, edtf 格式会强制开启 dateera=astronomical, datezeros=true, timezeros=true, seconds=true, *(datetype)*time=24h 以及 julian=false 等键值。

从以上例子可以看出,实际的日期格式是与语言相关的。请注意,在所有长格式中月份名称与 abbreviate 宏包选项相对应。所有短格式中月和日的首位零可以另外由 datezeros 宏包选项控制。所有短格式中时分秒的首位零可以另外由 timezeros 宏包选项控制。如果要输出时刻,那么秒和时区的打印分别由 seconds 和 timezones 选项控制。

julian 和 gregorianstart 选项可以用于控制何时输出儒略历日期。

labeldate=year, short, long, terse, comp, ymd, edtf

default: year

类似于 date 选项但是控制由 \DeclareLabeldate 选择的日期域的格式。

\(\langle \date = \text{ype} \rangle \date = \text{year, short, long, terse, comp, ymd, edtf} \)

default: comp

类似于 date 选项但是控制数据模型中 \(datetype\) date 域的格式。

alldates=year, short, long, terse, comp, edtf

将数据模型中所有日期的选项设置为相同值。默认数据模型中的日期域为 date、origdate、eventdate 和 urldate。

²³https://www.loc.gov/standards/datetime/pre-submission.html

julian=true, false

default: false

该选项控制是否将 gregorianstart 选项指定日期之前的日期自动转换为儒略历。改变的日期在 \ifdatejulian 和 \if\{datetype\}datejulian 测试下会返回"true"(见 § 4.6.2 节)。请谨记,只包含年份的日期不会转换为儒略历,例如"1565",这是因为没有月日的日期在儒略历表示下会引起混乱²⁴ 例如,在"1565"的例子中,在公历(格里高利历)"1565 年 1 月 10 日"之后的日期是儒略历"1565"年,而之前的日期是儒略历"1564"年。

$gregorianstart = \langle YYYY-MM-DD \rangle$

该选项控制在哪一日期之前的日期可以转换为儒略历。选项值有严格的字符串格式: 4位年份、2位月份和日期,并且由短划线分隔(或者具有"Dash"属性的任何有效 Unicode 字符)。默认值是"1582-10-15",即标准公历(格里高利历)的颁布日期。只有 julian 设置为"true"时本选项才起作用。

datezeros=true, false

default: true

该选项控制 short 和 terse 日期成分当没有覆盖特定格式时打印是否首位补零。

timezeros=true, false

default: true

该选项控制没有覆盖特定格式时,时刻成分打印是否首位补零。

timezones=true, false

default: false

该选项控制打印时刻时是否输出时区。

seconds=true, false

default: false

该选项控制打印时刻时是否输出秒。

dateabbrev=true, false

default: true

该选项控制 long 和 comp 日期格式打印时带有完整还是缩写的月份名。该选项类似于一般的 abbreviate 选项但是只针对日期格式。

datecirca=true, false

default: false

该选项控制关于日期是否输出"circa"信息。如果设置为 true,那么日期将由\datecircaprint 宏的展开来引导,见 § 3.10.1 节。

dateuncertain=true, false

default: false

该选项控制是否输出日期的不确定信息。如果设置为 true,那么日期将由 \dateuncertainprint 宏的展开来引导,并由 \enddateuncertainprint 宏结束,见 § 3.10.1 节。

²⁴ 缺失时刻的日期也有可能出现这一问题,不过对于文献作品问题不大。

该选项控制如何打印日期纪元信息。选项值"astronomical"使用 \dateeraprintpre 命令在起止日期之前打印纪元信息。而选项值"secular"和"christian"使用 \dateeraprint 命令在起止日期之后打印纪元信息。缺省情况下,使用"astronomical"效果是在公元前日期之前使用负号,而使用"'secular'"或"'christian'"的效果是在公元前日期之后加上"BCE"或"BC"等相关的本地化字符串。见§3.10.1节的有关评论以及§4.9.2.21节的本地化字符串。

$dateeraauto=\langle integer \rangle$

default: 0

default: astronomical

该选项设置天文学年份,使得在之前的年份自动添加纪元本地化字符串。只有当dateera 设置为 "secular"或者 "christian"时本选项才起作用。

time=12h, 24h, 24hcomp

default: 24h

该选项控制时刻规范的基本格式。可用的选择有:

24h 24 小时格式, 例如:

14:03:23

14:3:23

14:03:23+05:00

14:03:23Z

14:21:23-14:23:45

14:23:23-14:23:45

24hcomp 带有缩写范围的 24 小时格式,例如:

14:21-23 (小时相同)

14:23:23-45 (小时和分钟相同)

12h 带有本地化上下午标识符的 12 小时格式,例如:

2:34 PM

2:34 PM-3:50 PM

从以上例子可以看出,实际的时刻格式是与语言相关的。请注意,如果与指定的区域不同,那么上下午(AM/PM)字符串对应与 abbreviate 宏包选项。24 小时格式首位补零的话可以单独用 timezeros 宏包选项控制。此外与语言相关并可以单独定制的还有时刻成分之间的分隔符\bibtimesep、\bibtzminsep,以及时刻与时区之间的分隔符\bibtimezonesep,见§3.10.2 节。还有一些全局的宏包选项可以控制是否打印秒和时区(分别是 seconds 和 timezones,见§3.1.2.1 节)。如果有时区的话,要么是字符'Z',要么是表示正负偏移量的数值。默认样式不打印时刻信息。定制样式可以使用 \print $\langle datetype \rangle$ time 命令打印时刻,见§4.4.1 节。

labeltime=12h, 24h, 24hcomp

default: 24h

类似于 time 选项但是控制由 \DeclareLabeldate 选择的域中得到的时刻部分的格式。

⟨datetype⟩time=12h, 24h, 24hcomp

default: 24h

类似于 time 选项但是控制数据模型中 (datetype)date 域中得到的时刻部分格式。

alltimes=12h, 24h, 24hcomp

为数据模型中所有的时刻设置相同的 labeltime 和 〈datetype〉time 值。默认数据模型中支持时刻部分的日期域有 date、origdate、eventdate 和 urldate。

dateusetime=true, false

default: false

确定在日期域的日期成分后是否打印时刻成分。日期和时刻成分的分隔符是\bibdatetimesep,见§3.10.2节。如果使用紧凑的日期格式(见§3.1.2.1节),那么该选项则不起作用,否则会引起混乱。

labeldateusetime=true, false

default: false

类似于 dateusetime 选项,但是控制是否打印 \DeclareLabeldate 选择的域中的时刻成分。

⟨datetype⟩dateusetime=true, false

default: false

类似于 dateusetime 选项,但是控制是否打印数据模型中 〈datetype〉date 域的时刻成分。

alldatesusetime=true.false

default: false

为数据模型中所有的 〈datetype〉date 域设置 labeldateusetime 和〈datetype〉dateusetime选项值。

defernumbers=true, false

default: false

与标准 ETEX 不同,本宏包生成的数字标签一般在文档正文的一开始就分配给引用列表全体。如果该选项被激活,数字标签(也就是§4.2.4 中讨论的 labelnumber域)在参考文献第一次打印出某条目时就被分配。进一步解释见§3.13.5 节。该选项在后端将数据导出到 bbl 文件后仍然需要两次 ETEX 运行(在由分页变化等要求的编译之外)。需要注意的一件重要的事是,如果你在文档中改变了该选项值(或者那些依赖于本选项的选项值,例如与\printbibliography 宏相关的选项,§3.7.2 节),那么很可能需要删除当前的 aux 文件然后重新运行 ETEX 来获得正确的数字编号,见§4.1 节。

punctfont=true, false

default: false

该选项激活一个可选机制,用来处理不同字体打印的域(例如斜体的标题)之后的单位标点。详见 § 4.7.1 节中的 \setpunctfont。

arxiv=abs, ps, pdf, format

default: abs

arXiv 链接的路径选择。如果启用超链接支持,该选项会控制 arXiv 的 eprint 域会指向该文件的哪个版本。以下是可用的选择:

abs 链接到摘要页面。

ps 链接到 PostScript 版本。

pdf 链接到 PDF 版本。

format 链接到格式选择页面。

关于 arXiv 和电子出版信息的支持详见 § 3.12.7 节。

texencoding=auto, ⟨encoding⟩

default: auto

指定 tex 文件的编码。该选项影响从后端转向 Biblatex 的数据。该选项对应于 Biber 的 -output-encoding 选项。可用的选择有:

auto 尝试自动识别输入的编码。如果有 inputenc/inputenx/luainputenc

等宏包,Biblatex 会从宏包中获取主要编码。否则,当探测到 X_HT_EX

或 LuaTeX 引擎时设定为 UTF-8 编码,其余情况设为 Ascii。

(encoding) 显式指定编码为 (encoding)。少数情况下自动检测失败,或你出于某

种原因想强制为某个编码,那么此时可以使用该选项。

请注意如果 bibencoding = auto,那么设置 texencoding = ⟨encoding⟩ 也会影响 bibencoding 选项。

bibencoding=auto, \langle encoding\rangle

default: auto

指定 bib 文件的编码。该选项对应于 Biber 程序的 --output-encoding 选项。可用 选择有:

auto 当工作流是透明时,即,当 bib 文件的编码与 tex 文件的编码相同

时使用该选项。

(encoding) 如果 bib 文件的编码与 tex 不同,你需要显式指定编码。

默认情况下,Biblatex 假定 tex 和 bib 文件使用相同的编码(bibencoding=auto)。

safeinputenc=true, false

default: false

如果启动该选项,Biblatex 会在载入 inputenc/inputenx 宏包并且输入代码是 UTF-8 时自动加入 texencoding=ascii,也就是说,它会忽略任何基于宏的 UTF-8 支持而只是用 Ascii。然后 Biber 会尝试将 bib 文件中的任意非 Ascii 数据转化为 Ascii。例如,它会将 \S 转化为 \d{S}。关于为什么需要启用该选项的原因,请参考 \S 2.4.2.1 节。

bibwarn=true, false

default: true

默认情况下,Biblatex 会报告后端产生的关于 bib 文件数据的警告,就像 图EX 警告一样。使用该选项会取消此警告。

 $mincrossrefs = \langle integer \rangle$ default: 2

当需要后端运行时设置交叉引用的最小数目为 $\langle integer \rangle^{25}$ 。该选项也影响 xref 域的处理。详见 § 2.2.3 节以及 § 2.4.1 节对该域的描述。

 $minxrefs=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 2

类似于 mincrossrefs 但针对于 xref 域。

3.1.2.2 特定样式选项 下列选项由标准样式(而不是宏包内核)提供。技术上讲,它们和 § 3.1.2.1 中的选项一样也是导言区选项。

isbn=true, false default: true

该选项控制是否打印 isbn/issn/isrn 等域。

url=true, false default: true

该选项控制是否打印 url 域并获取日期。该选项只影响 url 信息是可选的那些条目类型。而 @online 条目的 url 域总是打印出来的。

doi=true, false default: true

该选项控制是否打印 doi 域。

eprint=true, false default: true

该选项控制是否打印 eprint 信息。

3.1.2.3 内部选项 下列导言区选项的默认设置由文献和引用样式控制。除了pagetracker 和 (*name*) in its 是你可能想调整的之外,一般没有必要显式地设置。

pagetracker=true, false, page, spread

该选项控制 § 4.6.2 节的 \ifsamepage 和 \iffirstonpage 测试所需的页码跟踪器。可用选择有:

default: false

default: false

true 在自动模式下激活。该选项在 LATEX 处于双面模式时类似于 spread,

否则类似于 page。

false 不激活跟踪器。

page 在页面模式下激活。此时跟踪器基于每一页。

spread 在跨页模式下激活。此时跟踪器基于每一页面(双页)。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见 § 4.11.5 节。

citecounter=true, false, context

该选项控制 § 4.6.2 节的 citecounter 所需的引用计数器。可用的选择有:

²⁵如果一个条目被 bib 文件中的其它条目引用的数目达到这个阈值,它就会载入到参考文献中,即使没有显式地被引用。这是 BibTeX 格式的标准特性,并不是 Biblatex 特有的。更多信息见 § 2.2.3 节中关于 crossref 域的描述。

true 在全局模式下启用引用计数器。

false 禁用引用计数器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用引用计数器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用将

独立计数。

citetracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict

default: false

该选项控制 § 4.6.2 节的 \ifciteseen 和 \ifentryseen 测试所需的引用跟踪器。可用选择有:

true 在全局模式下启用跟踪器。

false 禁用跟踪器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用跟踪器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用将独立

跟踪。

strict 在严格模式下启用跟踪器。此时,跟踪器只考虑独立的引用,即,引

用命令只传递单个的条目键。

constrict 该模式是 context 和 strict 的结合。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见 § 4.11.5 节。

ibidtracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict

default: false

该选项控制 § 4.6.2 节的 \ifciteibid 测试所需的"如前所述"(ibidem) 跟踪器。可用的选择有:

true 在全局模式下启用跟踪器。

false 禁用跟踪器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用跟踪器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用将独立

跟踪。

strict 在严格模式下启用跟踪器。此时将不考虑那些模糊不清的参考文献。

如果当前引用(包含"ibidem")或者之前引用("ibidem"的指向)

包含多个文献时,就认为是模糊不清的。26

constrict 该模式是 context 和 strict 的结合。它也保持对脚注数量的跟踪,

不过检测脚注中含义不清的文献时比 strict 更加严格。除了 strict 选项的条件外,只有当前引用和之前引用都在同一个或者连续的脚

注中时, 脚注中的文献才认为是含义清晰的。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见 § 4.11.5 节。

opcittracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict

default: false

该选项控制§4.6.2 节的 \ifopcit 测试所需的 "opcit" 跟踪器。该特性类似于 "ibidem" 跟踪器,不同之处在于它跟踪的是基于某一作者或编辑的引用,即,如果

²⁶例如,假设一开始的引用是"Jones, *Title*; Williams, *Title*",而接下来的是"ibidem"。从技术角度来看,"ibidem" 指向"Williams"是相对清晰的,因为这是之前引用命令处理的最后文献。然而对于用户而言,"ibidem"也可以同时指向这两个标题,因此含义不清。严格模式就避免这种含义不清的文献。

引用项目与之前项目的作者或编辑相同,那么 \ifopcit 的结果为 true。可用选择有:

true 在全局模式下启用该跟踪器。

false 禁用该跟踪器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用该跟踪器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用会独

立跟踪。

strict 在严格模式下启用该跟踪器。此时将不跟踪那些含义不清的引用。详

见 ibidtracker=strict 选项。

constrict 该模式是 context 和 strict 的结合。详见 ibidtracker=constrict 选

项的解释。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见§4.11.5节。

loccittracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict

default: false

该选项控制§ 4.6.2 节的 \ifloccit 测试所需的 "loccit" 跟踪器。该特性类似于 "opcit" 跟踪器,不同之处在于它也会检查 〈postnote〉 选项是否匹配,即,如果引用项目与之前引用指向的页数相同,那么 \ifloccit 的结果为 true。可用选择有:

true 在全局模式下启用该跟踪器。

false 禁用该跟踪器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用该跟踪器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用会独

立跟踪。

strict 在严格模式下启用该跟踪器。此时将不跟踪那些含义不清的引用。详

见 ibidtracker=strict 选项。此外,该模式也会检查 (postnote) 选项

是否是数值型的(基于§4.6.2节的 \ifnumerals 命令)。

constrict 该模式是 context 和 strict 的结合。详见 ibidtracker=constrict

选项的解释。此外,该模式也会检查 (postnote) 选项是否是数值型的

(基于 § 4.6.2 节的 \ifnumerals 命令)。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见§4.11.5节。

idemtracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict

default: false

该选项控制§4.6.2 节的 \ifciteidem 测试所需的"idem"跟踪器。可用选择有:

true 在全局模式下启用该跟踪器。

false 禁用该跟踪器。

context 在内容相关模式下启用该跟踪器。此时,脚注和正文中的引用会独

立跟踪。

strict 该选项是 true 的别名。提供该选项只是为了和其它跟踪器保持一

致。由于"idem"不会像"ibidem"或"op. cit."那样引起歧义,因

此不必使用 strict 跟踪模式。

constrict 该模式类似于 context,只有一个额外条件:对于脚注中的引用,只有当前引用和之前引用位于同一个或相连的脚注中才会认为是含义明确的。

注意所有的浮动体都禁用该跟踪器,见 § 4.11.5 节。

parentracker=true, false

该选项控制括号跟踪器,用于对嵌套的圆括号和方括号的跟踪。所得信息用于 § 3.8.5 节的 \parentext 和 \brackettext 命令、§ 4.10.4 节的 \mkbibparens 和 \mkbibbrackets 命令,以及同样来自于 § 4.10.4 节的 \bibopenparen, \bibcloseparen, \bibopenbracket, \bibclosebracket 等命令。

default: true

default: false

 $maxparens=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 3

圆括号和方括号嵌套的最大层级。如果嵌套深度大于该值则会报错。

⟨namepart⟩inits=true, false

启用该选项时所有的〈namepart〉姓名部分都会用首字母表示。该选项会影响 § 4.6.2 节的 \if〈namepart〉inits 测试。在数据模型中有效的姓名部分由\DeclareDatamodelConstant 命令定义,见 § 4.2.3 节。

terseinits=true, false default: false

该选项控制 Biblatex 生成的首字母格式。当启用时,首字母缩写将采用没有点号和空格的紧凑形式。例如 Donald Ervin Knuth 的首字母缩写默认是 "D. E.",而在此选项启用时会是 "DE"。该选项会影响 § 4.6.2 中的 \ifterseinits 测试。该选项会重新定义一些控制首字母格式的宏。详见 § 3.13.4 节。

labelalpha=true, false default: false

是否提供特殊的域 labelalpha 和 extraalpha,详见 § 4.2.4 节。该选项可以基于每一条目设置。另见 maxalphanames 和 minalphanames 选项。表 8 总结了各种 extra* 歧义消除的计数器以及它们所跟踪的选项。

 $maxalphanames=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 3

类似于 maxnames 但用于定制 labelalpha 域的格式。

minalphanames= $\langle integer \rangle$ default: 1

类似于 minnames 但用于定制 labelalpha 域的格式。

labelnumber=true, false default: false

是否提供特殊域 labelnumber, 详见 § 4.2.4 节。该选项可基于每一类型而设置。

labeltitle=true, false default: false

是否提供特殊域extratitle,详见§4.2.4节。请注意,特殊域 labeltitle 总是提供的,而该选项控制是否利用 labeltitle 生成 extratitle 信息。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。表 8 总结了各种 extra* 消除歧义的计数器以及所跟踪的选项。

 选项	测试	跟踪的域
singletitle	\ifsingletitle	labelname
uniquetitle	\ifuniquetitle	labeltitle
uniquebaretitle	\ifuniquebaretitle	labeltitle (当 labelname 为空 时)
uniquework	\ifuniquework	labelname+labeltitle

Table 7: 惟一性选项

default: false

labeltitleyear=true, false

是否提供特殊域 extratitleyear,详见 § 4.2.4 节。请注意,特殊域 labeltitle 总是提供的,而该选项控制是否利用 labeltitle 生成 extratitleyear 信息。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。表 8 总结了各种 extra* 消除歧义的计数器以及所跟踪的选项。

labeldateparts=true, false

是否提供特殊域 labelyear, labelmonth, labelday, labelendyear, labelendmonth, labelendday, labelhour, labelendhour, labelminute, labelendminute, labelsecond, labelendsecond, labelseason, labelendseason, labeltimezone, labelendtimeone 以及 extrayear, 详见§4.2.4节。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。表8总结了各种 extra* 消除歧义的计数器以及所跟踪的选项。

singletitle=true, false

是否提供 \ifsingletitle 测试所需的数据,详见 § 4.6.2 节。关于该测试中数据的控制因素详见表 7。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。

uniquetitle=true, false

是否提供 \ifuniquetitle 测试所需的数据,详见 § 4.6.2 节。关于该测试中数据的控制因素详见表 7。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。

uniquebaretitle=true, false

是否提供 \ifuniquebaretitle 测试所需的数据,详见 § 4.6.2 节。关于该测试中数据的控制因素详见 表 7。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。

uniquework=true, false

是否提供 \ifuniquework 测试所需的数据,详见 § 4.6.2 节。关于该测试中数据的控制因素详见表 7。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。

uniqueprimaryauthor=true, false

是否提供 \ifuniqueprimaryauthor 测试所需的数据,详见 § 4.6.2 节。

uniquename=true, false, init, full, allinit, allfull, mininit, minfull default: false

是否更新 uniquename 计数器,详见 § 4.6.2 节。该特性会消除 labelname 列表中各个姓名的歧义。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。可用的选择有:

true full 的别称。

false 禁用该特性。

init 只使用首字母消除歧义。

full 根据要求使用首字母或全名消除歧义。

allinit 类似于 init, 但是会对 labelname 列表中所有姓名消除歧义,即便

超出了 maxnames/minnames/uniquelist 选项。

allfull 类似于 full, 但是会对 labelname 列表中所有姓名消除歧义,即便

超出了 maxnames/minnames/uniquelist 选项。

mininit init 的变种,只对列表中有同一姓(last name)的姓名消除歧义。

minfull full 的变种,只对列表中有同一姓(last name)的姓名消除歧义。

请注意, uniquename 选项也会影响 uniquelist 选项、\ifsingletitle 测试,以及extrayear 域。更多细节和实例见 § 4.11.4 节。

uniquelist=true, false, minyear

是否更新 uniquelist 计数器,详见 § 4.6.2 节。如果 labelname 列表在 maxnames/minnames 截断后含义不清,那么该特性会消除 labelname 列表中的歧义。本质上,该选项会覆盖基于每一域的 maxnames/minnames 设置。该选项也可基于每一类型而设置。可用的选择有:

true 消除 labelname 列表的歧义。

false 禁用该特性。

minyear 只有当被截断的列表与带有相同 labelyear 的另一列表相同时才会

消除 labelname 列表的歧义。该操作模式适用于作者-年份样式中,

如果要求 labeldateparts=true 的场合。

请注意, uniquelist 选项也会影响 \ifsingletitle 测试和 extrayear 域。更多细节和实例见 § 4.11.4 节。

3.1.3 条目选项

条目选项是控制参考文献数据条目处理的包选项。可以在以下不同尺度上设 置。

3.1.3.1 **导言区/类型/条目选项** 下列选项可以基于类型或条目在 options 域中设置。此外还可以在 \usepackage 的可选项以及配置文件和导言区中使用。这可用于全局改变默认样式。

useauthor=true, false

default: true

default: false

是否在标签和排序中使用 author 域。如果一个条目包含 author 域但出于某种原因通常不以作者引用,该选项是很有用的。设置 useauthor=false 并不意味着 author 被完全忽略了,而只是在标签和排序中不使用。该条目将按照 editor 或 title 域

选项	激活域	激活计数器	计数器跟踪
labelalpha	labelalpha	extraalpha	label
labeldateparts	labelyear	extrayear	labelname+
	labelmonth		labelyear
	labelday		
	labelendyear		
	labelendmonth		
	labelendday		
	labelhour		
	labelminute		
	labelsecond		
	labelendhour		
	labelendminute		
	labelendsecond		
	labelseason		
	labelendseason		
	labeltimezone		
	labelendtimezone		
labeltitle	_	extratitle	labelname+labeltitle
labeltitleyear	_	extratitleyear	labeltitle+labelyear

Table 8: 歧义消除计数器

的字母顺序排列。在标准样式中,此时 author 会在标题后打印。参考§3.5 节。该选项可以基于每一类型设置。

default: true

default: false

useeditor=true.false

在标签和排序中是否用 editor 域来代替缺失的 author 域。如果一个条目包含 editor 域但是通常不以作者引用,那么该选项是很有用的。设置 useeditor=false 并不意味着 editor 被完全忽略了,而只是在标签和排序中不用 editor 来代替缺失的 author。该条目会以 title 的字母顺序排列。在标准样式中,此时 editor 会在标题之后打印。参考§3.5 节。该选项可以基于每一类型或条目而设置。

usetranslator=true, false

在标签和排序中是否用 translator 代替缺失的 author/editor。设置 usetranslator = true 并不意味着 translator 会覆盖 author/editor,而只是当 author/editor 缺失或者 useauthor 和 useeditor 选项设置为 false 时作为后备。也就是说,如果要按译者而不是作者引用一本书,你需要设置如下选项:

```
@Book{...,
  options = {useauthor=false,usetranslator=true},
  author = {...},
  translator = {...},
  ...
```

该选项也可以基于每一类型或条目而设置。在标准样式中,translator 默认在标题之后打印,参考§3.5 节。

$use\langle name \rangle = true, false$

default: true

按照 useauthor、useeditor 和 usetranslator,数据模型中定义的所有的姓名列表都有一个选项用于控制自动定义的排序和标签行为。此时会自动创建全局、基于类型和基于条目选项而调用的 use(name)。

useprefix=true, false

default: false

是否在以下几种情况下考虑默认数据模型中的姓名前缀部分(von、van、of,、da、de、della等):

- •在引用中打印姓
- •排序
- •生成标签的某些类型
- •生成姓名惟一性信息。
- •参考文献的格式方面

如果激活该选项, Biblatex 总是在姓氏前面加上该前缀。例如 Ludwig van Beethoven 将引作 "van Beethoven" 并按照 "Van Beethoven, Ludwig" 排序,而如果未激活该选项(默认情况),将引作"Beethoven"并按照"Beethoven, Ludwig van"排序。该选项也可基于每一类型设置。当使用 biblatexml 数据源以及 Biber 支持的 BraTeX 扩展名格式时,还可以基于每一姓名列表或姓名而设置。

indexing=true, false, cite, bib

indexing 选项也可以基于每一类型或条目设置。详见 § 3.1.2.1 节。

3.1.3.2 类型/条目选项 下列选项只能基于类型或条目在 options 域中设置,而不能全局设置。

skipbib=true, false

default: false

如果激活该选项,该条目在参考文献中将被排除在外但仍然可以引用。该选项也可以基于每一类型设置。

skipbiblist=true, false

default: false

如果激活该选项,该选项将在文献列表中被排除在外,但仍然包含在参考文献中 并可以被 shorthand 引用。该选项也可以基于每一类型设置。

skiplab=true, false

default: false

如果激活该选项,Biblatex 不会给该条目分配标签。正常操作不需要该选项。要小心使用。当激活时,Biblatex 不能保证相应条目有唯一的引用,而且那些需要标签的引用样式可能不能为该条目创建有效的引用。该选项也可以基于每一类型设置。

dataonly=true, false

default: false

设置该选项等价于设置 uniquename = false、uniquelist = false、skipbib、skipbiblist 和 skiplab。正常操作不需要该选项。要小心使用。该选项也可以基于每一类型设置。

3.1.3.3 条目选项 下列选项只能基于条目在 options 域中而不能全局或基于类型设置。

labelnamefield=\(fieldname\)

指定搜索 labelname 时首先考虑的域。本质上,只在该条目中该域会放到 \DeclareLabelname 创建的搜索列表之前。

labeltitlefield=(fieldname)

指定搜索 labeltitle 时首先考虑的域。本质上,只在该条目中该域会放到 \DeclareLabeltitle 创建的搜索列表之前。

3.1.4 遗留选项

下面的遗留选项可以全局地在 \documentclass 的可选项中使用,也可以局部 地在 \usepackage 的可选项中使用:

openbib 该选项用于向后兼容标准 图EX 文档类。openbib 类似于 block=par。

Deprecated

3.2 全局定制

除了编写新的引用和文献样式,本宏包中还有很多定制样式的方法。定制通常在导言区中进行,但也可以在配置文件中进行以便长期使用。配置文件也可以用于将宏包选项从默认值初始化为不同的值。

3.2.1 配置文件

当可用时,本宏包会导入配置文件 biblatex.cfg。该文件会在宏包的末尾,紧跟在引用和文献样式导入之后立即被读取。

3.2.2 设置宏包选项

§ 3.1.1 节中的实时载入宏包选项必须在 \usepackage 的可选项中给出。§ 3.1.2 节中的宏包选项同样可以在导言区中给出。以下命令用于执行选项:

\ExecuteBibliographyOptions[$\langle entrytype, ... \rangle$]{ $\langle key=value, ... \rangle$ }

该命令也可以在配置文件中使用,以修改宏包选项的默认设置。某些选项还可以基于每一条目而设置。此时,可选的〈entrytype〉选项用来确定条目类型。〈entrytype〉选项可以是逗号分隔的值列表。

3.3 标准样式

本节简要地描述了本宏包所带的所有文献和引用样式。如果你想自己写样式文件,请参考§4节。

3.3.1 标注样式

本宏包所带的引用样式实现了一些常见的引用格式。所有的标准样式都支持 shorthand 域,并且支持超链接和索引。

numeric 该样式实现与 ETEX 的标准文献工具类似的数值式引用格式。它应当与某种能在 参考文献中打印出相应标签的数值式文献样式一起使用,并用于文内引用。该样 式在宏包载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、labelnumber=true。该 样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 subentry,这会影响条目集的处理。如果该选项被禁止,指向条目集中某一成员的引用会指向整个的条目集。如果该选项被激活,该样式会支持类似于"[5c]"这样指向条目集中的子条目的引用(这个例子是第三个条目)。详见样式例子。

numeric-comp numeric 样式紧凑形式的变种,会将两个以上的连续数字打印成一个区间。该样式 类似于 cite 宏包和数值模式中的 natbib 宏包的 sort&compress 选项。例如,"[8, 3, 1, 7, 2]"会变成"[1-3, 7, 8]"。它用于文中引用。该样式在宏包载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、sortcites=true、labelnumber=true。它也提供了 subentry 选项。

numeric-verb numeric 样式详细形式的变种。不同之处在于对一组引用的处理,并且只当不同的条目键值传递给单个引用命令时才会显示差异。例如,"[2,5,6]"会变成"[2]; [5];[6]"。它用于文中引用。该样式在宏包载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autociteinline、labelnumber=true。它也提供了 subentry 选项。

alphabetic 该样式实现的字母顺序引用格式类似于传统 BmTeX 的 alpha.bst 样式。字母标签某种程度上类似于紧凑的作者—年份样式,但是使用的方式类似于数字引用格式。例如,"Jones 1995"会是"[Jon95]";而"Jones and Williams 1986"会缩写为"[JW86]"。该样式应当与一种字母顺序文献样式一起使用,从而可以在参考文献中打印出相应的标签。它用于文内引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项:autocite=inline、labelalpha=true。

alphabetic-verb alphabetic 样式详细格式的变种。不同之处在于对一组引用的处理,并且只当不同的条目键值传递给单个引用命令时才会显示差异。例如"[Doe92; Doe95; Jon98]"。它用于文内引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、labelalpha=true。

authoryear 该样式实现了作者—年份引用格式。如果参考文献中包含多个由同一作者同一年份发表的作品,那么年份后会附加一个字母用以区分。例如该样式会打印出"Doe 1995a; Doe 1995b; Jones 1998"这样的引用。该样式应当与一种作者—年份文献样式一起使用,从而可以在参考文献中打印出相应的标签。它起初用于文内引用,但也可以用在脚注中。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、labeldate=true、uniquename=full、uniquelist=true。

authoryear-comp authoryear 样式紧凑格式的变种。如果传递给单个引用命令的一列文献作者相同,那么该作者只会打印一次。如果它们年份也相同,那么年份也只会打印一次。例如,"Doe 1995b; Doe 1992; Jones 1998; Doe 1995a"在该样式下会变成"Doe 1992,

1995a,b; Jones 1998"。它起初用于文中引用,但也可以用在脚注中。该样式在载 入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、sortcites=true、labeldate=true、 uniquename=full, uniquelist=true.

authoryear-ibid

authoryear样式的变种,会用缩略语 ibidem 替代重复的引用,除非该引用在当前页 或跨页是第一次出现,或者 ibidem 在宏包选项 ibidtracker=constrict 的意义下表 意不清。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、labeldate=true、 uniquename=full, uniquelist=true, ibidtracker=constrict, pagetracker=true. 该样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 ibidpage。详见样式例子。

authoryear-icomp

一个结合了 authoryear-comp 和 authoryear-ibid 的样式。该样式在载入时设置如 下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、labeldate=true、uniquename=full、uniquelist= true、ibidtracker=constrict、pagetracker=true、sortcites=true。该样式还额 外提供了一个导言区选项 ibidpage。详见样式例子。

authortitle 该样式实现了一个简单的作者-标题引用格式。如果可用的话,它会使用 shorttitle 域。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、uniquename=full、uniquelist=true。

authortitle-comp

authortitle 样式紧凑格式的变种。如果传递给单个引用命令的一列文献作者相 同,那么该作者只会打印一次。例如,"Doe, First title; Doe, Second title"在此样式 下会变成"Doe, First title, Second title"。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入 时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、sortcites=true、uniquename=full、 uniquelist=true。

authortitle-ibid

authortitle 样式的变种,会用缩略语 ibidem 替代重复的引用,除非该引用在当 前页或跨页是第一次出现,或者 ibidem 在宏包选项 ibidtracker=constrict 的意 义下表意不清。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、uniquename=full、uniquelist=true、ibidtracker=constrict、 pagetracker=true。该样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 ibidpage。详见样式例 子。

authortitle-icomp

结合了 authortitle-comp 和 authortitle-ibid 特性的样式。该样式在载入时设 置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、uniquename=full、uniquelist=true、 ibidtracker=constrict、pagetracker=true、sortcites=true。该样式还额外提供 了一个导言区选项 ibidpage。详见样式例子。

authortitle-terse authortitle 样式简明格式的变种,如果文献中包含多个相应作者/编辑的作品,那 么只会打印出标题。如果可用的话,该样式会使用 shorttitle 域。它在文中引用 和脚注中引用都适用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、 singletitle=true\ uniquename=full\ uniquelist=true\

authortitle-tcomp

结合了 authortitle-comp 和 authortitle-terse 特性的样式。如果可用的话,该 样式会使用 shorttitle 域。它在文内引用和脚注中引用都适用。该样式在载入 时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、sortcites=true、singletitle=true、 uniquename=full, uniquelist=true.

authortitle-ticomp

结合了 authortitle-icomp 和 authortitle-terse 特性的样式。换句话说就是带有 *ibidem* 特性的 authortitle-tcomp 样式变种。它在文中引用和脚注中引用都适用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=inline、ibidtracker=constrict、pagetracker=true、sortcites=true、singletitle=true、uniquename=full、uniquelist=true。该样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 ibidpage。详见样式例子。

verbose

详细的引用样式,在第一次引用某条目时会打印出类似于参考文献那样的长引用格式,并且在之后打印出短格式。如果可用的话,shorttitle 域会用在所有的短格式中。如果 shorthand 域有定义,该 shorthand 会在第一次引用时被引入并在之后作为短格式被使用。由于在第一次引用时提供了所有的文献数据,因此该样式的使用不需要参考文献和 shorthand 列表。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context。该样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 citepages。详见样式例子。

verbose-ibid

verbose 样式的变种,会用缩略语 *ibidem* 替代重复的引用,除非该引用在当前页或跨页是第一次出现,或者 *ibidem* 在宏包选项 ibidtracker=strict 的意义下表意不清。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context、ibidtracker=constrict、pagetracker=true。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 ibidpage 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

verbose-note

该样式与 verbose 样式类似,会在第一次引用某条目时打印出类似于参考文献那样的长格式,并且在之后打印出短格式。与 verbose 样式不同的是,短格式会指向带有长格式的脚注。如果文献包含了多个同一作者/编辑的作品,该短格式会带有标题。如果可用的话,所有的短格式会使用 shorttitle 域。如果 shorthand 域有定义,它会被 verbose 样式处理。由于在第一次引用时提供了所有的文献数据,因此该样式的使用不需要参考文献和 shorthand 列表。该样式仅仅用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context、singletitle=true。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 pageref 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

verbose-inote

verbose-note 样式的变种,会用缩略语 *ibidem* 替代重复的引用,除非该引用在当前页或跨页是第一次出现,或者 *ibidem* 在宏包选项 ibidtracker=strict 的意义下表意不清。该样式仅仅用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context、ibidtracker=constrict、singletitle=true、pagetracker=true。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 ibidpage、pageref 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

verbose-trad1

该样式实现了传统的引用格式。与 verbose 样式类似,它会在第一次引用某条目时打印出类似于参考文献那样的长格式,并且在之后打印出短格式。此外,它在重复的引用中使用学术性缩略语 *ibidem、idem、op. cit.* 和 *loc. cit.* 来代替重复的作者、标题、页码数。如果 shorthand 域有定义,那么会在第一次引用时被引入并在之后作为短格式被使用。由于在第一次引用时提供了所有的文献数据,因此该样式的使用不需要参考文献和 shorthand 列表。它用于脚注中给出的引用。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=

context、ibidtracker=constrict、idemtracker=constrict、opcittracker=context、loccittracker=context。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 ibidpage、strict 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

Verbose-trad2 另外一种传统引用格式。它同样类似于 verbose 样式但是在重复的引用中使用 *ibidem* 和 *idem* 等学术性缩略语。与 verbose-trad1 样式不同的是, op. cit. 缩略语的逻辑有所不同,并且不使用 *loc. cit.*。事实上它更类似于 verbose-ibid 和 verbose-inote 而不是 verbose-trad1。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context、ibidtracker=constrict、idemtracker=constrict。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 ibidpage、strict 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

verbose-trad3 仍然是一种传统的引用格式。它类似于 verbose-trad2 样式,但是使用缩略语 *ibidem* 和 *op. cit.* 的方式稍有不同。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=footnote、citetracker=context、ibidtracker=constrict、loccittracker=constrict、该样式也额外提供了导言区选项 strict 和 citepages。详见样式例子。

reading 一个同名的文献样式所带的引用样式,会载入 authortitle 样式。

下列样式具有特殊目的,不用于文档的最终版本。

draft 在引用中使用条目键的草稿样式。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: autocite=plain。

debug 该样式会打印出条目键而不是标签。它只用于调试,在载入时设置如下的宏包选项; autocite=plain。

3.3.2 参考文献样式

本宏包所带的所有文献样式对于每一文献条目都使用相同的基本格式。不同之处仅仅在于参考文献中打印的标签种类和文献列表的总体格式。每一个引用样式都有一个对应的文献样式。请注意,一些文献样式仅仅载入了另外更一般的样式,因此这里没有提及。例如,文献样式 authortitle-comp 会载入 authortitle 样式。

numeric 该样式打印出类似于 图EX 标准文献功能的数值标签。它应与数值引用样式结合使用。请注意,shorthand 域会覆盖默认标签。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: labelnumber=true。该样式还额外提供了一个导言区选项 subentry,这会影响条目集的处理。如果该选项被激活,条目集中的所有成员都会用一个字母标记,这可用于集成员的引用而不是整个条目集。详见样式例子。

alphabetic 该样式打印的字母顺序标签类似于传统 BmTeX 的 alpha.bst 样式。它应与字母顺序引用样式结合使用。请注意, shorthand 域会覆盖默认标签。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: labelalpha=true、sorting=anyt。

authoryear 该样式不同于其它样式之处在于,发表日期不是在条目的末尾而是在作者/编辑之后。它应与一个作者—年份引用样式结合使用。重复的作者和编辑名会用短横线代替,除非该条目是当前页或跨页的第一个。该样式额外提供了导言区选项 dashed

来控制该特征。此外还额外提供了导言区选项 mergedate。详见样式例子。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: labeldate=true、sorting=nyt、pagetracker=true、mergedate=true。

authortitle 该样式不会打印出任何标签。它应与一个作者—年份引用样式结合使用。重复的作者和编辑名会用短横线代替,除非该条目是当前页或跨页的第一个。该样式额外提供了一个导言区选项 dashed 来控制该特征。详见样式例子。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: pagetracker=true。

verbose 该样式类似于 authortitle 样式。该样式额外提供了一个导言区选项 dashed。详见样式例子。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: pagetracker=true。

reading 这一特殊的文献样式是为个人阅读列表、带有注释的文献和类似应用而设计的。它选择性地在参考文献中包含 annotation、abstract、library 和 file 等域。如果需要的话,它还会在参考文献中添加不同种类的短标题。该样式还额外提供了导言区选项 entryhead、entrykey、annotation、abstract、library 和 file 来控制是否在参考文献中打印相应的项目。详见样式例子。见§ 3.12.8 节。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: loadfiles=true、entryhead=true、entrykey=true、annotation=true、abstract=true、library=true、file=true。

下列样式具有特殊目的,不用于文档的最终版本。

draft 草稿样式会在参考文献中包含条目键。文献会按照条目键排序。该样式在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: sorting=debug。

debug 该样式会以表格形式打印出所有的文献数据。它只用于调试,在载入时设置如下的宏包选项: sorting=debug。

3.4 关联条目

几乎所有的文献样式都需要作者去确定条目之间的某些关系类型,例如 "Reprint of"、"Reprinted in"等等。当然不可能通过提供数据域来覆盖所有的 关系,为此,Biblatex 通过使用条目域 related、relatedtype 和 relatedstring 提供了一种一般性的机制。被关联的条目不需要被引用,本身也不会出现在参考文献中(当然,除非它自己另外单独被引用),而是作为数据源被拷贝一份副本。 relatedtype 域需要确定在相关联条目的信息前打印的本地化字符串,例如"Orig. Pub. as"。 relatedstring 域可以用于覆盖那些通过 relatedtype 确定的字符串。一些例子如下:

```
@Book{key1,
    ...
    related = {key2},
    relatedtype = {reprintof},
    ...
}
```

```
@Book{key2,
...
}
```

这里我们指定条目 key1 是条目 key2 的重印本。在 Book 条目的文献驱动里,当为 条目 key1 而调用 \usebibmacro{related} 时:

- 如果本地化字符串 "reprintof" 有定义,那么将以 relatedstring: reprintof格式打印出来。如果该格式指令没有定义,这些字符串将以 relatedstring: default格式打印。
- 如果宏 related:reprintof 有定义,那么将用于确定条目 key2 包含的信息的格式,否则将使用宏 related:default。
- 如果 related: reprint of 格式有定义,那么将用于确定本地化字符串和数据的格式;如果该格式没有定义,将使用 related 格式。

也支持串联或者循环关系:

```
@Book{key1,
    ...
    related = {key2},
    relatedtype = {reprintof},
    ...
}

@Book{key2,
    ...
    related = {key3},
    relatedtype = {translationof},
    ...
}

@Book{key3,
    ...
    related = {key2},
    relatedtype = {translatedas},
    ...
}
```

也可以实现同一条目的多重关系:

```
@MVBook{key1,
...
related = {key2,key3},
```

```
relatedtype = {multivolume},
...
}

@Book{key2,
...
}

@Book{key3,
...
}
```

请注意,多重关联条目列表中的顺序是很重要的。多重关联条目的数据将按照该域中所列的顺序打印。关于该特征背后的机制请参考 § 4.5.1 节。可以通过 § 3.1.2.1 中的宏包选项 related 来关闭该特征。

可以使用 relatedoptions 域来设置关联条目数据克隆的选项。如果你需要覆盖默认设置的关于所有关联条目克隆的 dataonly 选项,那么该域是很有用的。例如,如果你想在文档中展示一些相关联克隆体的名称,同时想要它们不与其它条目的名称相混淆,但是正常情况下这不会发生的,因为相关联克隆体由基于每一条目的 dataonly 选项设置,这反过来又设置了 uniquename=false 和 uniquelist=false。此时,你只需设置 relatedoptions 为 skiplab,skipbib。

3.5 排序选项

本宏包支持多种文献排序格式。排序格式由§3.1.2.1 节中的 sorting 宏包选项确定。除了常规的数据域之外,还有一些特殊域也可用于优化文献排序。附录 C.1 和 C.2 大致概述了 Biblatex 支持的字母顺序排序格式。而年代顺序排序格式则列在 附录 C.3 中。以下依次是这些格式的一些解释。

在排序过程中首先要考虑的事项总是条目的 presort 域。如果该域没有定义,Biblatex 会使用缺省值 "mm" 作为预排序字符串。其次考虑的是 sortkey 域。如果该域有定义,它将作为主要的排序关键字。此时除了 presort 域,将不考虑其它信息。如果 sortkey 域没有定义,排序将使用姓名信息。本宏包将依次尝试使用 sortname、author、editor 和 translator 等域。考虑哪些域也取决于 useauthor、useeditor 和 usetranslator 选项的设置。如果这三个选项都没有启用,那么 sortname 也将被忽略。请注意,所有的名称域都与 maxnames 和 minnames 有关。如果没有名称域是合适的,或者由于它们没有定义、或者由于 use(name) 域都未启用,那么 Biblatex 将采用 sorttitle 和 title 作为最后的备选。余下考虑的诸项依次是: sortyear 域(如果给出的话),否则考虑 year 域的前四个数字; sorttitle 域(如果给出的话),否则考虑 title 域;volume 域。请注意,附录 C.2 展示的排序格式包括了额外一项: labelalpha 域是 "alphabetic" 文献样式所使用的标签。严格地讲,用于排序的字符串是 labelalpha + extraalpha。附录 C.2 中的排序格式只可以与字母顺序样式联合使用。

附录 C.3 展示的年代排序格式同样使用域 presort 和 sortkey(如果有定义的话)。其次考虑的是 sortyear 或者 year 域,这当然取决于是否可用。ynt 格式将从该域中提取前四个数字。如果这两个域都没有定义,那么将使用后备值 9999。这意味着没有年份的条目都会移动到列表末尾。ydnt 格式从概念上也是类似的,不过是用降序排列年份。与 ynt 格式一样,后备值是 9999。余下考虑的项与上面讨论的字母排序格式类似。请注意,ydnt 排序格式只对日期按照降序排列。其它项仍和平常一样按照升序排列。

通常来说不需要使用 sortkey、sortname 或 sorttitle 等特殊域。Biblatex 宏包通过使用条目常规域的数据就很容易得到所需的排列顺序。只有当你想手动修改文献排序或者所需的数据缺失时,你才需要使用这些特殊域。关于特殊域的可能用法请参考 § 2.2.3 节中的描述。

3.6 数据注解

理想状态下,文献数据文件中不应当有格式信息。然而,有时只有通过这种有争议的做法才能实现想要的结果。数据注解(data annotations)就是一种解决该问题的方法。通过允许用户在文献数据源中添加某种语义信息(而不是排版标记),使得文献样式可以在标记时使用该信息。例如,如果想要按照如下规则高亮某些作品中的姓名:学生作者在文献中用上标星号表示,而通讯作者用粗体表示;那么,可以尝试如下方法:

这一做法有一些问题。首先,它会打断 BirTeX 脆弱的姓名解析程序指令,可能根本不能编译。其次,数据与标记的混合是硬编码的: 其它样式不易共享和使用该数据。当然,在样式或者文件中使用 Biblatex 内部指令可能实现该格式,但是这一做法比较复杂而且不可靠,很多用户不愿意使用。

为了处理这些问题,Biblatex 提供了一般性的数据注解功能,使得可以向数据域、数据域列表中的项目(例如姓名),以及某些项目的一部分(例如姓、名等姓名部分)中附加逗号分隔列表作为注解。此外还提供了一些宏来检查可以用于格式指令的注解。

数据注解有三种"尺度",按照特性增加的顺序依次为:

- field—用于数据源条目中的顶层域
- item—用于数据源条目中列表域中的项目
- part-用于数据源条目中列表域中项目的一部分

BBTFX 和 biblatexml 数据源都支持数据注解。

在 biblatexml 数据源中添加数据注解是很容易的,因为可以通过简单的 XML 属性来指定。继续上面的例子,我们有:

```
<bltx:entries xmlns:bltx="http://biblatex-biber.sourceforge.net/</pre>
    → biblatexml">
  <bltx:entry id="test" entrytype="misc">
    <bltx:names type="author">
      <blt><bltx:name></br>
        <bltx:namepart type="given" initial="F">First1</bltx:namepart>
        <bltx:namepart type="family" initial="L" annotation="student">
   → Last1</bltx:namepart>
      </bltx:name>
      <bltx:name annotation="corresponding">
        <bltx:namepart type="given" initial="F">First2</bltx:namepart>
        <bltx:namepart type="family" initial="L">Last2</bltx:namepart>
      </bltx:name>
      <blt><bltx:name>
        <bltx:namepart type="given" initial="F">First3</bltx:namepart>
        <bltx:namepart type="family" initial="L">Last3</bltx:namepart>
      </bltx:name>
    </bltx:names>
 </bltx:entry>
</bltx:entries>
```

这里,向数据项目中添加注解的方式是很显然的。而在 BisTeX 数据源中,注解的格式就没有那么直观了:

```
@MISC{ann1,
   AUTHOR = {Last1, First1 and Last2, First2 and Last3, First3},
   AUTHOR+an = {1:family=student;2=corresponding},
}
```

这里域姓名后缀 +an 可以由用户定义 27 ,用于标记某个数据域为去掉后缀的域的注解。 $B_{\rm IB}T_{\rm P}X$ 注解域的格式如下:

```
<annotationspecs> ::= <annotationspec> [ ";" <annotationspec> ]
<annotationspec> ::= [ <itemcount> [ ":" <part> ] ] "=" <annotations>
<annotation> ::= <annotation> [ "," <annotation> ]
<annotation> ::= (string)
```

也就是说,多个特性之间由分号分隔。每一特性是一个等号后跟一个逗号分隔的注解关键字列表。为了为列表中某一项作注解,需要将该列表项的编号放在等号前面(列表从1开始编号)。如果需要为列表项的某一部分做注解,需要将该部分名放在编号之后,并且前接一个冒号。姓名部分的名称在数据模型中有定义,见§4.2.3 节。以下是一些例子:

²⁷ 见 Biber 的 -annotation-marker 选项。

```
AUTHOR = {Last1, First1 and Last2, First2 and Last3, First3},

AUTHOR+an = {3:given=annotation1, annotation2},

TITLE = {A title},

TITLE+an = {=a title annotation, another title annotation},

LANGUAGE = {english and french},

LANGUAGE+an = {1=annotation3; 2=annotation4}

}
```

为了在文献格式中获取注解信息,这里提供了三个宏,分别对应与相应的注解尺度:

 $\left\langle \left\langle annotation \right\rangle \right\rangle \left\langle \left\langle true \right\rangle \right\rangle \left\langle \left\langle false \right\rangle \right\rangle$

如果当前数据域有注解,那么执行 (true),否则为 false。

如果当前数据域的当前项目有注解,那么执行 (true),否则为 false。

 $\left(part \right) \left(annotation \right) \left(rue \right) \left(false \right)$

如果当前数据域中当前项目中名为 $\langle part \rangle$ 的部分有注解,那么执行 $\langle true \rangle$,否则为false。

这些宏的使用场合与 \currentfield, \currentlist 和 \currentname 等命令相同 (见 § 4.4.2 节),即,在格式指令内部。它们自动确定当前被处理的数据域的名称,以及能够确定列表域中当前项目的 listcount 值。姓名部分等项目部分需要显式地指明。下面的例子可以用于姓名格式指令,说明如何使用注解信息来解决本节之前提出的问题:在所有注解为"student"的姓之后加上星号:

```
\ifpartannotation{family}{student}
    {\textsuperscript{*}}
    {}%
```

将标记为 "corresponding"的姓名列表项中的姓和名加粗:

```
\renewcommand*{\mkbibnamegiven}[1]{%
  \ifitemannotation{corresponding}
    {\textbf{#1}}
    {#1}}

\renewcommand*{\mkbibnamefamily}[1]{%
  \ifitemannotation{corresponding}
    {\textbf{#1}}
    {#1}}
```

3.7 参考文献命令

3.7.1 数据源

 $\addbibresource[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle resource \rangle\}$

将〈resource〉添加到默认资源列表中,例如.bib文件。该命令只能在导言区中使用。它取代了过时的\bibliography命令。请注意,文件名包括扩展名,所以不要省略文件名中的.bib扩展名。另外要注意的是,〈resource〉只能是一个单独的数据源。添加更多的资源需要多次调用\addbibresource命令,例如:

\addbibresource{bibfile1.bib}

\addbibresource{bibfile2.bib}

\addbibresource[location=remote]{http://www.citeulike.org/bibtex/group

→ /9517}

\addbibresource[location=remote,label=lan]{ftp://192.168.1.57/~user/file.

 \hookrightarrow bib}

由于〈resource〉字符串的读取类似于抄录模式,因此它可以包含任意的字符。唯一的限制是其中任何的花括号必须左右匹配。可用的〈options〉如下:

label=⟨identifier⟩

给该数据源分配一个标签。《*identifier*》可以用于在 refsection 环境的可选参数中以取代该数据源的全名(见 § 3.7.4 节)。

 $location = \langle location \rangle$

default: local

数据源的地址。 $\langle location \rangle$ 可以是 local 或者 remote,分别对应本地数据和在线 URL 数据。远程资源需要 Biber 程序。支持 HTTP 和 FTP 协议。远程的 URL 必须是 bib 文件的合法路径全称或者是返回 bib 文件的 URL。

 $\mathsf{type} = \langle type \rangle \qquad \qquad \mathsf{default:file}$

资源的类型。目前唯一支持的类型是 file。

 $datatype = \langle datatype \rangle$

default: bibtex

资源的数据类型(格式)。目前支持以下格式:

bibtex BBTFX 格式。

biblatexml 针对 Biblatex 的实验性 XML 格式。见 § D。

 $\addglobalbib[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle resource \rangle\}$

该命令不同于 \addbibresource 之处在于将 〈resource〉添加到全局数据源列表中。不过,只有当文档中有参考文献章节并且使用 refsection 环境的可选参数(见§ 3.7.4 节)作为确定代替默认资源列表的备选资源时,考虑默认数据源和全局数据源的不同才是有意义的。任何全局资源将被添加到所有的参考文件章节中。

$\addsectionbib[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle resource \rangle\}$

该命令与 \addbibresource 的不同之处在于,会记录数据源的 〈options〉但是〈resource〉没有添加到任何数据源列表中。有该需求的场合是 (1) 该数据源仅仅用于 refsection 环境的可选参数中(§ 3.7.4 节);(2) 该数据源需要不同于默认设置的选项。此时,\addsectionbib 会在导言区中设置合适的〈options〉,从而在其使用前声明〈resource〉。 label 选项可以用于分配给该资源一个简短的名称。

$\bigliar{bibliography}{\langle bibfile, ... \rangle}$

Deprecated

添加文献资源的过时命令,仅处于向后兼容性而支持。类似 \addbibresource,该命令只能在导言区中使用,并将资源添加到默认资源列表中。它的选项是逗号分隔的 bib 文件列表。文件名中的 .bib 扩展名可以省略。也可以通过多次调用该命令来添加更多文件。该命令已过时,请考虑使用 \addbibresource 来取代。

3.7.2 参考文献

\printbibliography[$\langle key=value, ... \rangle$]

该命令可以打印出参考文献。它的可选参数是以 $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ 形式给出的一列选项。可用的选项如下:

default: bibliography/shorthands

default: bibliography/shorthands

$env=\langle name \rangle$

可以用 \defbibenvironment 定义的环境来控制参考文献和 shorthands 列表的高层次布局。该选项选择了一个环境。〈name〉对应于用 \defbibenvironment 定义环境时的标识符。缺省状态下,\printbibliography 命令使用标识符 bibliography; 而\printshorthands 使用 shorthands。另见 §§ ?? 和 3.7.7 节。

$heading=\langle name \rangle$

参考文献和 shorthand 列表通常有一个章标题或者节标题。该选项选择由 \defbibheading 定义的标题名 ⟨name⟩。缺省状态下,\printbibliography 命令使用标题名 bibliography; 而 \printshorthands 使用 shorthands。另见 §§ ?? 和 3.7.7节。

$title=\langle text \rangle$

如果标题定义支持的话,该选项覆盖由 heading 选项提供的缺省标题名。详见 § 3.7.7 节。

$prenote = \langle name \rangle$

前注是打印在标题之后、文献列表之前的任意文本片段。该选项选择由 \defbibnote 所定义的前注 $\langle name \rangle$ 。缺省状态下不打印任何前注。该注记使用标准正文字体。它不受 \bibsetup 和 \bibfont 的影响但可以包含自己的字体声明。详见 § 3.7.8 节。

```
postnote = \langle name \rangle
```

后注是打印在参考文献列表之后的任意文本片段。该选项选择由 \defbibnote 所定义的后注 \(name \)。缺省状态下不打印任何后注。该注记使用标准正文字体。它不受 \bibsetup 和 \bibfont 的影响但可以包含自己的字体声明。详见 § 3.7.8。

section=(integer) default: current section

只打印在第〈*integer*〉文节中引用的条目。该参考文献节从 1 开始编号。所有在 refsection 环境外给出的引用标记为第零节。详见 § 3.7.4 和 § 3.12.3 节中的使用 例子。

 $segment=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 0

只打印在第 $\langle integer \rangle$ 文献段中引用的条目。参考文献段从 1 开始编号。所有在 refsection 环境外给出的引用标记为第零段。详见 § 3.7.4 和 § 3.12.3 节中的使用 例子。请注意,一节内部的片段是在该节中局部编号的,故而需要的片段是被查询(或者当前激活的)节的第 n 段。

type=\(entrytype\)

只打印类型为 (entrytype) 的条目。

nottype=\langle entrytype\rangle

只打印类型不为 (entrytype) 的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

 $subtype = \langle subtype \rangle$

只打印域 entrysubtype 定义为 (subtype) 的条目。

 $notsubtype = \langle subtype \rangle$

只打印域 entrysubtype 没有定义或者不为 ⟨subtype⟩ 的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

keyword=\langle keyword \rangle

只打印域 keywords 包括 (keyword) 的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

 $notkeyword = \langle keyword \rangle$

只打印域 keywords 不包括 〈keyword〉的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

 $category = \langle category \rangle$

只打印属于 (category) 类型的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

 $notcategory = \langle category \rangle$

只打印不属于 (category) 类型的条目。该选项可以使用多次。

$filter=\langle name \rangle$

使用由 \defbibfilter 定义的 filter \(\lambda name\rangle\) 来过滤条目。详见 § 3.7.9 节。

$check=\langle name \rangle$

使用由 \defbibcheck 定义的 check \(name \) 来过滤条目。详见 § 3.7.9 节。

resetnumbers=\langle true, false, number \rangle

该选项只用于数值引用/参考文献样式,并且要求§3.1.2.1 中的 defernumbers 选项全局启用。如果启用的话,它将重新设置分配给相应文献中条目的数值标签,即,编号会重新从1开始。此外还可以传递数值给该选项以重置编号为给定的数值,例如 resetnumbers=10,这样可以改进整个文档中编号的连续性。请小心使用本选项,因为在手动重新设置下,Biblatex 不能保证标签是全局唯一的。

omitnumbers=true, false

该选项只用于数值引用/参考文献样式,并且要求§3.1.2.1 中的 defernumbers 选项 全局启用。如果启用的话,Biblatex 不会为相应文献中的条目分配数值标签。当数 值型子文献和其它不同格式(例如作者-标题或者作者-年份)的子文献相混合时,这是很有用的。

\bibbysection[$\langle key=value, ... \rangle$]

该命令会自动遍历所有的参考文献节。这等价于为每一节给出一个\printbibliography命令,不过会有额外好处:自动跳过不含参考文献的节。请注意,\bibbysection一开始寻找第1节中的文献。它会忽略 refsection 外给出的文献,因为它们被分配给第零节。使用例子请参考§3.12.3节。选项可以是由\printbibliography支持的一个子集。有效选项是 env、heading、prenote 和postnote。当前文献内容排序格式会应用在所有的节中(见§3.7.10节)。

\bibbysegment[$\langle key=value, ... \rangle$]

该命令会自动遍历所有的参考文献段。这等价于为当前 refsection 的每一段给出一个 \printbibliography 命令,不过会有额外好处:自动跳过不含参考文献的片段。请注意,\bibbysection 一开始寻找第 1 段中的文献。它会忽略 refsection 外给出的文献,因为它们被分配给第 0 段。使用例子请参考 § 3.12.3。选项可以是由 \printbibliography 支持的一个子集。有效选项是 env、heading、prenote 和 postnote。当前文献内容排序格式会用于所有的段中(见 § 3.7.10 节)。

\bibbycategory[$\langle key=value, ... \rangle$]

该命令遍历所有的文献类型。这等价于为每一类型给出一个 \printbibliography 命令,不过会有额外好处:自动跳过空类型。类型按照声明的顺序处理。示例见 \S 3.12.3 节。选项可以是由 \printbibliography 支持的一个子集。有效选项是 env、heading、prenote 和 postnote。请注意,heading 对于该命令是无效的。当前类型的 名字会自动作为标题名。这等价于传递 heading= $\langle category \rangle$ 给 \printbibliography,并且意味着对于每一类型都必须有一个匹配的标题定义。当前文献内容排序格式会用于所有的类型中(见 \S 3.7.10 节)。

\printbibheading[$\langle key=value, ... \rangle$]

该命令打印出由 \defbibheading 定义的参考文献标题。它有一个可选项,是用 $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ 记号给出的选项列表。选项是 \printbibliography 支持的一个小子集。有效选项是 heading 和 title。缺省情况下,该命令使用标题 bibliography。详见 § 3.7.7 节。实例也可见 §§ 3.12.3 和 3.12.4 节。

如果想要在参考文献中使用非全局排序格式的另外一种排序格式,使用§3.7.10节提供的文献内容切换命令。

3.7.3 参考文献列表

Biblatex 除了可以打印常规参考文献之外,还能根据文献数据打印任意文献信息列表,例如,与特定条目或者期刊标题缩写有关的速记缩写列表。

文献列表与常规参考文献不同的是,使用同一文献驱动打印所有条目,而不 是根据条目类型使用特定于条目的驱动。

 $\printbiblist[\langle key=value, ... \rangle] \{\langle biblistname \rangle\}$

该命令用于打印文献列表。其可选项是 $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ 形式的一列选项。除了 resetnumbers 和 omitnumbers,\printbibliography 命令(见§ 3.7.2 节)支持的 其它选项在这里都是有效的。如果文档中有任何 refsection 环境,那么文献列表 只针对于这些环境,详见§ 3.7.4 节。默认情况下该命令使用标题 biblist,详见§ 3.7.7 节。

必选项 (biblistname) 是文献列表的标题,用于确定如下项目:

- •用于打印列表条目的默认文献驱动。
- •使用 \DeclareBiblistFilter 声明的默认 filter (见 § 4.5.7 节),用于过滤 Biber 返回的条目。
- •使用 \defbibcheck 命令声明的默认 check (见§3.7.9节),用于后置处理列表条目。
- •默认使用的 bib 环境。
- •默认使用的排序格式名称。

在列表的排序方面,默认使用与该文献列表同名的排序格式(如果存在的话)。只有当未定义时才会切换到备选的当前内容排序格式(见§3.7.10节)。

最常用的文献列表是关于某些条目的速记列表,出于向后兼容性专门有一个别名\printshorthands[...],定义如下:

\printbiblist[...]{shorthand}

Biblatex 自动支持默认数据模型中标记为"Label fields"的数据域(见§ 2.2.2 节)。这些域已经自动为其定义了如下项目:

•默认的 bib 环境(见 § 3.7.7 节)。

- •文献列表 filter (见 § 4.5.7 节)
- •一些支持的格式和长度(见§4.10.5和§4.10.4节)。

因此,打印带有这些域的文献列表只需要很少的设置。例如,想要打印出期刊标题缩写列表,只需要将如下一小段代码放在导言区中:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{shortjournal}{%
  \printfield{journaltitle}}
```

然后在正文中想要打印列表的地方使用如下代码:

```
\printbiblist[title={Journal Shorthands}]{shortjournal}
```

由于默认数据模型将 shortjournal 定义为"标签域",因此在这个例子中:

- •使用自动创建的"shortjournal"bib环境。
- •使用自动创建的"shortjournal"文献列表 filter,返回 .bbl 文件中只带有 shortjournal 域的条目。
- •使用定义的"shortjournal"文献驱动来打印条目。
- •使用默认的"biblist"标题,但是这里用"Journal Shorthands"来代替。
- •如果没有名为 shortjournal 的格式,那么使用当前文献内容排序格式。

很多情况下想要根据列表中标签域进行排序。由于根据列表名可以自动获取排序 格式,因此此时可以简单地使用如下代码:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{shortjournal}{
   \sort{
      \field{shortjournal}
   }
}
```

自然地,\printbiblist 命令的选项以及环境、filters 等的定义可以覆盖所有的默认设置。因此通过这种方法可以从文献数据中打印任意类型的文献列表,并且包含各式信息。

文献列表通常用于打印各类 shorthand 列表。如果多个条目有相同的 shorthand 就会导致重复的条目。例如,如果有几篇论文在同一期刊上,那么期刊缩写列表中就会出现重复条目。不过,这样的列表会自动获取与列表同名的 \bibcheck,进而定义相应的 check 来删除重复项目。如果使用 shortjournal 域来定义打印所有期刊缩写的列表,那么需要定义如下的 \bibcheck:

```
\defbibcheck{shortjournal}{%
  \iffieldundef{shortjournal}{\skipentry}{%
```

84

```
\iffieldundef{journal}{\skipentry}{%
  \ifcsdef{\strfield{shortjournal}=\strfield{journal}}
    {\skipentry}
    {\savefieldcs{journal}{\strfield{shortjournal}=\strfield{journal}}
    \frac{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{1}{\frac{
```

3.7.4 参考文献分节

在文档中,refsection 环境用于标记参考文献分节。该环境主要用于在文档的每一章、节或其它部分中实现各自独立的参考文献和 shorthand 列表。在一个文献分节内部,所有引用文献分配的标签都局部在该环境中。技术上,尽管文献分节通常在每一章或每一节中使用,但它们与 \chapter 和 \section 等文档划分是完全独立的。关于自动实现这一功能请参考 § 3.1.2.1 中的 refsection 宏包选项。使用例子也可以参见 § 3.12.3。

```
\begin{refsection}[\langle \textit{resource}, ... \rangle]
```

\end{refsection}

可选项是特定于该参考文献分节的逗号分隔资源列表。如果省略了该选项,参考文献节会使用缺省的数据源列表,由导言区的 \addbibresource 指定。如果提供了该选项,它会替代缺省的资源列表。不过,由 \addglobalbib 指定的全局文献资源总是包含在内的。refsection 环境不可以相互嵌套,但是可以在 refsection 环境内使用 refsegment 环境来进一步分段。当打印参考文献时,使用 \printbibliography的 section 选项来选择节;同样地当打印文献列表时使用 \printbiblist 对应的选项。参考文献分节从 1 开始编号。当前节的编号也被写入副本文件中。所有在 refsection 环境外给出的引用都归到第 0 节中。如果在 refsection 内部使用 \printbibliography环境,它会自动选择当前节。此时不需要 section 选项。这也适用于 \printbiblist。

\newrefsection[$\langle resource, ... \rangle$]

该命令类似于 refsection 环境,不同之处在于它是单独命令而不是一个环境。它会自动结束之前的文献分节(如果有的话)并立即开始新的一节。请注意,文档中由最后一个 \newrefsection 开始的文献节会延续到文档的最后。如果你想提前终止的话可以使用 \endrefsection。

3.7.5 参考文献分段

在文档中,refsegment 环境用来标记参考文献片段。该环境用于实现在文档的每一章、节或其它部分中将全局的参考文献分成片段。技术上,尽管文献分段通常在每一章或每一节中使用,但它们与 \chapter 和 \section 等文档划分是完全独立的。关于自动实现这一功能请参考 § 3.1.2.1 中的 refsegment 宏包选项。使用例子也可以参见 § 3.12.3。

\begin{refsegment}

\end{refsegment}

regsection 与 refsegment 环境的不同之处在于,前者创建局部于该环境的标签 而后者仅为 \printbibliography 命令的 segment filter 提供目标而不影响标签。在 整个文档中它们是唯一确定的。refsegment 环境不可以嵌套,但是你可以将其与 refsection 环境结合使用来将文献节细分为段。此时,这些文献分段是局部于被包 含的 refsection 环境的。当打印参考文献时,使用 \printbibliography 的 segment 选项来选择文献分段。在一节内,文献段从1开始编号,并且当前段的编号会被 写入到一个副本文件中。所有在 refsegment 环境之外的引用都归到第 0 段。与 refsection 环境相反,当 \printbibliography 在一个 refsegment 环境内使用时, 当前文献分段并不自动选定。

\newrefsegment 该命令类似于 refsegment 环境,不同之处在于它是单独命令而不是一个环境。它 会自动结束之前的文献分段(如果有的话)并立即开始新的一段。请注意,由最 后一个\newrefsegment 开始的文献分段会延续到文档结束。如果你想提前终止的 话可以使用 \endrefsegment。

3.7.6 参考文献分类

参考文献分类允许将参考文献针对不同主题或不同文献类型分成若干部分, 例如分成主要文献和次要文献。使用例子参见§3.12.4节。

\DeclareBibliographyCategory{\langle category\rangle}

声明一个新的 〈category〉,可以和 \addtocategory 以及 \printbibliography 的 category、notcategory filter 结合使用。该命令在导言区中使用。

$\addtocategory{\langle category \rangle} {\langle key \rangle}$

将 〈kev〉 关键字分配给 〈category〉 类,可以和 \addtocategory 以及 \printbibliography 的 category、notcategory filter 结合使用。该命令可以 在导言区和正文中使用。〈kev〉可以是一个单独条目关键字或者逗号分隔的键值 列表。该分配是全局的。

3.7.7 参考文献标题与环境

 $\defbibenvironment{\langle name \rangle}{\langle begin\ code \rangle}{\langle end\ code \rangle}{\langle item\ code \rangle}$

该命令定义参考文献环境。其中〈name〉是标识符,当选择该环境时会传递给 \printbibliography 和 \printshorthands 的 env 选项。(begin code) 是该环境开始 时执行的 ETFX 代码;而 (end code) 在该环境结束时执行;(item code) 是在参考文 献或者 shorthand 列表的每一条目开始时执行的代码。如下是基于 ETFX 标准 list 环境定义的例子。

\defbibenvironment{bibliography}

{\list{}

```
{\setlength{\leftmargin}{\bibhang}%
  \setlength{\itemindent}{-\leftmargin}%
  \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
  \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}}
{\endlist}
{\item}
```

如上述例子所示,\defbibenvironment 的使用大体类似于 \newenvironment,不同之处在于有一个额外的必选项 〈item code〉。

$\def bibheading \{\langle name \rangle\} [\langle title \rangle] \{\langle code \rangle\}$

该命令定义参考文献标题。其中〈name〉是标识符,当选择该标题时会传递给\printbibliography和\printshorthands的env选项。〈code〉是能生成完整标题的图式代码,包括页眉和目录中的条目(如果必要的话)。如果\printbibliography或\printshorthands带有title选项,那么title将作为#1传递给标题定义;否则由可选的〈title〉确定的标题将作为#1传递给标题定义。〈title〉选项通常是\bibname、\refname或者\biblistname(见§4.9.2.1节)。如果在导言区中改变文档标题时,那么之后通常需要该命令。如下是一个简单标题定义的例子:

```
\defbibheading{bibliography}[\bibname]{%
\chapter*{#1}%
\markboth{#1}{#1}}
```

以下预定义的标题与 \printbibliography 和 \printbibheading 结合使用:

bibliography

如果没有给出 heading 选项,那么这是 \printbibliography 使用的默认标题。缺省定义取决于文档类。如果文类提供 \chapter 命令,那么该标题就类似于标准 图EX 的 book 文类的参考文献标题,即使用 \chapter*来创建不带编号的章,并且不包含在目录中。如果没有 \chapter 命令,那么它将类似于标准 图EX 的 article 文类的参考文献标题,即使用 \section*来创建不带编号的节,并且不包含在目录中。标题中使用的字符串也取决于文档类。book 文档类使用本地化字符串 bibliography,在其它文档类中则是 references(见 § 4.9.2 节)。关于文档类的提示也可以见 §§ 3.13.1 和 3.13.2 节。

subbibliography

类似于 bibliography,但是标题格式低一级。即,在 book 文档类中使用 \section*而不是 \chapter*,其它情况使用 \subsection* 而不是 \section*。

bibintoc

类似于 bibliography 但是在目录中添加条目。

subbibintoc

类似于 subbibliography 但是在目录中添加条目。

bibnumbered

类似于 bibliography 但是使用 \chapter 或 \section 来创建带编号的条目,同时也添加到目录中。

subbibnumbered

类似于 bibliography 但是使用 \section 或 \subsection 来创建带编号的条目,同时也添加到目录中。

none

空白的标题定义,用来取消标题。

以下预定义的标题与 \printshorthands 结合使用:

biblist

如果没有给出 heading 选项,那么这是 \printbiblist 使用的缺省标题。类似于上面的 bibliography,不过是使用本地化字符串 shorthands 而不是 bibliography 或 references (见 § 4.9.2 节)。关于文档类的提示另见 §§ 3.13.1 和 3.13.2 节。

biblistintoc

类似于 shorthands 但是在目录中添加条目。

biblistnumbered

类似于上面的 biblist 但是使用 \chapter 或 \section 来创建带编号的标题,同时 也添加到目录中。

3.7.8 参考文献注记

$\def bibnote \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle text \rangle\}$

定义名为 $\langle name \rangle$ 的参考文献注记,通过 \printbibliography 和 \printbiblist 的 prenote 和 postnote 选项使用。 $\langle text \rangle$ 可以是任意文本片段,通常包含若干段落和字体声明。另见 § 3.13.6 节。

3.7.9 参考文献过滤和检查

$\def bibfilter{\langle name \rangle} {\langle expression \rangle}$

定义一个可定制的文献过滤〈name〉,可以通过 \printbibliography 的 filter 选项使用。〈expression〉是复合测试,基于逻辑运算符 and、or、not,组运算符 (...),以及以下的基本测试:

```
segment=\langle integer\rangle
```

匹配所有在参考文献分段 (integer) 中引用的条目。

```
type=\(entrytype\)
```

匹配所有类型为〈entrytype〉的条目。

```
subtype = \langle subtype \rangle
```

匹配所有 entrysubtype 域为 (subtype) 的条目。

```
keyword=\langle keyword \rangle
```

匹配所有 keywords 域包含 〈keyword〉的条目。如果 〈keyword〉包含空格,那么需要用括号括起来。

```
category=\langle category\rangle
```

匹配所有由 \addtocategory 归入 \(category\) 类的条目。

如下是一个 filter 表达式的例子:

```
\defbibfilter{example}{%
  ( type=book or type=inbook )
  and keyword=abc
  and not keyword={x y z}
}
```

该 filter 匹配的条目规则是,条目类型是 @book 或 @inbook,keywords 域包含关键词 "abc"但不包含"x y z"。从以上例子可以看出,所有的元素由空白分开(空格、制表符或者换行)。等号周围没有空白。逻辑运算使用 etoolbox 宏包的 \ifboolexpr 执行。关于该语法详见 etoolbox 手册。Biblatex 旧版本中使用的 ifthen 宏包的 \ifthenelse 语法这里仍然支持。如下是相同的测试,使用 ifthen 样式的语法:

```
\defbibfilter{example}{%
  \( \type{book} \or \type{inbook} \)
  \and \keyword{abc}
  \and \not \keyword{x y z}
}
```

请注意,定制的 filter 对于所在的参考文献分节是局部的。使用 \printbibliography 的 section filter 来选择不同的分节。这在定制 filter 中是不可能的。

$\def bibcheck \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle code \rangle\}$

定义了可定制的参考文献 check 〈name〉,可以通过 \printbibliography 的 check 选项使用。\defbibcheck 从概念上类似于 \defbibfilter 不过更加低层。与高层次

表达式不同,〈code〉是 图EX 代码,更像是驱动定义中使用的代码,可以执行任意测试来决定是否打印某个给定的条目。当执行〈code〉时,相应条目的文献数据是可用的。在〈code〉中使用 \skipentry 命令会跳过当前条目。例如,下面的 check 只会输出带有 abstract 域的条目:

```
\defbibcheck{abstract}{%
  \iffieldundef{abstract}{\skipentry}{}}
...
\printbibliography[check=abstract]
```

下面的 check 会排除所有在 2000 年之前出版的条目:

```
\defbibcheck{recent}{%
  \iffieldint{year}
  {\ifnumless{\thefield{year}}{2000}
     {\skipentry}
  {}}
  {\skipentry}}
```

更多细节请参见作者指南,特别是 §§ 4.6.2 和 4.6.3 节。

3.7.10 著录文境

参考文献列表中文献的引用和打印都处于某个著录文境(context)内。对于某一条目,著录文境决定了实际用于引用或者提供文献信息的数据。一个著录文境包括以下信息²⁸:

- 排序格式
- 构建姓名排序关键字的格式
- 使用字母或数值标签的引用格式的前缀字符串

著录文境具有双重意义。首先,会用于设置影响打印参考文献的选项;其次,设置的选项还可以影响引用命令打印的数据。前一应用场景是很常见的,例如,打印多个带有不同排序格式的参考文献表。

```
\usepackage[sorting=nyt]{biblatex}
\begin{document}
\cite{one}
\cite{two}
\printbibliography
\newrefcontext[sorting=ydnt]
\printbibliography
```

²⁸ 设计"著录文境"这一概念的目的在于,使其在未来具有可扩展性。

这里我们打印两个参考文献表。其中一个带有默认的"nyt"排序格式,另一个则使用"ydnt"排序格式。

为了说明著录文境的第二种类型应用,我们必须意识到这一点:条目的实际数据可以基于不同的著录文境而变化。在以下的情况中这一点尤其明显:由后端生成的 extra* 域(例如 extrayear)与条目在排序之后的顺序有关,这样出来的结果就是预期的 "a, b, c"的顺序。这就表明,条目的数据在不同排序格式下可以不一样。如果文档中包含多个带有不同排序格式的参考文献列表,那么 .bbl 文件中可能出现多个排序列表,它们带有同一条目但是其数据不同(例如 extrayear的值可以不同)。著录文境的目的就在于将这些事项封装在一个语境内部,这样Biblatex 就可以使用正确的条目数据。以下的例子展示了使用与全局排序格式不同的另一格式打印参考文献列表,使得同一条目的 extra* 域在不同排序列表中是不同的:

```
\usepackage[sorting=nyt,style=authoryear]{biblatex}
\DeclareSortingScheme{yntd}{
  \sort{
    \field[strside=left,strwidth=4]{sortyear}
    \field[strside=left,strwidth=4]{year}
    \literal{9999}
  }
  \sort{
   \field{sortname}
   \field{author}
    \field{editor}
  }
  \sort[direction=descending]{
    \field{sorttitle}
    \field{title}
 }
\begin{document}
\cite{one}
\cite{two}
\printbibliography
\newrefcontext[sorting=yntd]
\cite{one}
\cite{two}
\printbibliography
```

这里,第二次使用引用命令和 \printbibliography 命令时会使用在定制 "yntd"排序格式的著录文境中的数据,这与默认的 "nyt"格式相关联的数据可能会不相同。也就是说,对于同一条目,不同著录文境中的引用标签(在使用 extrayear 的authoryear 样式中)可以不同,这样对其引用就可以不一致。

引用文境可以使用 \DeclareRefcontext 命令进行声明,然后通过文境的名称进行使用,见以下说明。

默认情况下,用于引用的数据来自于打印该条目的最后一个参考文献列表所 在的引用文境。例如:

```
\DeclareRefcontext{ap}{labelprefix=A}
\begin{document}

\cite{book, article, misc}

\printbibliography[type=book]

\newrefcontext{ap}
\printbibliography[type=article]

\newrefcontext[sorting=ydnt]
\printbibliography[type=misc]

\end{document}
```

这个例子同时展示了引用文境的声明和使用。在该例子中假设条目类型就是条目的键名,文献引用就对应与用户通常预料到的默认场景。

- 条目 book 的引用会从全局引用文境中提取数据,因为打印该条目的最后的 参考文献列表位于全局引用文境中。
- 条目 article 的引用会从带有 labelprefix=A 的引用文境中提取数据,因此引用时会带有前缀 "A"。
- 条目 misc 的引用会从带有 sorting=ydnt 的引用文境中提取数据。

有这样一种情况,条目在多个参考文献列表中并且有不同的形式或者可能带有不同的标签(例如,带有不同 labelprefix 值的数字格式)。此时需要告诉 Biblatex 希望从哪个引用文境中提取引用信息。如上所述,这可以通过显式地将引用置于引用文境中而实现。但是在大文档中这种方式会很繁重,因此提供了将引用以程序化的方式分配到引用文境的功能,见下面的 \assignrefcontext* 宏命令。

$\DeclareRefcontext{\langle name \rangle}{\langle key=value, ... \rangle}$

声明一个名称为 ⟨name⟩ 的引用文境。⟨key=value⟩ 选项定义该文境的属性。所有的文境属性都是可选的,缺省为全局设置。有效的选项为:

$sorting=\langle name \rangle$

指定由之前的\DeclareSortingScheme 命令定义的排序格式。对于在该文境内引用命令中的条目,该格式用于确定检索和打印的数据。

sortingnamekeyscheme= $\langle name \rangle$

指定由之前的 \DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme 命令定义的排序姓名关键字格式。该格式用于为文境内的姓名构建排序关键字。

labelprefix=(string)

该选项只用于数字型引用和文献样式,需要全局开启§3.1.2.1 节中的 defernumbers 选项。设置改选项也会为该文境范围内的任意 \printbibliography 启用 resetnumbers 选项(除非 resetnumbers 被用户指定的值覆盖) 。该选项将 \string\ 作为前缀分配到该引用文境中的所有条目。例如,如果 \string\ 是 A,那 么打印出来的数值标签就会形如 [A1], [A2], [A3] 等。特别适用的场合是,将参考文献列表划分成带有不同前缀的子列表。\string\ 可以用于所有有关条目中 labelprefix 域中的样式。详见§4.2.4.2 节。

\end{refcontext}

将引用文境封装在一个环境内。可能的 $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ 可选项和 \DeclareRefcontext 中的相同,并且覆盖名为 $\langle name \rangle$ 的引用文境的选项。 $\langle name \rangle$ 也可以省略成 {},甚至空的括号也可以省略²⁹

refcontext 环境不可以相互嵌套,如果这样的话 Biblatex 会报错。

$\newrefcontext[\langle key=value, ... \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\}$

该命令类似于 refcontext 环境,不同之处在于这是单独的命令而不是环境。它会自动结束任何之前以 \newrefcontext 开始的引用文境片段(如果有的话),并立即开启新的引用文境。注意,文档中最后的 \newrefcontext 命令开启的引用文境会一直持续到文档的最后。如果想要提前终止,那么需要使用 \endrefcontext 命令。

在文档的开始,总会有一个全局的文境,其中为每一引用文境选项进行了全局设置。这里的例子总结了引用文境的不同设置:

```
\usepackage[sorting=nty]{biblatex}

\DeclareRefcontext{testrc}{sorting=nyt}

% Global reference context:
% sorting=nty
% sortingnamekeyscheme=global
% labelprefix=

\begin{document}
```

²⁹ 这种有点怪异的句法是出于对 Biblatex < 3.5 的向后兼容性。

```
\begin{refcontext}{testrc}
% reference context:
  sorting=nyt
  sortingnamekeyscheme=global
   labelprefix=
\end{refcontext}
\begin{refcontext}[labelprefix=A]{testrc}
% reference context:
  sorting=nyt
   sortingnamekeyscheme=global
   labelprefix=A
\end{refcontext}
\begin{refcontext}[sorting=ydnt,labelprefix=A]
% reference context:
   sorting=ydnt
   sortingnamekeyscheme=global
   labelprefix=A
\end{refcontext}
\newrefcontext}[labelprefix=B]
% reference context:
   sorting=nty
   sortingnamekeyscheme=global
   labelprefix=B
\endrefcontext
\newrefcontext}[sorting=ynt,labelprefix=C]{testrc}
% reference context:
  sorting=ynt
  sortingnamekeyscheme=global
   labelprefix=C
\endrefcontext
```

```
\label{eq:assign} $$\assignrefcontextkeyws[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle keyword1, keyword2, ....\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextkeyws*[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle keyword1, keyword2, ....\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextcats[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle category1, category2, ....\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextentries[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle entrykey1, entrykey2, ....\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextentries*[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle entrykey1, entrykey2, ....\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextentries[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle "\rangle$} $$\assignrefcontextentries*[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle "\rangle$}} $$$\assignrefcontextentries*[$\langle key=value, ....\rangle]{$\langle "\rangle$}} $$$$\assignrefcontextentries*[$\langle key=value, ........\rangle]{$\langle "\rangle$}} $$
```

当默认行为不充分时,这些命令会自动将引用置于引用文境中。默认行为是指,从最后打印条目的参考文献列表所在的引用文境中提取引用数据。对于没有在参考文献列表中打印但是以某种方式使用的引用,默认会从文档一开始建立的全局引用文境中提取数据。为了覆盖这一行为,可以手动将引用命令放置在refcontext 环境内,但是这样容易出错并且很繁琐。除此之外,可以登记一个关于〈keywords〉、〈categories〉和〈entrykeys〉的逗号分隔列表。这样,任何带有指定关键字的条目、任何指定类别的条目(见§3.12.4节)、任何指定引用关键字的条目都会分别从由〈refcontext key/values〉指定的特定引用文境中提取数据,并按照对应的refcontext 环境选项进行解析。这样的引用文境自动分配方式特定于当前的参考文献分节。你可以在任意的这些命令中指定相同的引用键,但需要注意的是,分配方式按照〈keywords〉、〈categories〉,〈entrykeys〉的顺序,后面的规范会覆盖之前的规范。\assignrefcontextentries 命令可以接受单个的星号作为选项以代替一列条目键,这样可以将某一参考文献分节中的所有条目键都分配给某个引用文境,而不必显式列出。例如:

```
\assignrefcontextentries[labelprefix=A]{key2}
\cite{key1}
\begin{refcontext}[labelprefix=B]
\cite{key2}
\end{refcontext}
```

这里 key2 的引用数据会从引用文境 labelprefix=A 中提取,而不是 labelprefix=B。即,标签的前缀是"A"不是"B"。带星号的版本不会覆盖局部的引用文境,也就是:

```
\assignrefcontextentries*[labelprefix=A]{key2}
\cite{key1}
\begin{refcontext}[labelprefix=B]
\cite{key2}
\end{refcontext}
```

key2 的引用数据会从 labelprefix=B 引用文境中提取。注意,这些命令大部分情况下都不必使用,除非多个参考文献表中有相同的文献引用,并且 Biblatex 按照

默认设置不知道引用应该指向哪一个文献列表。详见文件 94-labelprefix.tex 中的例子。

3.7.11 动态条目集

除了 @set 条目类型之外,Biblatex 也支持基于文档或参考文献分节定义的动态条目集。下面的命令定义了 〈key〉集合,可以用在导言区或正文中:

 $\def bibentryset \{\langle key \rangle\} \{\langle key1, key2, key3, ... \rangle\}$

 $\langle key \rangle$ 是集合的条目键,像其它条目键一样用于指向该集合。 $\langle key \rangle$ 必须是唯一的,并且不能与其它条目键名冲突。第二个选项是组成该集合的逗号分隔条目键列表。\defbibentryset 也蕴含了与 \nocite 命令的等价性,即所有声明的集合也都添加到参考文献表中。当多次声明相同集合时,只有第一次调用的 \defbibentryset 会定义该集合。接下来的对于相同 $\langle key \rangle$ 的定义将被忽略并如同 \nocite $\langle key \rangle$ 一样处理。在正文中定义的动态条目集如果包含在 refsection 环境中,那么是局部的。否则它们会归到第 0 文献分节中。在导言区中定义的动态条目集也归到第 0 文献分节中。详见 § 3.12.5 节。

3.8 引用命令

大体上,所有的引用命令都有一个必选参数和两个可选参数。前注〈prenote〉是引用开始时打印的文本,通常是"see"或"compare"等提示。而后注〈postnote〉是引用结束时打印的文本,通常是页码数。如果只给出一个可选参数,那么将视作后缀。如果想给出前注但不要后注,那么需要将第二个可选项设置为空,例如\cite[see][]{key}。所有的引用命令中选项〈key〉都是必须的,其内容是 bib 文件中的条目键或者对应于条目键的逗号分隔列表。总的来说,以下所有的基本引用命令都具有如下的句法结构:

 $\command[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle keys \rangle\}\langle punctuation \rangle$

如果启用了§3.1.2.1 节中的 autopunct 宏包选项,这些命令会首先扫描紧跟在最后选项的 $\langle punctuation \rangle$ 标点符号。这可用于避免引用之后出现错误的标点符号。该特性由 \DeclareAutoPunctuation 命令配置,详见§4.7.5 节。

3.8.1 标准命令

下列命令由引用样式定义。引用样式可以提供任意特殊命令,但是这些是由 通用样式提供的标准命令。

```
\label{eq:cite} $$ \cite[\langle prenote\rangle][\langle postnote\rangle]\{\langle key\rangle\} $$ $$ \cite[\langle prenote\rangle][\langle postnote\rangle]\{\langle key\rangle\}$$
```

基本引用命令。只打印出引用,而不带括号等任何附加物。不过数值和字母样式仍然会将标签放在方括号里,因为否则的话参考文献可能含糊不清。\Cite与\cite类似,不同之处仅仅在于,如果开启了 useprefix 选项,并且引用样式会打印全名,那么引用中名部分(first name)的前缀要大写。

```
\label{eq:prenote} $$ \operatorname{cite}[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\} $$ \operatorname{cite}[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\} $$
```

这些命令的格式类似于 \cite, 不过将引用全部放入圆括号内。不过数值和字母样式仍然使用方括号。\Parencite 与 \parencite 类似,不过,如果有姓名前缀并且引用样式打印全名,并且同时开启了 useprefix 选项,那么 \Parencite 会使得该姓名前缀首字母大写。

```
\label{eq:continuous_continuous_continuous} $$ \ \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$ $$ \ \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$
```

这些命令的格式类似于 \cite,不过将引用的全部放入脚注内并在末尾加上句号。在脚注中,如果有姓名前缀并且引用样式打印全名,同时开启了 useprefix 选项的话,那么该姓名前缀的首字母会自动大写。\footcitetext 与 \footcite 的不同之处在于它使用 \footnotetext 而不是 \footnote 命令。

3.8.2 样式相关命令

下列额外的引用命令只由本宏包所带的某些引用样式提供。

```
\label{eq:control_loss} $$\operatorname{cite}[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]{\langle key \rangle} $$\operatorname{Textcite}[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]{\langle key \rangle}$$
```

这些引用命令在本宏包所带的所有样式中都有提供。它们用于正文中代替句子成分。它们打印出作者或编辑,后面接着在括号中括起来的引用标签。取决于引用样式,标签可以是数字、出版年份、缩写版本的标题等等。数值和字母样式会使用方括号来代替圆括号。在详细样式中,标签在脚注中提供。作者或编辑名与脚注标记的空格将被移除。\Textcite 与\textcite 类似,不同之处在于如果有前缀名并且启用 useprefix 选项的话,引用中的前缀名是大写的。

```
\space{2mm} \spa
```

在脚注中与 \parencite 相似而在正文中与 \footcite 类似。

```
\cite*[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]{\langle key \rangle}
```

该命令由所有的作者-年份和作者-标题样式提供。它类似于常规的\cite命令,但是只打印出年份或者标题。

```
\protection \pro
```

该命令由所有的作者-年份和作者-标题样式提供。它类似于常规的 \parencite 命令,但是只打印出年份或者标题。

\supercite $\{\langle key \rangle\}$

该命令只在数值样式中提供,会以不带括号的上标形式打印出引用编号。它使用 \supercitedelim 而不是 \multicitedelim 作为引用定界符。请注意,任何的 ⟨prenote⟩ 和 ⟨postnote⟩ 选项都会被忽略。如果给出的话也会弃掉它们并且显示警告信息。

3.8.3 合格的引用列表

本宏包支持一类特殊的称之为"多重引用"的引用命令。这些命令的特点是,它们的选项是一列引用,其中每一项都具有完整的前注/后注形式。这对于带括号或脚注中给出的引用特别有用。也可以将一个前注或后注分配给整个列表。这种多重引用命令构建在\parencite 和\footcite等后端命令之上。引用样式通过命令\DeclareMultiCiteCommand(见§4.3.1节)提供了多重引用的定义。下面的例子展示了多重引用命令的语法。

\parencites[35]{key1}[88--120]{key2}[23]{key3}

选项的格式与常规引用命令类似,不过只用给出一个引用命令。如果对于列表中的某一项只给出一个可选参数,那么将视为后注。如果只想要前注而不要后注,那么需要将相应项的第二个可选参数设置为空:

```
\parencites[35]{key1}[chapter 2 in][]{key2}[23]{key3}
```

此外,整个的引用列表也可以有一个共同的前注或后注。与其他可选参数的语法 不同,这些全局注记在圆括号而不是通常的方括号中:

```
\parencites(and chapter 3)[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
\parencites(Compare)()[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
\parencites(See)(and the introduction)[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
```

请注意,多重引用命令会一直扫描选项,直到遇到一个不是可选或必选参数的字符记号。如果文本中接着多重引用命令的是一个左圆括号或方括号,那么需要手动在最后一个有效参数后添加\relax命令或者控制空格(跟在反斜线后的空格)作为标记。这样才会停止该命令的扫描。

```
\parencites[35]{key1}[78]{key2}\relax[...]
\parencites[35]{key1}[78]{key2}\u_{...}
```

默认情况下,本宏包提供了如下一些多重引用命令,分别对应于 §§ 3.8.1 和 3.8.2 节中常规命令:

```
\langle (multiprenote) \rangle (\langle multipostnote) \rangle [\langle prenote)] [\langle postnote \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle \} \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle \}  \Cites(\langle multiprenote \rangle) \( (\langle multipostnote \rangle) \) [\langle prenote \rangle] \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) [\langle postnote \rangle] \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) [\langle postnote \rangle] \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) [\langle postnote \rangle] \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) [\langle postnote \rangle) \( (\langle postnote \rangle) \) \( (\langle
```

```
\parencites(\(\sqrt{multiprenote}\)(\(\sqrt{multipostnote}\)[\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{postnote}\)][\(\sqrt{postnote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{postnote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\(\sqrt{prenote}\)][\
```

3.8.4 样式无关命令

有时我们需要源文件中的引用格式不依赖于某种特定的引用样式,而是可以在导言区中全局修改。通过导入不同的引用样式我们可以很容易地改变引用格式。但是,当使用\parencite或\footcite等命令时,引用和正文结合的方式仍然是硬编码的(hard-coded)。\autocite命令的想法是提供高层次上的引用标记,使得可以全局地切换行内引用和脚注引用(或上标引用)。\autocite命令构建在\parencite和\footcite等后端命令之上。由引用样式通过\DeclareAutoCiteCommand(见象4.3.1节)来定义。该定义可以通过§3.1.2.1节中的autocite宏包选项启用。引用样式通常会将该宏包选项初始化为适合该样式的值,详见§3.3.1。请注意,这种高层次引用标记有一些限制。例如,行内的作者-年份引用格式通常和正文结合得很紧密,事实上不可能自动转化为脚注。只有当正常地使用\parencite或\footcite(或者数值样式中的\supercite)时,\autocite命令才是可用的。引用应当在句子或其部分的末尾、标点符号之前给出,并且在语法上不应当是句子的一部分(例如\textcite)。

```
\label{eq:control_loss} $$\operatorname{autocite}[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\} $$ Autocite[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}$ $$
```

与其它引用命令不同,\autocite 命令不仅扫描跟在最后一个选项的标点符号来避免双重标点,还在必要时挪动标点。例如,后面的标点在 autocite=footnote 选项下会被移动使得脚注标记打印在标点之后。\Autocite 类似于 \autocite,不同之处在于,如果引用样式打印全名并且有姓名前缀,并且启用了 useprefix 选项,那么引用中的姓名前缀会大写。

```
\autocite*[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]{\langle key \rangle} \Autocite*[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]{\langle key \rangle}
```

\autocite 带星号的变种没有什么不同。星号只是传递给后端命令。例如,如果\autocite 配置使用 \parencite, 那么 \autocite* 就会执行 \parencite*。

\autocite 的多重引用版本。它同样会在必要时检测和移动标点。请注意它没有带星号的变种。\Autocites 类似于\autocites,不同之处在于,如果引用样式打印全名并且有姓名前缀,并且启用了 useprefix 选项,那么引用中的姓名前缀会大写。

3.8.5 文本命令

下列命令由 Biblatex 内核提供,在文本流中使用。请注意,这里所有的文本命令都与引用追踪无关。

```
\label{eq:citeauthor} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] $$  \langle prenote \rangle ]$$  \langle prenote \rangle ]$$  \langle prenote \rangle ] $$
```

这些命令打印出作者。严格地讲,打印出的是 labelnames 列表,这可以是 author、editor 或者 translator 等域。\Citeauthor 类似于\citeauthor,不同之处在于,如果有姓名前缀并且启用 useprefix 选项的话,引用中的名字前缀采用大写形式。带星号的版本会强制设置 maxcitenames 为 1,这样只会打印标签名称列表中第一个姓名(如果有更多名字的话会后接"et al"字符串)。当涉及单一作者的文章时,这会使行文更加自然;否则的话(多位作者时),使用\citeauthor 会产生名称列表(当然是复数的)。

```
\label{eq:citetitle} $$ \citetitle [\langle prenote \rangle] [\langle postnote \rangle] {\langle key \rangle} $$ $$ \citetitle {\langle prenote \rangle] [\langle postnote \rangle] {\langle key \rangle} $$ $$
```

该命令会打印出标题。它会在可用时使用 shorttitle 域中的短标题,否则的话会使用备用的 title 域中的标题全称。带星号的版本总会打印出标题全称。

```
\citeyear[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}\ \citeyear*[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
```

该命令会打印出年份(year 域或者 date 域中的年份成分)。带星号的版本会包括可能有的 extrayear 信息。

```
\label{eq:citedate} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$  \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle} $$
```

该命令会打印出日期(date 或 year 域)。带星号的版本会包括可能有的 extrayear 信息。

```
\citeurl[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
```

该命令打印 url 域。

 $\operatorname{parentext}\{\langle text \rangle\}$

该命令将 \(text \) 装入上下文相关的圆括号中。

 $\brackettext{\langle text \rangle}$

该命令将〈text〉装入上下文相关的方括号中。

3.8.6 特殊命令

以下特殊命令同样由 Biblatex 内核提供。

```
\nocite{\langle key \rangle}
```

该命令类似于 Mex 中的 \nocite 命令。它将没有引用的条目 $\langle key \rangle$ 添加到参考文献中。如果 $\langle key \rangle$ 是星号,bib 文件中的所有可用条目都会被添加到参考文献中。与其它引用命令一样,正文中的 \nocite 是在可能的 refsection 环境中的局部命令。与标准的 Mex 不同的是,\nocite 也可以在导言区中使用,此时参考文献将归到第零参考文献分节中。

```
fullcite[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
```

该命令针对相应的条目类型使用参考文献驱动,从而创建类似于文献条目的完整引用格式。当然,这样的话就与参考文献样式相关而不是与引用样式相关。

```
\footfullcite[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
```

类似于 \fullcite, 但是会将整个引用放在脚注中并在末尾添加句号。

```
\label{eq:content} $$\operatorname{cite}[\langle prenote\rangle] {\langle volume\rangle} [\langle page\rangle] {\langle key\rangle} $$ \Cite[\langle prenote\rangle] {\langle volume\rangle} [\langle page\rangle] {\langle key\rangle} $$
```

这些命令类似于 \cite 和 \Cite,不过用于多卷作品以卷数和页码样式的引用。与 $\langle postnote \rangle$ 不同,命令中有一个必选的 $\langle volume \rangle$ 和一个可选的 $\langle page \rangle$ 选项。这些命令实际上是样式无关的,因为 $\langle volume \rangle$ 和 $\langle page \rangle$ 选项构成后注并且将其以 $\langle postnote \rangle$ 选项传递给由引用样式提供的 \cite 命令。卷数部分的格式由域格式指令 volcitevolume 直接控制,而页码或文本部分的格式由域格式指令 volcitepages (§ 4.10.4) 直接控制。卷数部分与页码部分之间的定界符可用通过重新定义 \volcitedelim 宏(见§ 4.10.1 节)来修改。

```
\volcites(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                      \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
 \forall olcites(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \volcite 和 \Volcite 命令的多重引用版本。
 \proleite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
 \Pvolcite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     类似于 \volcite, 不过基于 \parencite 命令。
\prolemont{cites}(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
\Pvolcites(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \pvolcite 和 \Pvolcite 相应的多重引用版本。
 \fivalcite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
\ftvolcite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     类似于 \volcite 但是分别基于 \footcite 和 \footcitetext。
\langle volcites(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \ldots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
\langle \text{Fvolcites}(\langle \text{multiprenote} \rangle) (\langle \text{multipostnote} \rangle) [\langle \text{prenote} \rangle] \{\langle \text{volume} \rangle\} [\langle \text{page} \rangle] \{\langle \text{key} \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \fvolcite 和 \Fvolcite 相应的多重引用版本。
 \langle volume \rangle  [\langle page \rangle ] {\langle volume \rangle \} [\langle page \rangle ] {\langle key \rangle \}
 类似于 \volcite 但是基于 \smartcite。
\langle volcites(\langle multiprenote \rangle)(\langle multipostnote \rangle)[\langle prenote \rangle]\{\langle volume \rangle\}[\langle page \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
\langle \text{Svolcites}(\langle \text{multiprenote} \rangle) (\langle \text{multipostnote} \rangle) [\langle \text{prenote} \rangle] \{\langle \text{volume} \rangle\} [\langle \text{page} \rangle] \{\langle \text{key} \rangle\}
                     \dots [\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     \svolcite 和 \Svolcite 相应的多重引用版本。
 \tvolcite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
 \Tvolcite[\langle prenote \rangle] \{\langle volume \rangle\} [\langle page \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                     类似于 \volcite 但是基于 \textcite。
```

这些命令打印出〈prenote〉和〈postnote〉选项但是没有引用部分。与之不同的是,\nocite 命令用于每个〈key〉。主要的应用场合是,用户想要隐式地包含引用条目,但只给出没有在之前行文中提到的信息,同时仍想利用自动的〈postnote〉格式以及隐式的\nocite 功能。这是一般的、样式无关的引用命令。一些特殊的引用样式可以针对相同目的提供更加智能的工具。其中,\Notecite 命令会强制大写(请注意,只有当注记以 Biblatex 标点追踪器相关的命令开始时,该命令才是可用的)。

```
\pnotecite[\langle prenote \rangle] [\langle postnote \rangle] {\langle key \rangle}
\Pnotecite[\langle prenote \rangle] [\langle postnote \rangle] {\langle key \rangle}

\times \text{Inotecite} \langle prenote \rangle ] [\langle postnote \rangle] {\langle key \rangle}

\times \text{M} \text{Notecite} \langle \text{L} \text{T} \text{P} \text{E} \text{T} \text{P} \text{E} \text{P} \text{
```

3.8.7 底层命令

以下命令同样由 Biblatex 内核提供,向所有列表和域提供底层接口。

```
\citename[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}[\langle format \rangle]\{\langle name\ list \rangle\}
```

〈format〉是由 \DeclareNameFormat 定义的格式指令。格式指令的讨论在 § 4.4.2 节。如果忽略可选参数,该命令调用备选的 citename 格式。最后一个选项是〈name list〉的名称(其意义在 § 2.2 节中解释)。

 $\citelist[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}[\langle format \rangle]\{\langle literal\ list \rangle\}$

〈format〉是由 \DeclareListFormat 定义的格式指令。格式指令的讨论在 § 4.4.2 节。如果忽略可选参数,该命令调用备选的 citelist 格式。最后一个选项是 〈literal list〉的名称(其意义在 § 2.2 节中解释)。

 $\citefield[\langle prenote \rangle][\langle postnote \rangle]\{\langle key \rangle\}[\langle format \rangle]\{\langle field \rangle\}\}$

〈format〉是由 \DeclareFieldFormat 定义的格式指令。格式指令的讨论在 § 4.4.2 一节。如果忽略可选参数,该命令调用备选的 citefield 格式。最后一个选项是 〈field〉的名称(其意义在 § 2.2 节中解释)。

3.8.8 其它命令

本节中的命令是一些与引用相关的小工具。

\citereset 该命令重新设置引用样式。如果样式使用 ibidem、idem、op. cit. 等缩略语代替重复引用,而你想在新的章节开始或别的地方强制改为引用全称,那么该命令很有用。该命令执行由 § 4.3.1 节的 \InitializeCitationStyle 命令所定义的样式相关初始化钩子(hook)。它同样重新设置了本宏包的内部引用追踪器。该重置会影响 § 4.6.2 节讨论的 \ifciteseen、\ifentryseen、\ifciteibid 和 \ifciteidem 等测试。当在 refsection 环境内部使用时,引用追踪器的重置仅局部在当前 refsection 环境中。另见 § 3.1.2.1 节的 citereset 宏包选项。

\citereset* 类似于 \citereset 但只执行样式初始化钩子,而不重置内部引用追踪器。

- \mancite 如果你想混合自动生成引用和手工引用,可以使用该命令来标记手工插入的引用。如果引用样式使用 *ibidem* 等可能含糊不清或引起歧义的缩略语代替重复引用,那么该命令特别有用。应当总是在相同的场合使用 \mancite 作为手工引用,例如,如果引用在脚注中给出,那么在脚注中加入 \mancite。 \mancite 命令会执行 § 4.3.1 节的 \OnManualCitation 命令定义的样式相关重置钩子。它也会重置本宏包的内部"ibidem"和"idem"追踪器。该重置会影响 § 4.6.2 节讨论的 \ifciteibid 和\ifciteidem 等测试。
 - \pno 该命令在引用命令的 \(postnote \) 选项中强制开始单页前缀。更多细节和使用说明见 \(\} 3.13.3 节。请注意,该命令只能用于引用和参考文献中局部。
 - \ppno 类似于 \pno 但是强制为区间前缀。更多细节和使用说明见 § 3.13.3 节。请注意,该 命令只能用于引用和参考文献中局部。
 - \nopp 类似于 \pno 但是抑制所有前缀。更多细节和使用说明见 § 3.13.3 节。请注意,该命令只能用于引用和参考文献中局部。
 - \psq 在引用命令的 \(\postnote \rangle 选项中,该命令在只给出开始页之处表示两页的范围。更多细节和使用说明见 \(\} 3.13.3 节。打印出的后缀是本地化字符串 sequens (见 \\ \} 4.9.2 节)。在后缀和页码之间的空格可以通过重定义 \(\sqspace 修改。默认值是一个不可打断的词间空格。请注意,该命令只能用于引用和参考文献中局部。

\psqq 类似于 \psq 但表示一个不包括结束页的页码范围。更多细节和使用说明见 § 3.13.3 节。打印出的后缀是本地化字符串 sequens(见 § 4.9.2 节)。请注意,该命令只能用于引用和参考文献中局部。

$\RN\{\langle integer \rangle\}$

该命令将一个整数打印为大写罗马数字形式。可以通过重定义 \RNfont 宏来修改用于该数值的格式。

$\Rn\{\langle integer \rangle\}$

类似于 \RN 但是打印出小写罗马数字。可以通过重定义 \Rnfont 宏来修改用于该数值的格式。

3.8.9 natbib 兼容命令

本宏包的 natbib 选项会导入 natbib 兼容性模块。该模块定义了由 natbib 宏包提供的引用命令的别名。其中包括核心引用命令 \citet 和 \citep 以及 \citealt 和 \citealp 等变形命令。另外也支持这些命令带星号的变种,从而可以打印出完整的作者列表。\cite 命令在 natbib 宏包中经过了特殊处理,但在这里不会专门处理。同时,也支持文本命令(\citeauthor、\citeyear等)以及所有首字母大写的命令(\Citet、\Citep、\Citeauthor等)。另外,\defcitealias、\citetalias 和 \citepalias 也是可以使用的。请注意,这些兼容性命令不会模仿 natbib 宏包的引用格式,而仅仅是 biblatex 宏包中功能上等价的 natbib 命令别称。引用格式取决于主引用样式。不过,兼容性样式会调整 \nameyeardelim 命令以匹配 natbib 宏包的默认样式。

3.8.10 mcite 引用命令

宏包的 mcite 选项导入了一个特殊的引用模块,提供了类似于 mcite/mciteplus 的引用命令。严格地讲,该模块提供的是主引用样式命令的封装。例如,以下命令:

\mcite{key1,setA,*keyA1,*keyA2,*keyA3,key2,setB,*keyB1,*keyB2,*keyB3}

本质上等价于

\defbibentryset{setA}{keyA1,keyA2,keyA3}%
\defbibentryset{setB}{keyB1,keyB2,keyB3}%
\cite{key1,setA,key2,setB}

由于 \cite 后端命令和通常一样由主引用样式控制,因此 \mcite 命令可以和任何样式兼容。mcite 模块提供了 §§ 3.8.1 和 3.8.2 中标准命令的封装,见表 10。它也支持前注和后注以及所有命令带星号的版本,其参数会传递到后端命令中。例如:

\mcite*[pre][post]{setA,*keyA1,*keyA2,*keyA3}

标准命令	mcite 命令		
\cite	\mcite		
\Cite	\Mcite		
\parencite	\mparencite		
\Parencite	\Mparencite		
\footcite	\mfootcite		
\footcitetext	\mfootcitetext		
\textcite	\mtextcite	\mtextcite	
\Textcite	\Mtextcite	\Mtextcite	
\supercite	\msupercite	\msupercite	

Table 9: mcite 命令

会执行:

```
\defbibentryset{setA}{keyA1,keyA2,keyA3}%
\cite*[pre][post]{setA}
```

请注意, mcite 模块不是完全兼容的。它提供的命令与 mcite 宏包的命令在语法和功能上十分相似但并不完全等价。当从 mcite/mciteplus 迁移到 Biblatex 时必须更新旧文件。在 mcite 中,引用组的第一个成员也是该组整个的标识符。举个 mcite 手册中的例子,以下的组:

```
\cite{glashow,*salam,*weinberg}
```

包括三个条目,且第一个条目键也同样是整个组的标识符。与此相反,Biblatex 条目集是一个实体。因此,它需要分配给该集的唯一的条目键值:

```
\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}
```

一旦定义之后,条目集的处理与其它 bib 文件中的常规条目相同。当在 biblatex 中使用 numeric 样式并且启动了 subentry 选项时,甚至可以指向集成员。参考表 10 中的一些例子。也可以重启条目集的原始定义,但这没有必要。不过与 mciteplus 不同的是,重启原始定义的一部分是无效的,需要使用集合的条目键。

3.9 本地化命令 Localization Commands

The Biblatex package provides translations for key terms such as 'edition' or 'volume' as well as definitions for language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. These definitions, which are loaded automatically, may be modified or extended in the document preamble or the configuration file with the commands introduced in this section.

$\verb|\DefineBibliographyStrings{|\langle language \rangle|} {\langle definitions \rangle|}$

This command is used to define localization strings. The $\langle language \rangle$ must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia packages, i. e., one of the identifiers listed in

输入	输出	评注
<pre>\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}</pre>	[1]	定义并引用该集合
\mcite{set1}	[1]	该集合随后的引用
\cite{set1}	[1]	常规的 \cite
<pre>\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}</pre>	[1]	冗余,但是允许的
\mcite{glashow}	[1a]	引用集成员
\cite{weinberg}	[1c]	又一次常规的 \cite

Table 10: mcite 语法 (使用 style=numeric 和 subentry 选项时的样例输出)

表 3 on page 31. The $\langle definitions \rangle$ are $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ pairs which assign an expression to an identifier:

```
\DefineBibliographyStrings{american}{%
bibliography = {Bibliography},
shorthands = {Abbreviations},
editor = {editor},
editors = {editors},
}
```

A complete list of all keys supported by default is given is § 4.9.2. Note that all expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. The Biblatex package will automatically capitalize the first word when required at the beginning of a sentence. Expressions intended for use in headings should be capitalized in a way that is suitable for titling. In contrast to \DeclareBibliographyStrings, \DefineBibliographyStrings overrides both the full and the abbreviated version of the string. See § 4.9.1 for further details.

\DefineBibliographyExtras $\{\langle language \rangle\}\{\langle code \rangle\}$

This command is used to adapt language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. The $\langle language \rangle$ must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia packages. The $\langle code \rangle$, which may be arbitrary LaTeX code, will usually consist of redefinitions of the formatting commands from § 3.10.2.

\UndefineBibliographyExtras $\{\langle language \rangle\}\{\langle code \rangle\}$

This command is used to restore the original definition of any commands modified with \DefineBibliographyExtras. If a redefined command is included in § 3.10.2, there is no need to restore its previous definition since these commands are adapted by all language modules anyway.

$\DefineHyphenationExceptions{\langle language \rangle}{\langle text \rangle}$

This is a LaTeX frontend to TeX's \hyphenation command which defines hyphenation exceptions. The $\langle language \rangle$ must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia packages. The $\langle text \rangle$ is a whitespace-separated list of words. Hyphenation points are marked with a dash:

```
\DefineHyphenationExceptions{american}{%
  hy-phen-ation ex-cep-tion
}
```

$\NewBibliographyString\{\langle key \rangle\}$

This command declares new localization strings, i. e., it initializes a new $\langle key \rangle$ to be used in the $\langle definitions \rangle$ of \DefineBibliographyStrings. The $\langle key \rangle$ argument may also be a comma-separated list of key names. The keys listed in § 4.9.2 are defined by default.

3.10 格式命令 Formatting Commands

The commands and facilities presented in this section may be used to adapt the format of citations and the bibliography.

3.10.1 一般命令和钩子 Generic Commands and Hooks

The commands in this section may be redefined with \renewcommand in the document preamble. Note that all commands starting with \mk... take one argument. All of these commands are defined in biblatex.def.

\bibsetup Arbitrary code to be executed at the beginning of the bibliography, intended for commands which affect the layout of the bibliography.

\bibfont Arbitrary code setting the font used in the bibliography. This is very similar to \bibsetup but intended for switching fonts.

\citesetup Arbitrary code to be executed at the beginning of each citation command.

\newblockpunct The separator inserted between 'blocks' in the sense explained in § 4.7.1. The default definition is controlled by the package option block (see § 3.1.2.1).

\newunitpunct The separator inserted between 'units' in the sense explained in § 4.7.1. This will usually be a period or a comma plus an interword space. The default definition is a period and a space.

\finentrypunct The punctuation printed at the very end of every bibliography entry, usually a period.

The default definition is a period.

\entrysetpunct The punctuation printed between bibliography subentries of an entry set. The default Biber only definition is a semicolon and a space.

Biber only

This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically after the first name element if the element is less than three characters long and before the last element. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the highnamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedelimb	This delimiter is inserted between the elements which make up a name part where $\$ bibnamedelima does not apply. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the lownamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	Biber only
\bibnamedelimc	This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. It is inserted between the name prefix and the last name if useprefix=true. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the highnamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	
\bibnamedelimd	This delimiter is inserted between all name parts where \bibnamedelimc does not apply. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the lownamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	
\bibnamedelimi	This delimiter replaces \bibnamedelima/b after initials. Note that this only applies to initials given as such in the bib file, not to the initials automatically generated by Biblatex which use their own set of delimiters.	Biber only
\bibinitperiod	The punctuation inserted after initials unless \bibinithyphendelim applies. The default definition is a period (\adddot). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	Biber only
\bibinitdelim	The spacing inserted between multiple initials unless \bibinithyphendelim applies. The default definition is an unbreakable interword space. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	Biber only
\bibinithyphendelin	The punctuation inserted between the initials of hyphenated name parts, replacing \bibinitperiod and \bibinitdelim. The default definition is a period followed by an unbreakable hyphen. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.	Biber only
\bibindexnamedelima	a Replaces \bibnamedelima in the index.	
\bibindexnamedelim	b Replaces \bibnamedelimb in the index.	
\bibindexnamedelim	c Replaces \bibnamedelimc in the index.	
\bibindexnamedelim	d Replaces \bibnamedelimd in the index.	
\bibindexnamedelim:	i Replaces \bibnamedelimi in the index.	
\bibindexinitperio	d Replaces \bibinitperiod in the index.	
\bibindexinitdelim	Replaces \bibinitdelim in the index.	

 $\verb|\bibindexinithyphendelim| Replaces \verb|\bibinithyphendelim| in the index.$

\revsdnamepunct The punctuation to be printed between the first and last name parts when a name is reversed. Here is an example showing a name with the default comma as \revsdnamedelim:

Jones, Edward

This command should be used with \bibnamedelimd as a reversed-name separator in formatting directives for name lists. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedash

The dash to be used as a replacement for recurrent authors or editors in the bibliography. The default is an 'em' or an 'en' dash, depending on the indentation of the list of references.

\labelnamepunct

The separator printed after the name used for alphabetizing in the bibliography (author or editor, if the author field is undefined). With the default styles, this separator replaces \newunitpunct at this location. The default definition is \newunitpunct, i. e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation.

\subtitlepunct

The separator printed between the fields title and subtitle, booktitle and booksubtitle, as well as maintitle and mainsubtitle. With the default styles, this separator replaces \newunitpunct at this location. The default definition is \newunitpunct, i. e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation.

\intitlepunct The separator between the word "in" and the following title in entry types such as @article, @inbook, @incollection, etc. The default definition is a colon plus an interword space (e.g., "Article, in: Journal" or "Title, in: Book"). Note that this is the separator string, not only the punctuation mark. If you don't want a colon after "in", \intitlepunct should still insert a space.

\bibpagespunct

The separator printed before the pages field. The default is a comma plus an interword space.

\bibpagerefpunct

The separator printed before the pageref field. The default is an interword space.

\multinamedelim

The delimiter printed between multiple items in a name list like author or editor if there are more than two names in the list. The default is a comma plus an interword space. See \finalnamedelim for an example.³⁰

\finalnamedelim

The delimiter printed instead of \multinamedelim before the final name in a name list. The default is the localized term 'and', separated by interword spaces. Here is an example:

Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach and Alexander Samarin Edward Jones and Joe Williams

The comma in the first example is the \multinamedelim whereas the string 'and' in both examples is the \finalnamedelim. See also \finalandcomma in § 3.10.2.

³⁰Note that \multinamedelim is not used at all if there are only two names in the list. In this case, the default styles use the \finalnamedelim.

\revsdnamedelim An extra delimiter printed after the first name in a name list if the first name is reversed. The default is an empty string, i. e., no extra delimiter will be printed. Here is an example showing a name list with a comma as \revsdnamedelim:

Jones, Edward, and Joe Williams

In this example, the comma after 'Edward' is the \revsdnamedelim whereas the string 'and' is the \finalnamedelim, printed in addition to the former.

\andothersdelim The delimiter printed before the localization string 'andothers' if a name list like author or editor is truncated. The default is an interword space.

\multilistdelim The delimiter printed between multiple items in a literal list like publisher or location if there are more than two items in the list. The default is a comma plus an interword space. See \multinamedelim for further explanation.

\finallistdelim The delimiter printed instead of \multilistdelim before the final item in a literal list. The default is the localized term 'and', separated by interword spaces. See \finalnamedelim for further explanation.

\andmoredelim The delimiter printed before the localization string 'andmore' if a literal list like publisher or location is truncated. The default is an interword space.

\multicitedelim The delimiter printed between citations if multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. The default is a semicolon plus an interword space.

\supercitedelim Similar to \multicitedelim, but used by the \supercite command only. The default is a comma.

\compcitedelim Similar to \multicitedelim, but used by certain citation styles when 'compressing' multiple citations. The default definition is a comma plus an interword space.

\textcitedelim Similar to \multicitedelim, but used by \textcite and related commands (§ 3.8.2). The default is a comma plus an interword space. The standard styles modify this provisional definition to ensure that the delimiter before the final citation is the localized term 'and', separated by interword spaces. See also \finalandcomma and \finalandsemicolon in § 3.10.2.

\nametitledelim The delimiter printed between the author/editor and the title by author-title and some verbose citation styles. The default definition is a comma plus an interword space.

\nameyeardelim The delimiter printed between the author/editor and the year by author-year citation styles. The default definition is an interword space.

\labelalphaothers

A string to be appended to the non-numeric portion of the labelalpha field (i. e., the field holding the citation label used by alphabetic citation styles) if the number of authors/editors exceeds the maxalphanames threshold or the author/editor list was truncated in the bib file with the keyword 'and others'. This will typically be a single character such as a plus sign or an asterisk. The default is a plus sign. This command may also be redefined to an empty string to disable this feature. In any case, it must be redefined in the preamble.

\sortalphaothers

Similar to \labelalphaothers but used in the sorting process. Setting it to a different value is advisable if the latter contains formatting commands, for example:

Biber only

```
\renewcommand*{\labelalphaothers}{\textbf{+}}
\renewcommand*{\sortalphaothers}{+}
```

If \sortalphaothers is not redefined, it defaults to \labelalphaothers.

\prenotedelim The delimiter printed after the $\langle prenote \rangle$ argument of a citation command. See § 3.8 for details. The default is an interword space.

\postnotedelim The delimiter printed before the $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument of a citation command. See § 3.8 for details. The default is a comma plus an interword space.

\mkbibnamelast{ $\langle text \rangle$ }This command, which takes one argument, is used to format the last name of all authors, editors, translators, etc.

 $\mbox{\mbox{$\backslash$}} \mbox{\mbox{$\backslash$}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\backslash$}}} \mbox{\mbox$

\mkbibnameprefix $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ Similar to \mkbibnamelast, but intended for the name prefix.

\mkbibnameaffix $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ Similar to \mkbibnamelast, but intended for the name affix.

\relatedpunct The separator between the relatedtype bibliography localization string and the data from the first related entry. Here is an example with \relatedpunct set to a dash:

```
A. Smith. Title. 2000, (Orig. pub. as-Origtitle)
```

\relateddelim The separator between the data of multiple related entries. The default definition is an optional dot plus linebreak. Here is an example where volumes A-E are related entries of the 5 volume main work:

```
Donald E. Knuth. Computers & Typesetting. 5 vols. Reading, Mass.: Addison

→ -

Wesley, 1984-1986.

Vol. A: The TEXbook. 1984.

Vol. B: TEX: The Program. 1986.

Vol. C: The METAFONTbook. By. 1986.
```

```
Vol. D: METAFONT: The Program. 1986.
Vol. E: Computer Modern Typefaces. 1986.
```

3.10.2 语言相关命令 Language-specific Commands

The commands in this section are language specific. When redefining them, you need to wrap the new definition in a \DeclareBibliographyExtras command (in an .lbx file) or a \DefineBibliographyExtras command (user documents), see § 3.9 for details. Note that all commands starting with \mk... take one or more arguments.

\bibrangedash

The language specific dash to be used for ranges of numbers.

\bibrangessep

Biber only

The language specific separator to be used between multiple ranges.

\bibdatedash

The language specific dash to be used for date ranges.

\mkbibdatelong

Takes the names of three field as arguments which correspond to three date components (in the order year/month/day) and uses their values to print the date in the language specific long date format.

\mkbibdateshort Similar to \mkbibdatelong but using the language specific short date format.

\finalandcomma

Prints the comma to be inserted before the final 'and' in a list, if applicable in the respective language. Here is an example:

```
Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin
```

\finalandcomma is the comma before the word 'and'. See also \multinamedelim, \finalnamedelim, \textcitedelim, and \revsdnamedelim in § 3.10.1.

\finalandsemicolon Prints the semicolon to be inserted before the final 'and' in a list of lists, if applicable in the respective language. Here is an example:

```
Goossens, Mittelbach, and Samarin; Bertram and Wenworth; and Knuth
```

\finalandsemicolon is the semicolon before the word 'and'. See also \textcitedelim in § 3.10.1.

```
\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibordinal}}} \
```

This command, which takes an integer as its argument, prints an ordinal number.

```
\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibmascord}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibmascord}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{$integer$}$}} \rangle \}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a masculine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

$\mbox{mkbibfemord} \{ \langle integer \rangle \}$

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a feminine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibneutord}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{$mkbibneutord}$}} \rangle$

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a neuter ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibordedition}}} \$

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but intended for use with the term 'edition'.

\mkbibordseries $\{\langle integer \rangle\}$

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but intended for use with the term 'series'.

3.10.3 尺寸和计数器 Lengths and Counters

The length registers and counters in this section may be changed in the document preamble with \setlength and \setcounter, respectively.

\bibhang The hanging indentation of the bibliography, if applicable. This length is initialized to \parindent at load-time.

\biblabelsep The horizontal space between entries and their corresponding labels in the bibliography. This only applies to bibliography styles which print labels, such as the numeric and alphabetic styles. This length is initialized to twice the value of \labelsep at load-time.

\bibitemsep The vertical space between the individual entries in the bibliography. This length is initialized to \itemsep at load-time. Note that \bibitemsep, \bibnamesep, and \bibinitsep obey the rules for \addvspace, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.

Vertical space to be inserted between two entries in the bibliography whenever an entry starts with a name which is different from the initial name of the previous entry. The default value is zero. Setting this length to a positive value greater than \bibitemsep will group the bibliography by author/editor name. Note that \bibitemsep, \bibnamesep, and \bibinitsep obey the rules for \addvspace, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.

\bibinitsep

Vertical space to be inserted between two entries in the bibliography whenever an entry starts with a letter which is different from the initial letter of the previous entry. The default value is zero. Setting this length to a positive value greater than \bibitemsep will group the bibliography alphabetically. Note that \bibitemsep, \bibnamesep, and \bibinitsep obey the rules for \addvspace, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.

\bibparsep

The vertical space between paragraphs within an entry in the bibliography. The default value is zero.

abbrvpenalty

This counter, which is used by the localization modules, holds the penalty used in short or abbreviated localization strings. For example, a linebreak in expressions such as "et al." or "ed. by" is unfortunate, but should still be possible to prevent overfull boxes. This counter is initialized to \hyphenpenalty at load-time. The idea is making TeX treat the whole expression as if it were a single, hyphenatable word as far as line-breaking is concerned. If you dislike such linebreaks, use a higher value. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero. If you want to suppress them unconditionally, set it to 'infinite' (10 000 or higher).31

highnamepenalty

This counter holds a penalty affecting line-breaking in names. Please refer to §§ 3.13.4 和 3.10.1 for explanation. The counter is initialized to \hyphenpenalty at load-time. Use a higher value if you dislike the respective linebreaks. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero. If you prefer the traditional BibTeX behavior (no linebreaks at highnamepenalty breakpoints), set it to 'infinite' (10 000 or higher).

lownamepenalty

Similar to highnamepenalty. Please refer to §§ 3.13.4 和 3.10.1 for explanation. The counter is initialized to half the \hyphenpenalty at load-time. Use a higher value if you dislike the respective linebreaks. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero.

3.10.4 多用途命令 All-purpose Commands

The commands in this section are all-purpose text commands which are generally available, not only in citations and the bibliography.

\bibellipsis An ellipsis symbol with brackets: '[...]'.

\noligature Disables ligatures at this position and adds some space. Use this command to break up standard ligatures like 'fi' and 'fl'. It is similar to the "| shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

³¹The default values assigned to abbrvpenalty, lownamepenalty, and highnamepenalty are deliberately very low to prevent overfull boxes. This implies that you will hardly notice any effect on line-breaking if the text is set justified. If you set these counters to 10 000 to suppress the respective breakpoints, you will notice their effect but you may also be confronted with overfull boxes. Keep in mind that line-breaking in the bibliography is often more difficult than in the body text and that you can not resort to rephrasing a sentence. In some cases it may be preferable to set the entire bibliography \raggedright to prevent suboptimal linebreaks. In this case, even the fairly low default penalties will make a visible difference.

\hyphenate A conditional hyphen. In contrast to the standard \- command, this one allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the "- shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

\hyphen An explicit, breakable hyphen intended for compound words. In contrast to a literal '-', this command allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the "= shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

\nbhyphen An explicit, non-breakable hyphen intended for compound words. In contrast to a literal '-', this command does not permit line breaks at the hyphen but still allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the "~ shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

\nohyphenation A generic switch which suppresses hyphenation locally. Its scope should normally be confined to a group.

 $\text{textnohyphenation}\{\langle text \rangle\}$

Similar to \nohyphenation but restricted to the $\langle text \rangle$ argument.

 $\mbox{mknumalph}{\langle integer \rangle}$

Takes an integer in the range 1-702 as its argument and converts it to a string as follows: 1=a, ..., 26=z, 27=aa, ..., 702=zz. This is intended for use in formatting directives for the extrayear and extraalpha fields.

 $\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibacro}{\langle}$}}$

Generic command which typesets an acronym using the small caps variant of the current font, if available, and as-is otherwise. The acronym should be given in uppercase letters.

 $\adjustable { \langle character \rangle }$

Automatically converts the $\langle character \rangle$ to its uppercase form if Biblatex's punctuation tracker would capitalize a localization string at the current location. This command is robust. It is useful for conditional capitalization of certain strings in an entry. Note that the $\langle character \rangle$ argument is a single character given in lowercase. For example:

\autocap{s}pecial issue

will yield 'Special issue' or 'special issue', as appropriate. If the string to be capitalized starts with an inflected character given in Ascii notation, include the accent command in the $\langle character \rangle$ argument as follows:

\autocap{\'e}dition sp\'eciale

This will yield 'Édition spéciale' or 'édition spéciale'. If the string to be capitalized starts with a command which prints a character, such as $\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{oe}}}$ or $\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{oe}}}$, simply put the command in the $\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{character}}}$ argument:

```
\autocap{\oe}uvres
```

This will yield 'Œuvres' or 'œuvres'.

3.11 语言相关注意点 Language-specific Notes

The facilities discussed in this section are specific to certain localization modules.

3.11.1 **美语** American

The American localization module uses \uspunctuation from § 4.7.5 to enable 'American-style' punctuation. If this feature is enabled, all trailing commas and periods after \mkbibquote will be moved inside the quotes. If you want to disable this feature, use \stdpunctuation as follows:

```
\DefineBibliographyExtras{american}{%
  \stdpunctuation
}
```

By default, the 'American punctuation' feature is enabled by the american localization module only. The above code is only required if you want American localization without American punctuation. Since standard punctuation is the package default, it would be redundant with any other language.

It is highly advisable to always specify american, british, australian, etc. rather than english when loading the babel/polyglossia packages to avoid any possible confusion. Older versions of the babel package used to treat english as an alias for british; more recent ones treat it as an alias for american. The biblatex package essentially treats english as an alias for american, except for the above feature which is only enabled if american is requested explicitly.

3.11.2 **西班牙语** Spanish

Handling the word 'and' is more difficult in Spanish than in the other languages supported by this package because it may be 'y' or 'e', depending on the initial sound of the following word. Therefore, the Spanish localization module does not use the localization string 'and' but a special internal 'smart and' command. The behavior of this command is controlled by the smartand counter.

This counter controls the behavior of the internal 'smart and' command. When set to 1, it prints 'y' or 'e', depending on the context. When set to 2, it always prints 'y'. When set to 3, it always prints 'e'. When set to 0, the 'smart and' feature is disabled. This

counter is initialized to 1 at load-time and may be changed in the preamble. Note that setting this counter to a positive value implies that the Spanish localization module ignores \finalnamedelim and \finallistdelim.

\forceE Use this command in bib files if Biblatex gets the 'and' before a certain name wrong.

As its name suggests, it will enforce 'e'. This command must be used in a special way to prevent confusing BibTeX. Here is an example:

```
author = {Edward Jones and Eoin Maguire},
author = {Edward Jones and {\forceE{E}}oin Maguire},
```

Note that the initial letter of the respective name component is given as an argument to \forceE and that the entire construct is wrapped in an additional pair of curly braces.

\forceY Similar to \forceE but enforces 'y'.

3.11.3 希腊语 Greek

The Greek localization module requires UTF-8 support. It will not work with any other encoding. Generally speaking, the Biblatex package is compatible with the inputenc package and with XeLaTeX. The ucs package will not work. Since inputenc's standard utf8 module is missing glyph mappings for Greek, this leaves Greek users with XeLaTeX. Note that you may need to load additional packages which set up Greek fonts. As a rule of thumb, a setup which works for regular Greek documents should also work with Biblatex. However, there is one fundamental limitation. As of this writing, Biblatex has no support for switching scripts. Greek titles in the bibliography should work fine, provided that you use Biber as a backend, but English and other titles in the bibliography may be rendered in Greek letters. If you need multi-script bibliographies, using XeLaTeX is the only sensible choice.

3.11.4 **俄语** Russian

Like the Greek localization module, the Russian module also requires UTF-8 support. It will not work with any other encoding.

3.12 用法注意点 Usage Notes

The following sections give a basic overview of the Biblatex package and discuss some typical usage scenarios.

3.12.1 概述 Overview

Using the Biblatex package is slightly different from using traditional BibTeX styles and related packages. Before we get to specific usage scenarios, we will therefore have a look at the structure of a typical document first:

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage[...]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{bibfile.bib}
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\printbibliography
\end{document}
```

With traditional BibTeX, the \bibliography command serves two purposes. It marks the location of the bibliography and it also specifies the bib file(s). The file extension is omitted. With Biblatex, resources are specified in the preamble with \addbibresource using the full name with .bib suffix. The bibliography is printed using the \printbibliography command which may be used multiple times (see § 3.7 for details). The document body may contain any number of citation commands (§ 3.8). Processing this example file requires that a certain procedure be followed. Suppose our example file is called example.tex and our bibliographic data is in bibfile.bib. The procedure, then, is as follows:

3.12.1.1 Biber

- Run latex on example.tex. If the file contains any citations, Biblatex will request the respective data from Biber by writing commands to the auxiliary file example. bcf.
- 2. Run biber on example.bcf. Biber will retrieve the data from bibfile.bib and write it to the auxiliary file example.bbl in a format which can be processed by Biblatex.
- 3. Run latex on example.tex. Biblatex will read the data from example.bbl and print all citations as well as the bibliography.

3.12.1.2 BibTeX

- 1. Run latex on example.tex. If the file contains any citations, Biblatex will request the respective data from BibTeX by writing commands to the auxiliary file example.aux.
- 2. Run bibtex on example.aux. BibTeX will retrieve the data from bibfile.bib and write it to the auxiliary file example.bbl in a format which can be processed by Biblatex.
- 3. Run latex on example.tex. Biblatex will read the data from example.bbl and print all citations as well as the bibliography.

Whenever a reference to a work which has not been cited before is added, this procedure must be repeated. This is also the case if the last reference to a work which has been cited before is removed because some citation labels may change in this case. In contrast to traditional BibTeX, there is normally no need to run latex twice after running the backend as far as the handling of bibliographic data is concerned.³²

Note that when using BibTeX as the backend this only applies to the most basic case. Using the xref field or the entryset field may require an additional LaTeX/BibTeX/LaTeX cycle. Some other facilities provided by Biblatex may also require an additional latex run to get certain references and the page tracking right. In this case, the usual warning messages such as "There were undefined references" and "Label(s) may have changed. Rerun to get cross-references right" will be printed.

BibTeX only

3.12.2 辅助文件 Auxiliary Files

3.12.2.1 Biber The Biblatex package uses one auxiliary bcf file only. Even if there are citation commands in a file included via \include, you only need to run Biber on the main bcf file. All information Biber needs is in the bcf file, including information about all refsections if using multiple refsection environments (see § 3.12.3).

3.12.2.2 BibTeX By default, the Biblatex package uses the main aux file only. Even if there are citation commands in a file included via \include, which has its own aux file, you only need to run BibTeX on the main aux file. If you are using refsection environments in a document (see § 3.12.3) Biblatex will create one additional aux file for every refsection environment. In this case, you also need to run bibtex on each additional aux file. The name of the additional aux files is the base name of the main input file with the string -blx and a running number appended at the end. The Biblatex package issues a warning listing the files which require an additional BibTeX run. With the basic example presented in § 3.12.1, it would issue the following warning:

```
Package biblatex Warning: Please (re)run BibTeX on the file(s):
(biblatex) example.aux
(biblatex) and rerun LaTeX afterwards.
```

If the input file contained three refsection environments, the warning would read as follows:

```
Package biblatex Warning: Please (re)run BibTeX on the file(s):

(biblatex) example1-blx.aux

(biblatex) example2-blx.aux

(biblatex) example3-blx.aux

(biblatex) and rerun LaTeX afterwards.
```

 $^{^{32}\}mbox{That}$ is, unless the defer numbers package option is enabled. See § 4.1

Apart from these aux files, Biblatex uses an additional bib file with the same suffix to pass certain control parameters to BibTeX. In the example above, this file would be named example-blx.bib. In the event of a file name conflict, you can change the suffix by redefining the macro \blxauxsuffix in the document preamble. When using Biber, Biblatex writes a control file named example.bcf and ignores \blxauxsuffix. There is also no auxiliary bib file in this case.

Note that Biblatex will not overwrite any files it did not create. All auxiliary files created automatically by this package start with a special signature line. Before overwriting a file (excluding the main aux file, which is managed by LaTeX), Biblatex inspects the first line of the file to make sure that there is no file name conflict. If the file in question is missing the signature line, Biblatex will immediately issue an error message and abort before opening the output stream. In this case you should delete any spurious files accidentally left in the working directory. If the error persists, there may be a file name conflict with a file found in one of the TeX installation trees. Since the installation trees usually do not contain any aux files and the string -blx is fairly exotic in the name of a bib file, this is rather unlikely but theoretically possible. If you find out that this is indeed the case, you should redefine \blxauxsuffix permanently in the Biblatex configuration file, biblatex.cfg.

3.12.3 多个参考文献表 Multiple Bibliographies

In a collection of articles by different authors, such as a conference proceedings volume for example, it is very common to have one bibliography for each article rather than a global one for the entire book. In the example below, each article would be presented as a separate \chapter with its own bibliography.

Note that with the BibTeX backend, Biblatex creates one additional aux file for every refsection environment. These files have to be processed by BibTeX as well, see § 3.12.2 for details.

BibTeX only

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
...
\printbibliography[heading=subbibliography]
\end{refsection}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
...
\printbibliography[heading=subbibliography]
\end{refsection}
...
\printbibliography[heading=subbibliography]
\end{refsection}
```

```
\end{document}
```

If \printbibliography is used inside a refsection environment, it automatically restricts the scope of the list of references to the enclosing refsection environment. For a cumulative bibliography which is subdivided by chapter but printed at the end of the book, use the section option of \printbibliography to select a reference section, as shown in the next example.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{References for Chapter \ref{refsection:\therefsection}}}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
\end{refsection}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
\end{refsection}
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[section=1,heading=subbibliography]
\printbibliography[section=2,heading=subbibliography]
\end{document}
```

Note the definition of the bibliography heading in the above example. This is the definition taking care of the subheadings in the bibliography. The main heading is generated with a plain \chapter command in this case. The Biblatex package automatically sets a label at the beginning of every refsection environment, using the standard \label command. The identifier used is the string refsection: followed by the number of the respective refsection environment. The number of the current section is accessible via the refsection counter. When using the section option of \printbibliography, this counter is also set locally. This means that you may use the counter in heading definitions to print subheadings like "References for Chapter 3", as shown above. You could also use the title of the respective chapter as a subheading by loading the nameref package and using \nameref instead of \ref:

```
\usepackage{nameref}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{\nameref{refsection:\therefsection}}}
```

Since giving one \printbibliography command for each part of a subdivided bibliography is tedious, Biblatex provides a shorthand. The \bibbysection command automatically loops over all reference sections. This is equivalent to giving one \printbibliography command for every section but has the additional benefit of automatically skipping sections without references. In the example above, the bibliography would then be generated as follows:

```
\printbibheading
\bibbysection[heading=subbibliography]
```

When using a format with one cumulative bibliography subdivided by chapter (or any other document division) it may be more appropriate to use refsegment rather than refsection environments. The difference is that the refsection environment generates labels local to the environment while refsegment does not affect the generation of labels, hence they will be unique across the entire document. Note that when using BibTeX as the backend, refsegment environments do not require additional aux files. The next example could also be given in § 3.12.4 because, visually, it creates one global bibliography subdivided into multiple segments.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{References for Chapter \ref{refsegment:
    → \therefsection\therefsegment}}}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsegment}
\end{refsegment}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsegment}
\end{refsegment}
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[segment=1,heading=subbibliography]
\printbibliography[segment=2,heading=subbibliography]
\end{document}
```

The use of refsegment is similar to refsection and there is also a corresponding segment option for \printbibliography. The Biblatex package automatically sets a label at the beginning of every refsegment environment using the string refsegment: followed by the number of the respective refsegment environment as an identifier.

There is a matching refsegment counter which may be used in heading definitions, as shown above. As with reference sections, there is also a shorthand command which automatically loops over all reference segments:

```
\printbibheading
\bibbysegment[heading=subbibliography]
```

This is equivalent to giving one \printbibliography command for every segment in the current refsection.

3.12.4 子参考文献表 Subdivided Bibliographies

It is very common to subdivide a bibliography by certain criteria. For example, you may want to list printed and online resources separately or divide a bibliography into primary and secondary sources. The former case is straightforward because you can use the entry type as a criterion for the type and nottype filters of \printbibliography. The next example also demonstrates how to generate matching subheadings for the two parts of the bibliography.

You may also use more than two subdivisions:

```
\printbibliography[type=article,...]
\printbibliography[type=book,...]
\printbibliography[nottype=article,nottype=book,...]
```

It is even possible to give a chain of different types of filters:

```
\printbibliography[section=2,type=book,keyword=abc,notkeyword=xyz]
```

This would print all works cited in reference section 2 whose entry type is @book and whose keywords field includes the keyword 'abc' but not 'xyz'. When using bibliography filters in conjunction with a numeric style, see § 3.13.5. If you need complex filters

with conditional expressions, use the filter option in conjunction with a custom filter defined with \defbibfilter. See § 3.7.9 for details on custom filters.

Dividing a bibliography into primary and secondary sources is possible with a keyword filter, as shown in the above example. In this case, with only two subdivisions, it would be sufficient to use one keyword as filter criterion:

```
\printbibliography[keyword=primary,...]
\printbibliography[notkeyword=primary,...]
```

Since Biblatex has no way of knowing if an item in the bibliography is considered to be primary or secondary literature, we need to supply the bibliography filter with the required data by adding a keywords field to each entry in the bib file. These keywords may then be used as targets for the keyword and notkeyword filters, as shown above. It may be a good idea to add such keywords right away while building a bib file.

```
@Book{key,
    keywords = {primary,some,other,keywords},
    ...
```

An alternative way of subdividing the list of references are bibliography categories. They differ from the keywords-based approach shown in the example above in that they work on the document level and do not require any changes to the bib file.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{primary}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{secondary}
\addtocategory{primary}{key1, key3, key6}
\addtocategory{secondary}{key2, key4, key5}
\addbibresource{...}
```

In this case it would also be sufficient to use one category only:

```
\printbibliography[category=primary,...]
\printbibliography[notcategory=primary,...]
```

It is still a good idea to declare all categories used in the bibliography explicitly because there is a \bibbycategory command which automatically loops over all categories. This is equivalent to giving one \printbibliography command for every category, in the order in which they were declared.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{primary}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{secondary}
\addtocategory{primary}{key1,key3,key6}
\addtocategory{secondary}{key2,key4,key5}
\defbibheading{primary}{\section*{Primary Sources}}
\defbibheading{secondary}{\section*{Secondary Sources}}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
...
\printbibheading
\bibbycategory
\end{document}
```

The handling of the headings is different from \bibbysection and \bibbysegment in this case. \bibbycategory uses the name of the current category as a heading name. This is equivalent to passing heading= $\langle category \rangle$ to \printbibliography and implies that you need to provide a matching heading for every category.

3.12.5 **条目集** Entry Sets

An entry set is a group of entries which are cited as a single reference and listed as a single item in the bibliography. The individual entries in the set are separated by \entrysetpunct (§ 4.10.1). The Biblatex package supports two types of entry sets.

Static entry sets are defined in the bib file like any other entry. Dynamic entry sets are defined with \defbibentryset (§ 3.7.11) on a per-document/per-refsection basis in the document preamble or the document body. This section deals with the definition of entry sets; style authors should also see § 4.11.1 for further information.

3.12.5.1 Static entry sets Static entry sets are defined in the bib file like any other entry. When using Biber as the backend, defining an entry set is as simple as adding an entry of type @set. The entry has an entryset field defining the members of the set as a separated list of entry keys:

Biber only

```
@Set{set1,
  entryset = {key1, key2, key3},
}
```

Entries may be part of a set in one document/refsection and stand-alone references in another one, depending on the presence of the @set entry. If the @set entry is cited, the set members are grouped automatically. If not, they will work like any regular entry.

When using BibTeX as the backend, which has no native support for entry sets, setting up entry sets involves more work. BibTeX requires entryset and crossref fields to be used in a special way. The members of the set are given in the entryset field of the @set entry. The @set entry also requires a crossref field which points to the first key in the entryset field. In addition to that, all members of the set require entryset fields which are reverse pointers to the entry key of the @set head entry:

```
@Set{set1,
  entryset = {key1,key2,key3},
  crossref = {key1},
}
@Article{key1,
  entryset = {set1},
  author = \{\ldots\},
            = \{\ldots\},
  title
  . . .
}
@InCollection{key2,
  entryset = {set1},
  author = \{\ldots\},
  title
            = \{\ldots\},
  . . .
}
@Article{key3,
  entryset = {set1},
  author = \{...\},
            = \{\ldots\},
  title
```

```
· · · · }
```

Note that citing any set member will automatically load the entire set with BibTeX. If you want to refer to an item as part of a set in one document/refsection and as a stand-alone reference in another one, you need two distinct entries with BibTeX.

3.12.5.2 Dynamic entry sets Dynamic entry sets are set up and work much like static ones. The main difference is that they are defined in the document preamble or on the fly in the document body using the \defbibentryset command from § 3.7.11:

Biber only

```
\defbibentryset{set1}{key1,key2,key3}
```

Dynamic entry sets in the document body are local to the enclosing refsection environment, if any. Otherwise, they are assigned to reference section 0. Those defined in the preamble are assigned to reference section 0. Note that dynamic entry sets require Biber. They will not work with any other backend.

3.12.6 数据容器 Data Containers

Biber only

The @xdata entry type serves as a data container holding one or more fields. These fields may be inherited by other entries using the xdata field. @xdata entries may not be cited or added to the bibliography, they only serve as a data source for other entries. This data inheritance mechanism is useful for fixed field combinations such as publisher/location and for other frequently used data:

```
@XData{hup,
  publisher = {Harvard University Press},
  location = {Cambridge, Mass.},
}

@Book{...,
  author = {...},
  title = {...},
  date = {...},
  xdata = {hup},
}
```

Using a separated list of keys in its xdata field, an entry may inherit data from several @xdata entries. Cascading @xdata entries are supported as well, i. e., an @xdata entry may reference one or more other @xdata entries:

```
@XData{macmillan:name,
   publisher = {Macmillan},
}
@XData{macmillan:place,
```

```
location
              = {New York and London},
}
@XData{macmillan,
  xdata
              = {macmillan:name,macmillan:place},
@Book{...,
  author
              = \{\ldots\},
              = {...},
  title
              = \{\ldots\},
  date
              = {macmillan},
  xdata
}
```

See also §§ 2.1.1 和 2.2.3.

3.12.7 电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information

The Biblatex package provides three fields for electronic publishing information: eprint, eprinttype, and eprintclass. The eprint field is a verbatim field similar to doi which holds the identifier of the item. The eprinttype field holds the resource name, i. e., the name of the site or electronic archive. The optional eprintclass field is intended for additional information specific to the resource indicated by the eprinttype field. This could be a section, a path, classification information, etc. If the eprinttype field is available, the standard styles will use it as a literal label. In the following example, they would print "Resource: identifier" rather than the generic "eprint: identifier":

```
eprint = {identifier},
eprinttype = {Resource},
```

The standard styles feature dedicated support for a few online archives. For arXiv references, put the identifier in the eprint field and the string arxiv in the eprinttype field:

```
eprint = {math/0307200v3},
eprinttype = {arxiv},
```

For papers which use the new identifier scheme (April 2007 and later) add the primary classification in the eprintclass field:

```
eprint = {1008.2849v1},
eprinttype = {arxiv},
eprintclass = {cs.DS},
```

There are two aliases which ease the integration of arXiv entries. archiveprefix is treated as an alias for eprinttype; primaryclass is an alias for eprintclass. If hyperlinks are enabled, the eprint identifier will be transformed into a link to arxiv.org. See the package option arxiv in § 3.1.2.1 for further details.

For JSTOR references, put the stable JSTOR number in the eprint field and the string jstor in the eprinttype field:

```
eprint = {number},
eprinttype = {jstor},
```

When using JSTOR's export feature to export citations in BibTeX format, JSTOR uses the url field by default (where the $\langle number \rangle$ is a unique and stable identifier):

```
url = {http://www.jstor.org/stable/number},
```

While this will work as expected, full urls tend to clutter the bibliography. With the eprint fields, the standard styles will use the more readable "JSTOR: $\langle number \rangle$ " format which also supports hyperlinks. The $\langle number \rangle$ becomes a clickable link if hyperref support is enabled.

For PubMed references, put the stable PubMed identifier in the eprint field and the string pubmed in the eprinttype field. This means that:

```
url = {http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/pmid},
```

becomes:

```
eprint = {pmid},
eprinttype = {pubmed},
```

and the standard styles will print "PMID: $\langle pmid \rangle$ " instead of the lengthy URL. If hyperref support is enabled, the $\langle pmid \rangle$ will be a clickable link to PubMed.

For handles (HDLs), put the handle in the eprint field and the string hdl in the eprinttype field:

```
eprint = {handle},
eprinttype = {hdl},
```

For Google Books references, put Google's identifier in the eprint field and the string googlebooks in the eprinttype field. This means that, for example:

```
url = {http://books.google.com/books?id=XXu4AkRVBBoC},
```

would become:

```
eprint = {XXu4AkRVBBoC},
eprinttype = {googlebooks},
```

and the standard styles would print "Google Books: XXu4AkRVBBoC" instead of the full URL. If hyperref support is enabled, the identifier will be a clickable link to Google Books.³³

Note that eprint is a verbatim field. Always give the identifier in its unmodified form. For example, there is no need to replace _ with _. Also see § 4.11.2 on how to add dedicated support for other eprint resources.

3.12.8 外部摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations

Styles which print the fields abstract and/or annotation may support an alternative way of adding abstracts or annotations to the bibliography. Instead of including the text in the bib file, it may also be stored in an external LaTeX file. For example, instead of saying

```
@Article{key1,
    ...
    abstract = {This is an abstract of entry 'key1'.}
}
```

in the bib file, you may create a file named bibabstract-key1.tex and put the abstract in this file:

```
This is an abstract of entry 'key1'.
```

The name of the external file must be the entry key prefixed with bibabstractor bibannotation-, respectively. You can change these prefixes by redefining
\bibabstractprefix and \bibannotationprefix. Note that this feature needs to be
enabled explicitly by setting the package option loadfiles from § 3.1.2.1. The option is disabled by default for performance reasons. Also note that any abstract and
annotation fields in the bib file take precedence over the external files. Using external files is strongly recommended if you have long abstracts or a lot of annotations
since this may increase memory requirements significantly. It is also more convenient
to edit the text in a dedicated LaTeX file. Style authors should see § 4.11.3 for further
information.

3.13 提示与警告 Hints and Caveats

This section provides additional usage hints and addresses some common problems and potential misconceptions.

³³Note that the Google Books ID seems to be a bit of an 'internal' value. As of this writing, there does not seem to be any way to search for an ID on Google Books. You may prefer to use the url in this case.

3.13.1 与KOMA-Script 类共用的方法 Usage with KOMA-Script Classes

When using Biblatex in conjunction with one of the scrbook, scrreprt, or scrartcl classes, the headings bibliography and biblist from § 3.7.7 are responsive to the bibliography-related options of these classes.³⁴ You can override the default headings by using the heading option of \printbibliography, \printbibheading and \printbiblist. See §§ 3.7.2、3.7.3、3.7.7 for details. All default headings are adapted at load-time such that they blend with the behavior of these classes. If one of the above classes is detected, Biblatex will also provide the following additional tests which may be useful in custom heading definitions:

Expands to $\langle true \rangle$ if the class would add the bibliography to the table of contents, and to $\langle false \rangle$ otherwise.

Expands to $\langle true \rangle$ if the class would add the bibliography to the table of contents as a numbered section, and to $\langle false \rangle$ otherwise. If this test yields $\langle true \rangle$, \ifkomabibtotoc will always yield $\langle true \rangle$ as well, but not vice versa.

3.13.2 与 Memoir 类共用的方法 Usage with the Memoir Class

When using Biblatex with the memoir class, most class facilities for adapting the bibliography have no effect. Use the corresponding facilities of this package instead (§§ 3.7.2、3.7.7、3.7.8). Instead of redefining memoir's \bibsection, use the heading option of \printbibliography and \defbibheading (§§ 3.7.2 和 3.7.7). Instead of \prebibhook and \postbibhook, use the prenote and postnote options of \printbibliography and \defbibnote (§§ 3.7.2 和 3.7.8). All default headings are adapted at load-time such that they blend well with the default layout of this class. The default headings bibliography and biblist (§ 3.7.7) are also responsive to memoir's \biblintoc and \nobibintoc switches. The length register \biblitemsep is used by Biblatex in a way similar to memoir (§ 3.10.3). This section also introduces some additional length registers which correspond to memoir's \biblistextra. Lastly, \setbiblabel does not map to a single facility of the Biblatex package since the style of all labels in the bibliography is controlled by the bibliography style. See § 4.2.2 in the author section of this manual for details. If the memoir class is detected, Biblatex will also provide the following additional test which may be useful in custom heading definitions:

³⁴This applies to the traditional syntax of these options (bibtotoc and bibtotocnumbered) as well as to the $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ syntax introduced in KOMA-Script 3.x, i.e., to bibliography=nottotoc, bibliography=totoc, and bibliography=totocnumbered. The global toc=bibliography and toc=bibliographynumbered options as well as their aliases are detected as well. In any case, the options must be set globally in the optional argument to \documentclass.

```
\infty \iff memoir bib into \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\}
```

Expands to $\langle true \rangle$ or $\langle false \rangle$, depending on memoir's \bibintoc and \nobibintoc switches. This is a LaTeX frontend to memoir's \ifnobibintoc test. Note that the logic of the test is reversed.

3.13.3 标注中的页码 Page Numbers in Citations

If the $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument to a citation command is a page number or page range, Biblatex will automatically prefix it with 'p.' or 'pp.' by default. This works reliably in typical cases, but sometimes manual intervention may be required. In this case, it is important to understand how this argument is handled in detail. First, Biblatex checks if the postnote is an Arabic or Roman numeral (case insensitive). If this test succeeds, the postnote is considered as a single page or other number which will be prefixed with 'p.' or some other string which depends on the pagination field (see § 2.3.10). If it fails, a second test is performed to find out if the postnote is a range or a list of Arabic or Roman numerals. If this test succeeds, the postnote will be prefixed with 'pp.' or some other string in the plural form. If it fails as well, the postnote is printed as is. Note that both tests expand the $\langle postnote \rangle$. All commands used in this argument must therefore be robust or prefixed with \protect. Here are a few examples of $\langle postnote \rangle$ arguments which will be correctly recognized as a single number, a range of numbers, or a list of numbers, respectively:

```
\cite[25]{key}
\cite[vii]{key}
\cite[XIV]{key}
\cite[34--38]{key}
\cite[iv--x]{key}
\cite[185/86]{key}
\cite[XI \& XV]{key}
\cite[3, 5, 7]{key}
\cite[vii--x; 5, 7]{key}
```

In some other cases, however, the tests may get it wrong and you need to resort to the auxiliary commands \pno, \ppno, and \nopp from § 3.8.8. For example, suppose a work is cited by a special pagination scheme consisting of numbers and letters. In this scheme, the string '27a' would mean 'page 27, part a'. Since this string does not look like a number or a range to Biblatex, you need to force the prefix for a single number manually:

```
\cite[\pno~27a]{key}
```

There is also a \ppno command which forces a range prefix as well as a \nopp command which suppresses all prefixes:

```
\cite[\ppno~27a--28c]{key}
\cite[\nopp 25]{key}
```

These commands may be used anywhere in the $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument. They may also be used multiple times. For example, when citing by volume and page number, you may want to suppress the prefix at the beginning of the postnote and add it in the middle of the string:

```
\cite[VII, \pno~5]{key}
\cite[VII, \pno~3, \ppno~40--45]{key}
\cite[see][\ppno~37--46, in particular \pno~40]{key}
```

There are also two auxiliary command for suffixes like 'the following page(s)'. Instead of inserting such suffixes literally (which would require \ppno to force a prefix):

```
\cite[\ppno~27~sq.]{key}
\cite[\ppno~55~sqq.]{key}
```

use the auxiliary commands \psq and \psqq. Note that there is no space between the number and the command. This space will be inserted automatically and may be modified by redefining the macro \sqspace.

```
\cite[27\psq]{key}
\cite[55\psqq]{key}
```

Since the postnote is printed without any prefix if it includes any character which is not an Arabic or Roman numeral, you may also type the prefix manually:

```
\cite[p.~5]{key}
```

It is possible to suppress the prefix on a per-entry basis by setting the pagination field of an entry to 'none', see § 2.3.10 for details. If you do not want any prefixes at all or prefer to type them manually, you can also disable the entire mechanism in the document preamble or the configuration file as follows:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{postnote}{#1}
```

The $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument is handled as a field and the formatting of this field is controlled by a field formatting directive which may be freely redefined. The above definition will simply print the postnote as is. See §§ 4.3.2 π 4.4.2 in the author guide for further details.

3.13.4 姓名组成部分及其间距 Name Parts and Name Spacing

The Biblatex package gives users and style authors very fine-grained control of name spacing and the line-breaking behavior of names, especially when they are using Biber as the backend. The commands discussed in the following are documented in §§ 3.10.1 和 4.10.1. This section is meant to give an overview of how they are put together. A note on terminology: a name *part* is a basic part of the name, for example the first or the last name. Each part of a name may be a single name or it may be composed of multiple names. For example, the name part 'first name' may be composed of a first and a middle name. The latter are referred to as name *elements* in this section. Let's consider a simple name first: "John Edward Doe". This name is composed of the following parts:

First John Edward
Prefix —
Last Doe
Suffix —

The spacing, punctuation and line-breaking behavior of names is controlled by six macros:

part if that element is less than three characters long and

before the last element of every name part.

b=\bibnamedelimb Inserted by the backend between all elements of a name part

where \bibnamedelima does not apply.

the last name if useprefix=true. If useprefix=false,

\bibnamedelimd is used instead.

d=\bibnamedelimd Inserted by a formatting directive between name parts where

\bibnamedelimc does not apply.

i=\bibnamedelimi Replaces \bibnamedelima/b after initials

p=\revsdnamepunct Inserted by a formatting directive after the last name when the

name parts are reversed.

This is how the delimiters are employed:

```
John_a Edward_d Doe
Doe_{p|d} John_a Edward
```

Initials in the bib file get a special delimiter:

Let's consider a more complex name: "Charles-Jean Étienne Gustave Nicolas de La Vallée Poussin". This name is composed of the following parts:

First Charles-Jean Étienne Gustave Nicolas

Prefix de

Last La Vallée Poussin

Suffix -

The delimiters:

Charles-Jean Etienne Gustave Nicolas de La Vallée Poussin

Note that \bibnamedelima/b/i are inserted by the backend. The backend processes the name parts and takes care of the delimiters between the elements that make up a name part, processing each part individually. In contrast to that, the delimiters between the parts of the complete name (\bibnamedelimc/d) are added by name formatting directives at a later point in the processing chain. The spacing and punctuation of initials is also handled by the backend and may be customized by redefining the following three macros:

a=\bibinitperiod Inserted by the backend after initials.

b=\bibinitdelim Inserted by the backend between multiple initials. c=\bibinithyphendelim Inserted by the backend between the initials of

hyphenated name parts, replacing \bibinitperiod and

\bibinitdelim.

This is how they are employed:

J. E. Doe

K.-H. Mustermann

3.13.5 参考文献筛选器和标注标签 Bibliography Filters and Citation Labels

The citation labels generated by this package are assigned to the full list of references before it is split up by any bibliography filters. They are guaranteed to be unique across the entire document (or a refsection environment), no matter how many bibliography filters you are using. When using a numeric citation scheme, however, this will most likely lead to discontinuous numbering in split bibliographies. Use the defernumbers package option to avoid this problem. If this option is enabled, numeric labels are assigned the first time an entry is printed in any bibliography.

3.13.6 参考文献标题中的活动字符 Active Characters in Bibliography Headings

Packages using active characters, such as babel, polyglossia, csquotes, or underscore, usually do not make them active until the beginning of the document body to avoid interference with other packages. A typical example of such an active character is the Ascii quote ", which is used by various language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages. If shorthands such as "< and "a are used in the argument

to \defbibheading and the headings are defined in the document preamble, the non-active form of the characters is saved in the heading definition. When the heading is typeset, they do not function as a command but are simply printed literally. The most straightforward solution consists in moving \defbibheading after \begin{document}. Alternatively, you may use babel's \shorthandon and \shorthandoff commands to temporarily make the shorthands active in the preamble. The above also applies to bibliography notes and the \defbibnote command.

3.13.7 在参考文献分节和分部中的编组 Grouping in Reference Sections and Segments

All LaTeX environments enclosed in \begin and \end form a group. This may have undesirable side effects if the environment contains anything that does not expect to be used within a group. This issue is not specific to refsection and refsegment environments, but it obviously applies to them as well. Since these environments will usually enclose much larger portions of the document than a typical itemize or similar environment, they are simply more likely to trigger problems related to grouping. If you observe any malfunctions after adding refsection environments to a document (for example, if anything seems to be 'trapped' inside the environment), try the following syntax instead:

```
\chapter{...}
\refsection
...
\endrefsection
```

This will not from a group, but otherwise works as usual. As far as Biblatex is concerned, it does not matter which syntax you use. The alternative syntax is also supported by the refsegment environment. Note that the commands \newrefsection and \newrefsegment do not form a group. See $\S\S 3.7.4$ 和 3.7.5 for details.

4 样式作者指南

本节内容是样式作者指南,主要介绍 Biblatex 包的接口。该指南囊括了设计参考文献著录和标注样式或者本地化模型所需知晓的所有内容。在阅读本部分内容前最好先阅读上一节的用户手册。

4.1 概述

在讨论 Biblatex 提供的命令和工具之前,我们首先介绍一些基本概念。Biblatex 包以一种特殊的方式使用辅助文件。最值得注意的是当使用 BibTeX 后端程序时,bbl文件的使用方式存在差别,即只有一个bst文件可用来实现结构化的数据接口,该文件并非用来输出可打印数据。

使用 LaTeX 的标准参考文献工具,一个文档通常包含任意数量的文献引用命令,以及常放在文档最后的\bibliographystyle和\bibliography命令。文献引用

命令在文档中的位置是任意的,而\bibliographystyle和\bibliography命令则标记了打印参考文献表的位置,比如:

```
\documentclass{...}
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\bibliographystyle{...}
\bibliography{...}
\end{document}
```

处理这些文件遵循一定的流程,其过程如下:

- 1. 运行 latex: 第一次运行latex,在 fileaux 文件中写入\bibstyle和 \bibdata命令,以及所有标注的\citation命令。这时,各引文标注³⁵是未定义的,因为 LaTeX 等待 BibTeX 提供需要的数据,当然参考文献表也没生成。
- 2. 运行 bibtex:BibTeX 在bbl文件中写入一个thebibliography环境,用以提供aux文件中\citation命令所需求的所有条目,这些条目的数据来自bib文件。
- 3. 运行latex,第二次运行latex,thebibliography环境中的\bibitem命令在aux文件中为各参考文献条目写入\bibcite命令。这些\bibcite命令定义的标签将用于\cite命令。然而,各引文标注仍然未定义,因为这些标签在最后一次运行latex前仍未知。
- 4. 运行latex: 第三次运行,随着导言区最后读入了aux文件,引文标注的标签 定义完成。这样所有的标注可以正确打印。

注意到所有的参考文献数据都以最终格式 (指最后打印出的格式) 写入bbl文件。该文件的读取和处理如同任何文档中的可打印章节。例如,考虑在一个bib文件中有如下条目:

根据plain.bst 样式, BibTeX 在bbl文件中输出该条目如下:

-25

³⁵ 这里的 references 译为引文标注,指在引用命令导致在正文中出现的标注,这个标注由标签 label 构成。

```
\bibitem{companion}
Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin.
\newblock {\em The LaTeX Companion}.
\newblock Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1994.
```

默认情况下,LaTeX 生成顺序编码制标注标签,因此\bibitem命令在aux文件中写入的行如下所示:

```
\bibcite{companion}{1}
```

要实现一个不同的标注标签样式,意味着需要通过aux文件传递更多的数据。比如,当使用natbib包时,aux文件包含的标注(或引用)信息行,如下:

Biblatex 包支持任何格式的标注标签,因此标注命令需要访问所有的参考文献数据。看一看同样需要在标注中提供所有参考文献数据的jurabib包的输出,我们将更清楚地理解这对上述处理过程的意义。

```
\label{thm:linear_loss} $$ \left\{ \{0\}_{\} \in \mathbb{S}_{0}}_{1994}_{}_{1994}_{}_{Reading, Mass.\left(0\}_{1994}_{}_{1994}_{}_{Reading, Mass.\left(0\}_{1994}_{1994}_{The LaTeX Companion}_{1994}_{1994}_{The LaTeX Companion}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1994}_{1
```

在这种情况下,整个thebibliography环境的内容能通过aux文件有效传递。数据首先从bbl文件中读取出来,写入到aux中,然后再从aux读出保存到内存中。只有读入bbl文件,参考文献表才能生成。而 Biblatex 包将被迫通过aux文件回收所有的数据。这意味着处理过度且多余,因为不管怎么样数据都必须保存在内存中。

这种传统的处理过程都基于一个假设,即条目的完整数据只是参考文献表需要而所有的标注都使用短标签。这对于有内存限制的情况是非常有效的,但也意味着很难扩展。这就是 Biblatex 采取另一种方式的原因。首先,文档结构略有变化。取消在文档内使用\bibliography命令,数据库文件由导言区的\addbibresource命令指定,完全忽略\bibliographystyle命令(所有的功能都将由包选项控制),参考文献表使用\printbibliography命令打印:

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage[...]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
```

139

```
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\printbibliography
\end{document}
```

为了简化整个流程,Biblatex 基本上以应用aux文件的方式应用bbl文件,并舍弃了\bibcite命令。于是,我们得到如下流程:

- 1. 运行latex: 第一步类似于上述的传统方式:\bibstyle 和 \bibdata以及所有引用的\citation命令写入到aux文件中(以 BibTeX 为后端程序)或者写到bcf文件中(以 Biber 为后端程序)。然后等待后端程序提供需要的数据。当以 BibTeX 为后端程序时,Biblatex 使用一个特殊 bst的文件,该文件用于实现 BibTeX 后端程序的数据接口,因此\bibstyle 命令则必须是\bibstyle{biblatex}。
- 2. 运行biber 或 bibtex: 后端程序提供了辅助文件中所有\citation命令所需的条目,这些条目的数据来自bib文件。然而,它并不在bbl文件中写出一个可打印的参考文献表,而是一个参考文献的结构化表达数据。类似于aux文件,读入该bbl文件时不打印任何东西,仅是将数据存入内存中。
- 3. 运行latex: 第二次运行,bbl文件在文档正文开始的时候处理,类似于aux文件。从这开始,所有参考文献数据都已在内存中,所以所有的引用都可以正确打印。³⁶ 引用命令不仅可以访问预定义的标签,还可以访问完整的参考文献数据。参考文献表由内存中的相同数据生成,可以根据需要进行筛选和划分。

我们再次考虑上面给出的条目样例:

使用 Biblatex 及 Biber 后端程序,这一条目实际上以如下格式输出:

```
\entry{companion}{book}{}
\labelname{author}{3}{}{%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Goossens}{G.}{Michel}{M.}{}{}{}}}%
```

³⁶如果defernumbers 包选项打开,Biblatex 以类似于传统过程的一种算法来生成顺序制标签。这种情况下,这些数字在参考文献表打印的时候指定且需从后端程序辅助文件中回收。因此需要额外运行一次 LaTeX 以在标注中获得它们。

```
{{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Mittelbach}{M.}{Frank}{F.}{}{}{}}%
  {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Samarin}{S.}{Alexander}{A.}{}{}}%
}

\name{author}{3}{}{%
  {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Goossens}{G.}{Michel}{M.}{}{}}%
  {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Mittelbach}{M.}{Frank}{F.}{}{}{}}%
  {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Samarin}{S.}{Alexander}{A.}{}}%
}
\list{publisher}{1}{%
  {Addison-Wesley}%
}
\list{location}{1}{%
  {Reading, Mass.}%
}
\field{title}{The LaTeX Companion}
\field{year}{1994}
\endentry
```

由这一例子可见,某种程度上说结构化的数据构成了bbl文件内容³⁷。从这点上说,没有任何关于参考文献条目最终格式的决定。而参考文献表和引用标注的格式化由LaTeX宏控制,这些宏定义在参考文献和引用样式文件中。

4.2 参考文献著录样式

一个参考文献著录样式是用于控制打印参考文献表中条目的宏的集合,定义在扩展名为bbx的文件中。Biblatex 包在其结尾加载所选择的参考文献样式文件。需要注意:一些由多个标准样式文件共享的常用宏定义在biblatex.def 文件中。该文件同样在包结尾加载,但先于参考文献样式文件。

4.2.1 参考文献著录样式文件

在我们讨论参考文献著录样式的各部分之前,考虑一个典型的bbx文件总体结构,如下:

```
\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2006/03/15 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}
    {...}
    {...}
    {...}
\defbibenvironment{shorthand}
    {...}
    {...}
```

³⁷这里应该是 bbl 文件而不是原文的 bib 文件

```
{...}
\InitializeBibliographyStyle{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{article}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{book}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{inbook}{...}
...
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{shorthand}{...}
\endinput
```

参考文献著录样式文件的主要结构包含如下命令:

$\RequireBibliographyStyle{\langle style \rangle}$

该命令是可选的,用于引入一些建立在更一般的参考文献样式上的特殊样式。该命令加载样式文件style.bbx。

$\InitializeBibliographyStyle{\langle code \rangle}$

该命令在参考文献表开始之前插入任意给定的〈code〉,但在参考文献表所形成的 组内。该命令是可选的。它对于不同的参考文献驱动共享一些定义是有用的,但 不能用于参考文献组外。记住,文档中可以有多个参考文献表,如果参考文献驱 动进行了任何全局设置,应在下一个参考文献开始前重设³⁸。

$\DeclareBibliographyDriver{\langle entrytype \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}$

定义一个参考文献驱动。一个驱动'driver'是一个宏用于控制某一具体的参考文献条目(当打印参考文献表的时候)或者某一具体命名了的参考文献表(当打印多个参考文献表的时候)。〈entrytype〉与bib文件中使用的条目类型对应,以小写字母给出(见§2.1)。〈entrytype〉变量可以是一个星号。这种情况下,该驱动退化为没有具体驱动的条目类型。〈code〉是任意代码用于打印各自〈entrytype〉的参考文献条目。该命令是必须的。每个参考文献样式都应提供所用到的每类条目的驱动。

$\DeclareBibliographyAlias\{\langle alias\rangle\}\{\langle entrytype\rangle\}$

如果一个参考文献驱动用于处理多个参考文献条目类型,该命令可以用来定义某类已经定义驱动的〈entrytype〉别名。〈alias〉选项可以是一个星号,这种情况下,该驱动用于那些没有指定驱动的参考文献条目。

$\DeclareBibliographyOption[\langle datatype \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\} [\langle value \rangle] \{\langle code \rangle\}$

该命令以 $\langle key \rangle$ = $\langle value \rangle$ 格式定义额外的导言区选项。 $\langle key \rangle$ 是选项键。 $\langle code \rangle$ 是当使用该选项时执行的任意 TeX 代码。键值作为#1 传递给 $\langle code \rangle$ 。可选的 $\langle value \rangle$ 是当该选项仅有键名而无键值给出时的默认键值。这对于布尔选项非常有用。 $\langle datatype \rangle$ 是选项的数据类型 (datatype),如果缺省,那么默认为'boolean'(布尔类型),比如一个定义如下:

.

³⁸这里不是很理解

```
\DeclareBibliographyOption[boolean]{somekey}[true]{...}
```

给出'somekey' 而没有键值等价于'somekey=true'。有效的〈datatype〉值定义默认的Biber 数据模型中,比如:

 $\DeclareEntryOption[\langle datatype \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\} [\langle value \rangle] \{\langle code \rangle\}$

类似于\DeclareBibliography0ption,但用于定义§ 2.2.3节的options域中的选项,且仅基于 per-entry(条目) 进行设置。当 Biblatex 为标注命令和参考文献驱动准备数据时,执行 $\langle code \rangle$ 。

4.2.2 参考文献表环境

除了定义参考文献驱动,参考文献著录样式也要定义参考文献表环境用于控制参考文献表的输出。这些环境由命令\defbibenvironment名义。默认情况下,\printbibliography使用bibliography环境。下面是一个适用于不打印标签的参考文献表的环境定义:

```
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}

{\list
    {}
    {\setlength{\leftmargin}{\bibhang}%
    \setlength{\itemindent}{-\leftmargin}%
    \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
    \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}}

{\endlist}
{\item}
```

该定义使用 Biblatex 提供的\bibhang尺寸,应用了一个带悬挂缩进的list环境。它允许使用\bibitemsep 和 \bibparsep来实现一定程度的布局调整,Biblatex 提供的这两个尺寸就是为了该目的 (见§ 4.10.3)。作者年制 (authoryear) 和作者题名制 (authortitle) 的参考文献样式使用类似于该例的定义。

```
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}
  {\list
     {\printfield[labelnumberwidth]{labelnumber}}
     {\setlength{\labelwidth}{\labelnumberwidth}%
     \setlength{\leftmargin}{\labelwidth}%
     \setlength{\labelsep}{\biblabelsep}%
```

143

```
\addtolength{\leftmargin}{\labelsep}%
  \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
  \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}%
  \renewcommand*{\makelabel}[1]{\hss##1}}
{\endlist}
{\item}
```

一些参考文献样式在参考文献列表中打印标签。比如,设计一个顺序引用格式的参考文献样式需要在参考文献表的每个条目前面打印顺序数字,这样参考文献看起来就像一个顺序列表。在第一个例子中,\list命令的第一个参数是空的。在这个例子中,我们需要在其中插入数字,这些数字由 Biblatex 的labelnumber域中的数字提供。我们也应用 Biblatex 提供的几个尺寸和工具,详见 §§ 4.10.4 和 4.10.5。顺序制 (numeric) 参考文献样式使用如上的定义。除 labelnumber 由 labelalpha 代替和 labelnumberwidth 由 labelalphawidth 代替外,顺序字母制 (alphabetic) 的样式也是类似的。

各参考文献表以类似方式处理。\printbiblist命令默认使用以 bibliography list 命名的环境 (当使用 BibTeX 时,\printshorthands总是使用 shorthand 环境)。一个典型的例子如下,其中的尺寸和工具定义详见第 §§ 4.10.4 和 4.10.5节。

```
\defbibenvironment{shorthand}

{\list
    {\printfield[shorthandwidth]{shorthand}}

    {\setlength{\labelwidth}{\shorthandwidth}%
    \setlength{\leftmargin}{\labelwidth}%

    \setlength{\labelsep}{\biblabelsep}%

    \addtolength{\leftmargin}{\labelsep}%

    \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%

    \setlength{\parsep}{\bibitemsep}%

    \renewcommand*{\makelabel}[1]{##1\hss}}}

{\endlist}
{\item}
```

4.2.3 参考文献驱动

在我们讨论 Biblatex 包的数据接口命令前,了解一下参考文献驱动的结构是有益的。注意,虽然下面给出的例子是大为简化的,但仍具有说明价值。为可读性考虑,我们忽略了一些可能是@book条目的域,并且简化处理没有忽略的域。主要是为了说明驱动的结构。关于 BibTeX 文件的格式域与 Biblatex 包的数据类型的映射信息,见 § 2.2。

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{book}{%
  \printnames{author}%
```

144

```
\newunit\newblock
\printfield{title}%
\newunit\newblock
\printlist{publisher}%
\newunit
\printlist{location}%
\newunit
\printfield{year}%
\finentry}
```

标准的参考文献样式应用两个参考文献宏 begentry 和 finentry。

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{entrytype}{%
  \usebibmacro{begentry}
  ...
  \usebibmacro{finentry}}
```

作为默认的定义。

```
\newbibmacro*{begentry}{}
\newbibmacro*{finentry}{\finentry}
```

推荐使用这两个宏,因为方便在驱动开始或结束时使用钩子。

回到上述给出 book 条目类型的驱动,我们发现有一些缺省:即\printnames,\printlist,和\printfield命令所使用的格式命令。为了说明一个格式话指令是什么,这里给出上述驱动举例中所使用虚构指令。域的格式是直接的,域的值直接作为参数传递给格式命令,并根据需要格式化。下面的指令简单地将输入参数用一个\emph命令包裹:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{title}{\emph{#1}}
```

列表格式则要复杂一些。在将列表划分为独立的项后,Biblatex 将对列表中的每一项执行格式化命令。各项作为参数传递给格式化命令。列表中各项间的分隔符由相应的命令控制,因此我们必须在插入分隔符前要检查是否在列表中或者是列表末尾。

```
\DeclareListFormat{location}{%
  #1%
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}<\value{liststop}}
     {\addcomma\space}
     {}}</pre>
```

姓名 (name) 的格式化指令类似于抄录列表。 依赖于数据模型常量'nameparts' 的姓名有如下默认定义:

这可以通过定制或者添加更多的姓名成分来处理比如来自父系姓的问题 (见文件93-nameparts.tex)。自然的,数据源需要一个扩展的姓名格式。biblatexml (§ D) 用来处理该问题,其中有一个扩展的姓名格式,可以处理自定义的姓名成分,当使用 Biber 后端的时候 (见 Biber 文档)。

在姓名格式中,姓名成分常量声明将为每个姓名成分提供数据模型定义的宏:

```
\namepart<namepart>i
```

姓名的格式化执行对姓名列表中的每一个姓名进行处理,看下面的例子:

```
\DeclareNameFormat{author}{%
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}=1}
    {\namepartfamily%
    \ifblank{\namepartgiven}{}{\addcomma\space\namepartgiven}}
    {\ifblank{\namepartgiven}{}{\namepartgiven\space}%
    \namepartfamily}%
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}<\value{liststop}}
    {\addcomma\space}
    {}}</pre>
```

上述各格式化命令调换了第一个作者的姓名前后顺序"Last, First"),而其余姓名则是常规顺序 ("First Last")。注意: 必须要保证提供的姓名部分是姓 (last name),因此我们必须要检查实际数据中姓名的哪些成分是存在的。如果姓名的一些成分不存在,则相关的变量就为空。如同抄录列表的命令,在各独立项之间插入的分隔符也由格式化命令控制,因为我们也要检查是否处于列表中还是在其末尾,这也是第二个\ifthenelse命令做的事情。

4.2.4 特殊域

下面的列表和域用于 Biblatex 给参考文献驱动和引用命令传递数据。它们由 宏包自动定义,并不在bib文件中使用。从参考文献著录和标注样式的角度看,它 们与bib文件中的域并没有什么不同。

4.2.4.1 一般域

<datetype>dateunspecified 域(string)

如果 <datetype>date 具有一个 EDTF 5.2.2 'unspecified', 该域将被设置 为yearindecade, yearincentury, monthinyear, dayinmonth或dayinyear之一, 这些字符串指定了 unspecified 信息的粒度。这些字符串可用于日期范围的判断, 该日期范围自动为这些'unspecified'日期创建,一个样式可能选择一种特殊方式来格式化日期。参见 § 2.3.8。例如:一个条目的日期为:

```
@book{key,
  date = {19uu},
  origdate = {199u}
}
```

将在.bbl产生如下信息:

```
@book{key,
  date = {1900/1999},
  origdate = {1990/1999}
}
```

但 也 会 额 外 的 将 域dateunspecified设 置 为'yearincentury',将origdateunspecified设置为'yearindecade'。这一信息可以用来给date提供可能的信息'20th century',给origdate提供'The 1990s',这一信息无法单独从日期范围推算。因为这种自动生成的范围具有一个已知值,给出'unspecified'元信息,因此使用该范围值来进行特殊的格式化相对容易。而标准样式不做此处理,96-dates.tex给出了一些例子。

entrykey 域 (string)

bib文件中某一项的条目关键词 (entry key)。这是一个字符串,用于 Biblatex 及其后端程序确定bib文件中的某一条目。

childentrykey 域 (string)

当引用一个条目集的子条目时,Biblatex 给引用数据提供了父@set条目的数据。这意味着entrykey表示的是父条目的关键词。而子条目的关键词在childentrykey域中提供。该域仅在引用一个条目集的某一子条目时使用。

labelnamesource 域 (literal)

保存给labelname提供信息的域的域名,由\DeclareLabelname确定。

labeltitlesource 域 (literal)

保存给labeltitle提供信息的域的域名,由\DeclareLabeltitle确定。

labeldatesource 域 (literal)

保存如下之一:

- 由\DeclareLabeldate选择的日期域域名的'date'前的前缀。
- 一个域的域名。

• 一个抄录或本地化字符串。39

一般情况下保存由\DeclareLabeldate选择的日期域域名的'date'前的前缀。例如,如果 labeldate 域是eventdate,那么labeldatesource就是'event'。如果\DeclareLabeldate命令选择了date域,labeldatesource将会定义为一个空字符串作为'date'的前缀,因为 date label 名中'date'前为空。这就是说labeldatesource的内容可以用于构建对\DeclareLabeldate选择的域的指针。因为\DeclareLabeldate也可以选择抄录字符串作为备选,labeldatesource可以指向一个域或者不进行定义。记住:\DeclareLabeldate命令可以用于选择非日期域作为备选,所以labeldatesource可能包含一个域名。所以,总结起来,规则如下:

entrytype 域 (string)

条目类型 (@book, @inbook, 等), 以小写字母给出。

childentrytype 域 (string)

当引用一个条目集的子条目时,Biblatex 给引用命令提供父集条目的数据。这意味着entrytype保存父条目的类型。子条目的类型则由childentrytype域提供。该域仅在引用一个条目集的子条目时使用。

entrysetcount 域 (integer)

该域保存的整数用于指明一个集中某个集成员的位置 (起始值是 1)。该域仅对一个条目集的子条目有用。

148

³⁹literal 译为抄录

hash 域 (string)

该域非常特殊,仅在姓名格式化命令中使用。它保存一个 hash 字符串,用于唯一 的确定姓名列表中的单个姓名。该信息对于姓名列表中的所有姓名都有提供。另 外参见namehash和fullhash。

域 (string) namehash

一个 hash 字符串用于唯一确定labelname列表。这对再现检查很有用。比如,一 个将再次出现的作者和编者用一个类似'idem'的字符串代替的引用样式,可 以用\savefield命令保存namehash域,并将其用于后面\iffieldequals(见 §§ 4.6.1 和 4.6.2) 命令的比较中。namehash域通过labelname列表的截短得到,即它的结果 与maxnames和minnames选项相关。另外参见hash和fullhash。

<namelist>namehash

域 (string)

类似于namehash, 但用于'namelist'姓名列表。

fullhash 域 (string)

一个 hash 字符串用于唯一确定labelname列表。该域域namehash有两点不同:1. 产 生 hash 时忽略shortauthor和shorteditor列表。2. 该 hash 指的是完整的列表,忽 略maxnames和minnames选项。另外见hash和namehash。

<namelist>fullhash 域(string)

类似于fullhash,,但用于'namelist'姓名列表。

pageref 列表 (literal)

如果backref包选项打开,该域保存各被引用条目所在页的页码。如果文档中 有refsection环境,反向引用是针对当前参考文献节的。

sortinit 域 (literal)

该域保存用于排序的信息首字符。使用 BibTeX 时,该域也用来代 替sortinithash域。

域 (string) sortinithash

使用 Biber 时,该域保存排序字符串的第一个扩展字素集群(基本上是第一个字符) 的 Unicode 排序规则算法主要权重的 hash 值。当按照字母表顺序划分参考文献列 表时很有用,该域有内部\bibinitsep所使用。(见§3.10.3)

域 (string) clonesourcekey

该域保存复制条目源条目的关键词。复制条目常用于处理相关条目和related域。

4.2.4.2 标注 (引用) 标签中使用的域

labelalpha 域(literal)

当使用 BibTeX 为后端程序时,生成一个类似于传统 BibTeX 的alpha.bst 样式的标签。这一默认标签由抽取labelname列表的首字母加上出版年的最后两个数字构成。label域可用来重写它的非数值部分 (non-numeric portion)。如果定义了label域,Biblatex 将使用它的值加上出版年的后两个数字生成labelalpha。shorthand域也可用来重写整个标签。如果定义了该域,labelalpha就是shorthand域,而不是一个自动生成的标签。使用 Biber 时,用户可以定义用来构建字母顺序标签的模板 (见 § 4.5.5),而默认的模板域上面 bibtex 后端程序使用的格式相同。一个完整的字母顺序 ('alphabetic') 标签由以下域构成:

Biber only

extraalpha 域 (integer)

当参考文献中包含同一作者同一年出版的多个引文时,'alphabetic' 引用格式常需要一个额外的字母加入标签来区分。这种情况下extraalpha域保存一个整数可用命令 \mknumalph 转换成字母或以其他方式格式化。该域类似于在作者年 (author-year) 格式中extrayear的作用。完整的 'alphabetic' 的标签由labelalpha 加extraalpha构成。注意包选项 labelalpha要求使用labelalpha和 extraalpha域 (详见 § 3.1.2.3)。另外参见 labelalpha和 § 3.10.1的\labelalphaothers。表8总结了不同的extra*非歧义计数器和他们追踪的信息。

labelname 列表 (name)

引用中打印的姓名。该列表可以是shortauthor, author, shorteditor, editor, 或translator域的复制值,正常情况以该顺序检测。如果没有作者 (authors) 和编者 (authors),该列表时未定义的。注意该列表也与use<name>相关,见§3.1.3。引用样式打印引用中的姓名时使用这一列表。提供该列表仅为方便起见,没有附加的意义。使用 Biber 时,该域可以定制,详见§4.5.10。

Biber only

labelnumber 域 (literal)

参考文献条目的序号,用于顺序编码类的样式。如果定义了shorthand域,Biblatex不再给各条目赋予一个数值。这种情况下,labelnumber就是 shorthand 而不是一个数字。顺序编码类的样式必须使用该域的值而不是一个计数器值。注意:包选项labelnumber要求使用该域,详见§3.1.2.3。另可参见§3.1.2.1节的defernumbers选项。

labelprefix 域 (literal)

如果为了在一个 subbibliography 文献表的所有条目前都添加一个固定的字符串,设置了\newrefcontext命令的labelprefix选项,那么所有受影响的labelprefix域将提供该字符串。如果未设置前缀,相应条目的labelprefix域是未定义的。详见§ 3.7.10节\newrefcontext命令的labelprefix选项。如果定义了shorthand域,Biblatex 不会给相应条目的labelprefix域设置前缀。这种情况下labelprefix是未定义的。

labeltitle 域 (literal)

一篇文献可打印题名(或标题)。在一些环境中,一个样式可能需要在一些可能的标题域中选择一个标题。例如,标注样式打印短标题可能需要打印shorttitle域,如果它存在的话,否则将打印title域。构建labeltitle时考虑的域的列表可以自定义。详见§4.5.10。注意:labeltitle包选项要求使用extratitle域,详见§3.1.2.3。另可参见extratitle。也要注意,labeltitleyear需要包选项需要extratitleyear域,另可参见extratitleyear。

extratitle 域 (integer)

该命令有时很有用,比如在 author-title 标注样式中,用于区别标题相同的文献。当有文献具有相同的labelname和labeltitle,extratitle域保存一个整数,可以利用\mknumalph转换为一个字母或者以其它方式格式化 (或者可以仅仅作为一个标志,用于表示将一些其它域比如日期与labeltitle域合并)。当文献表中具有相同labeltitle和labelname的文献只有一篇时,该域不定义。40注意:extratitle域是labeltitle包选项所要求使用,详见§3.1.2.3。另可参见labeltitle。8总结了各种extra*计数器及其作用。

extratitleyear 域 (integer)

该命令有时很有用,比如在 author-title 标注样式中,用于区别标题相同年份相同但没有责任者的文献。当有文献具有相同的labeltitle和labelyear,extratitleyear域保存一个整数,可以利用\mknumalph转换为一个字母或者以其它方式格式化(或者可以仅仅作为一个标志,用于表示将一些其它域比如出版者与labelyear域合并)。当文献表中具有相同labeltitle和labelyear的文献只有一篇时,该域不定义。注意: bibfieldextratitle 域是labeltitleyear包选项所要求使用,详见§3.1.2.3。另可参见labeltitleyear。8总结了各种extra*计数器及其作用。

labelyear 域 (literal)

由\DeclareLabeldate(§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的年或者year域用于作者年制标签。一个完整的作者年标签由labelyear加extrayear域构成。注意labelyear和extrayear域是 labeldateparts包选项要求使用的,详见§ 3.1.2.3。另可参见extrayear。

labelendyear 域 (literal)

\DeclareLabeldate (§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的终止年,如果选择的日期是一个范围。

labelmonth 域 (datepart)

由\DeclareLabeldate(§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的月或者month域用于作者年制标签。注意labelmonth域是 labeldateparts包选项要求使用的,详见 § 3.1.2.3。

⁴⁰there is only one work with the same labeltitle by the same labelname in the bibliography?

labelendmonth 域 (datepart)

\DeclareLabeldate (§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的终止月,如果选择的日期是一个范围。

labelday 域 (datepart)

由\DeclareLabeldate(§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的日或者month域用于作者年制标签。注意 labelday域是 labeldateparts包选项要求使用的,详见 § 3.1.2.3。

labelendday 域 (datepart)

\DeclareLabeldate (§ 4.5.10) 命令选择的日期域的终止日,如果选择的日期是一个范围。

extrayear 域 (integer)

当参考文献表中包含两个或更多的具有相同作者的文献且出版年份也相同时,author-year 标注样式常需要在年后面附加一个字母以示区别。这种情况下,extrayear域保存一个整数可以利用\mknumalph转换为一个字母或者以其它方式格式化。当文献表中某作者的文献只有一篇或者所有该作者的文献的出版年不同时,该域不定义。完整的作者年标签由labelyear加extrayear域构成。注意labelyear和extrayear域是labeldateparts包选项所需要使用的,详见§ 3.1.2.3。另可参见labelyear。8总结了各种extra*计数器及其作用。

4.2.4.3 Date 的成分域 注意,可以在数据模型中定义新的日期域,这些新定义的日期域的使用方式与本节将介绍的默认的数据模型类似。

bib文件中的日期域与央视接口提供的日期域如何关联详见表 11。当对样式中像origdate这样的域进行判断时,使用如下代码:

```
\iffieldundef{origyear}{...}
```

它将告诉你相应的日期是否已定义。下面的判断:

将告诉你相应的日期和一个(完全确定的)范围是否已定义。下面的判断

```
\left\{ \int_{0}^{\infty} \left\{
```

将告诉你相应的日期和一个无终点的 (open-ended) 范围已经定义。Open-ended 范围由一个空的 endyear 成分表示 (而不是一个未定义的 endyear 成分)。更多例子详见§2.3.8节和41页的表 4。

bib File		Data Interface	
Field	Value (Example)	Field	Value (Example)
date	1988	day	undefined
		month	undefined

1988 year undefined season endday undefined ${\tt endmonth}$ undefined endyear undefined endseason undefined undefined hour minute undefined undefined second timezone undefined endhour undefined endminute undefined endsecond undefined endtimezone undefined 1997/ date day undefined ${\tt month}$ undefined year 1997 season undefined undefined endday ${\tt endmonth}$ undefined endyear empty endseason undefined hour undefined minute undefined undefined second undefined timezone undefined $\verb"endhour"$ endminute undefined endsecond undefined undefined endtimezone 31 urldate 2009-01-31 urlday urlmonth 01 2009 urlyear urlseason undefined urlendday undefined urlendmonth undefined undefined urlendyear urlendseason undefined urlhour undefined urlminute undefined urlsecond undefined urltimezone undefined urlendhour undefined urlendminute undefined urlendsecond undefined urlendtimezone undefined urldate 2009-01-31T15:34:04Z urlday 31 urlmonth 01 2009 urlyear urlseason undefined undefined urlendday urlendmonth undefined

153

urlendyear

urlhour

urlminute

urlsecond urltimezone urlendhour

urlendseason

undefined undefined

undefined

15

34

04

urlendminute undefined undefined urlendsecond undefined urlendtimezone urldate 2009-01-31T15:34:04+05:00 31 urlday urlmonth 01 urlyear 2009 undefined urlseason urlendday undefined undefined urlendmonth urlendyear undefined urlendseason undefined urlhour 15 34 urlminute urlsecond 04 +0500 urltimezone urlendhour undefined urlendminute undefined urlendsecond undefined urlendtimezone undefined 2009-01-31T15:34:04/ urldate 31 urlday 2009-01-31T16:04:34 urlmonth 1 urlyear 2009 urlseason undefined urlendday 31 urlendmonth 1 urlendyear 2009 urlendseason undefined urlhour 15 urlminute 34 urlsecond urltimezone floating urlendhour 16 urlendminute 4 urlendsecond 34 urlendtimezone floating origdate 2002-21/2002-23 origday undefined 01 origmonth 2002 origyear origseason spring origendday undefined origendmonth02 origendyear 2002 origendseason autumn orighour undefined origminute undefined origsecond undefined origtimezone undefined origendhour undefined origendminute undefined origendsecond undefined origendtimezone undefined eventdate 1995-01-31/1995-02-05 eventday 31 eventmonth 01 eventyear 1995 eventseason undefined 05 eventendday 02 ${\tt eventendmonth}$ eventendyear 1995

eventendseason	undefined
eventhour	undefined
eventminute	undefined
eventsecond	undefined
eventtimezone	undefined
eventendhour	undefined
eventendminute	undefined
eventendsecond	undefined
eventendtimezone	undefined

Table 11: 日期接口 (注意:biblatex3.7 版提供的四个可解析日期接口,分别是 date, origdate, eventdate, url-date, 在多数场合已经够用)

hour 域 (datepart)

该域保存date域的小时 (hour) 成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的小时成分。

minute 域 (datepart)

该域保存date域的分钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的分钟成分。

second 域 (datepart)

该域保存date域的秒钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的秒钟成分。

timezone 域 (datepart)

该域保存date域的时区成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的时区成分。

day 域 (datepart)

该域保存date域的日成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的日成分。

month 域 (datepart)

该域保存数据源文件中的month域或者date域的月成分,当日期是一个范围时,它 保存开始日期的月成分。

year 域 (datepart)

该域保存数据源文件中的year域或者date域的年成分,当日期是一个范围时,它 保存开始日期的年成分。

season 域 (datepart)

该域保存由EDTF 5.2.5(见 § 2.3.8) 规定的date域的季节成分,它包含一个季节本地化字符串。当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的季节成分。

endhour 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的小时成分。

endminute 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的分钟成分。

endsecond 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的秒钟成分。

endtimezone 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的时区成分。

endday 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的日成分。

endmonth 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的月成分。

endyear 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的年成分。空的(但已定义)的endyear成分表示无终点的日期范围。

endseason 域 (datepart)

如果date域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8) 规定的结束日期的季节成分。它包含一个季节本地化字符串 (见 § 4.9.2.21),空的 (但已定义)的endseason成分表示无终点的日期范围。

orighour 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的小时 (hour) 成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的小时成分。

origminute 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的分钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的分钟成分。

origsecond 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的秒钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的秒钟成分。

origtimezone 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的时区成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的时区成分。

origday 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的日成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的日成分。

origmonth 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的月成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的月成分。

origyear 域 (datepart)

该域保存origdate域的年成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的年成分。

origseason 域 (datepart)

该域保存由EDTF 5.2.5(见§ 2.3.8) 规定的origdate域的季节成分,它包含一个季节本地化字符串。当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的季节成分。

origendhour 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的小时成分。

origendminute 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的分钟成分。

origendsecond 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的秒钟成分。

origendtimezone 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的时区成分。

origendday 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的日成分。

origendmonth 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的月成分。

origendyear 域 (datepart)

如果origdate 域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的年成分。空的(但已定义)的origendyear成分表示无终点的日期范围。

origendseason 域 (datepart)

如果origdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8) 规定的结束日期的季节成分。它包含一个季节本地化字符串 (见 § 4.9.2.21),空的 (但已定义)的origendseason成分表示无终点的origdate范围。

eventhour 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的小时 (hour) 成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的小时成分。

eventminute 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的分钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的分钟成分。

eventsecond 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的秒钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的秒钟成分。

eventtimezone 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的时区成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的时区成分。

eventday 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的日成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的日成分。

eventmonth 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的月成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的月成分。

eventyear 域 (datepart)

该域保存eventdate域的年成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的年成分

eventseason 域 (datepart)

该域保存由EDTF 5.2.5(见 § 2.3.8) 规定的eventdate域的季节成分,它包含一个季节本地化字符串。当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的季节成分。

eventendhour 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的小时成分。

eventendminute 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的分钟成分。

eventendsecond 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的秒钟成分。

eventendtimezone 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的时区成分。

eventendday 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的日成分。

eventendmonth 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的月成分。

eventendyear 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate 域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的年成分。空的 (但已定义) 的eventendyear成分表示无终点的日期范围。

eventendseason 域 (datepart)

如果eventdate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8) 规定的结束日期的季节成分。它包含一个季节本地化字符串 (见 § 4.9.2.21),空的 (但已定义)的eventendseason成分表示无终点的eventdate范围。

urlhour 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的小时 (hour) 成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的小时成分。

urlminute 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的分钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的分钟成分。

urlsecond 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的秒钟成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的秒钟成分。

timezone 域 (urldatepart)

该域保存urldate域的时区成分,当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的时区成分。

urlday 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的日成分。

urlmonth 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的月成分。

urlyear 域 (datepart)

该域保存urldate域的年成分。

urlseason 域 (datepart)

该域保存由EDTF 5.2.5(见 § 2.3.8) 规定的 urldate 域的季节成分,它包含一个季节本地化字符串。当日期是一个范围时,它保存开始日期的季节成分。

urlendhour 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的小时成分

urlendminute 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的分钟成分

urlendsecond 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的秒钟成分

urlendtimezone 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的时区成分

urlendday 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的日成分

urlendmonth 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的月成分

urlendyear 域 (datepart)

如果urldate 域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存结束日期的年成分。空的(但已定义)的urlendyear成分表示无终点的日期范围。

urlendseason 域 (datepart)

如果urldate域中给出的日期是一个范围,该域保存EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8) 规定的结束日期的季节成分。它包含一个季节本地化字符串 (见 § 4.9.2.21),空的 (但已定义)的urlendseason成分表示无终点的eventdate范围。

4.3 标注样式

参考文献标注样式是诸如\cite等用于打印不同类型标注的命令集。这些样式定义在后缀为cbx的文件中。Biblatex 在包末尾加载它们。注意:一些标准标注样式的常用共享宏集放在biblatex.def 文件中。这一文件也在包末尾加载,先于选择的标注样式。它也包含由来自§3.8.5节的命令的定义。

4.3.1 标注样式文件

在讨论标注样式文件提供的各个命令前,考虑如下一个典型cbx文件的整体结构:

$\RequireCitationStyle{\langle style \rangle}$

这个命令是可选的,用于在一些更一般的样式基础上构建特殊的标注样式。它加载标注样式style.cbx。

$\InitializeCitationStyle{\langle code \rangle}$

指定初始化或重设标注样式需要的任意 $\langle code \rangle$ 。这个钩子将在包加载的时候执行一次,并且每次都使用§ 3.8.8节的\citereset命令。\citereset命令也重设本宏包的内部标注追踪器。它会影响§ 4.6.2节中列出的 cmdifciteseen, \ifentryseen, \ifciteibid, 和\ifciteidem等判断。当使用refsection环境时,标注追踪器重设当前的refsection局部环境。

\OnManualCitation{\(\lambda\)code\\}指定重设部分标注样式需要的任意\(\lambda\)code\\。这一钩子将在 § 3.8.8中的\mancite命令使用时调用。它有时特别有用,可以代替像 'ibidem' 或'op. cit.'等缩写表示的重复标注,因为当自动生成和人工产生的标注混合使用的时候这些缩写可能会有歧义。\mancite命令也会重设宏包的内部'ibidem'和'idem'追踪器,进而影响 § 4.6.2节讨论的\\ifciteibid和\\ifciteidem判断。

这是用于定义所有标注(引用)命令的核心命令。它有1个可选参数和5个必选参数。〈command〉是要定义的命令,比如\cite。如果给出可选的〈wrapper〉参数,整个标注将会作为一个参数传递给〈wrapper〉,即包围(wrapper)命令必须要取得一个必选参数。⁴¹〈precode〉是在标注开始时执行的任意代码。典型地,它将处理由prenote域提供的〈prenote〉参数。它可以可用来对〈loopcode〉所需的宏进行初始化。〈loopcode〉是每个条目关键词传递给〈command〉命令时执行的任意代码。它是打印标注标签或其它任意数据的核心代码。〈sepcode〉是每次执行〈loopcode〉完成后执行的代码。它仅在条目关键词列表传递给〈command〉时起作用。〈sepcode〉常用于插入一些分隔符,比如逗号或分号等。〈postcode〉是在标注结束时执行的代码。典型地,它将处理由postnote域提供的〈postnote〉参数。⁴²带星号的\DeclareCiteCommand命令定义了一个带星号的〈command〉。例如\DeclareCiteCommand*{cite} 命令将定义\cite*。⁴³

该命令定义'multicite' 类命令 (见§ 3.8.3)。〈command〉是要定义的 multicite 命令,比如\cites。它自动在由\DeclareCiteCommand定义的后端命令基础上构建鲁棒的命令,其中〈cite〉参数用于指定使用的后端命令名。注意后端命令的包围命令(封套)(即传递给\DeclareCiteCommand命令的〈wrapper〉参数)自动忽略。使用可选〈wrapper〉参数作为其替换。〈delimiter〉是列表中单个标注之间的分隔字符串。下面给出的例子是典型的\multicitedelim命令,取自biblatex.def中的实际定义:

⁴¹典型的包围命令是\mkbibparens和\mkbibfootnote。

^{**}²能给〈loopcode〉提供的参考文献数据是正在处理的条目的数据。此外,第一个 ('First') 条目的数据可以用于〈precode〉,最后一个 ('last') 条目的数据可以用于〈postcode〉。'First' and 'last' 指的是标注的打印顺序。如果sortcites包选项打开,这是经过排序处理后的顺序。注意: 没有任何参考文献数据可用于〈sepcode〉。

⁴³注意: 无星号的\DeclareCiteCommand命令也将定义隐式的定义一个带星号的标注命令,除非该标注命令前面已经定义。这只是用于提供备选。这种隐式方式定义的命令将等同于不带星号的命令。

 $\label{lem:decommand} $$\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{$\langle name\rangle$} [\langle position\rangle] {\langle cite\rangle$} {\langle multicite\rangle$}$$

该命令为\autocite和\autocites类命令提供定义(见§ 3.8.4)。要使定义生效需要打开§ 3.1.2.1节的autocite包选项。 $\langle name \rangle$ 是一个标识向包选项传递一个值。autocite 类命令是在\parencite和\parencites等后端命令基础上构建的。 $\langle cite \rangle$ 和 $\langle multicite \rangle$ 参数指定了使用的后端命令。 $\langle cite \rangle$ 参数用于\autocite,而 $\langle multicite \rangle$ 用于\autocites。 $\langle position \rangle$ 参数控制标注后的任何标点符号的处理。可能的值是 l, r, f。r表示标点置于标注的右侧,即它不会移动。l 表示将标点移动到标注的左侧。f 在脚注中的作用类似于 r,在其它情况下则类似于 l。该参数是可选的默认是 r。另可参见§ 4.7.5节的\DeclareAutoPunctuation命令和§ 3.1.2.1节的autopunct包选项。下面的例子取自biblatex.def 中的实际定义:

```
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{plain}{\cite}{\cites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{inline}{\parencite}{\parencites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{footnote}[l]{\footcite}{\footcites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{footnote}[f]{\smartcite}{\smartcites}
```

文档导言区提供的定义可以利用如下方式随后采用(见§3.2.2):

\ExecuteBibliographyOptions{autocite=name}

4.3.2 特殊域

下面的域用于向标注命令传递数据。它们不用于bib文件中而由宏包自动定义。从标注样式的角度看,它们与bib中的域并无区别。另可参见§4.2.4。

prenote 域 (literal)

作为〈prenote〉参数向标注命令传递。该域仅用于标注而不能用在参考文献表中。如果〈prenote〉参数缺省或为空,该域不定义。

postnote 域 (literal)

作为〈postnote〉参数向标注命令传递。该域仅用于标注而不能用在参考文献表中。如果〈postnote〉参数缺省或为空,该域不定义。

multiprenote 域 (literal)

作为〈multiprenote〉参数向 multicite 类标注命令传递。该域仅用于标注而不能用在 参考文献表中。如果〈multiprenote〉参数缺省或为空,该域不定义。

multipostnote 域 (literal)

作为〈multipostnote〉参数向 ulticite 类标注命令传递。该域仅用于标注而不能用在参考文献表中。如果〈multipostnote〉参数缺省或为空,该域不定义。

postpunct 域 (punctuation command)

作为拖尾的标点参数隐式地向标注命令传递。该域仅用于标注而不能用在参考文献表中。如果一个标注命令后面跟着的字符不在\DeclareAutoPunctuation (§ 4.7.5) 命令的定义中,该域不定义。

4.4 数据接口

数据接口是用于格式化和打印全部参考文献数据的工具。这些工具均可在著录和标注样式中使用。

4.4.1 数据命令

本节介绍 Biblatex 包的主要数据接口。这些命令处理了绝大部分工作,即实际上由它们来对列表和域提供的数据进行打印。

用于在打印 $\langle field \rangle$, $\langle list \rangle$, $\langle name \rangle$ 时给出表示不允许的警告信息 $\langle message \rangle$ 。它帮助那些需要在样式中修改域名的样式作者。注意: 不允许的项只能是未在当前工作的数据模型中定义的项, $\langle field \rangle$, $\langle list \rangle$ 或 $\langle name \rangle$ 不能出现在\DeclareDatamodelFields命令的参数中。

$\printfield[\langle format \rangle] \{\langle field \rangle\}$

该命令使用由\DeclareFieldFormat定义的格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$ 打印 $\langle field \rangle$ 。如果声明了 type-specific 的格式指令,其将优先于设置的通用格式指令。如果 $\langle field \rangle$ 未定义则不作打印。如果 $\langle format \rangle$ 缺省,\printfield将尝试域名作为格式化指令名进行格式化。例如: 要打印title域,且 $\langle format \rangle$ 未指定,它将尝试用于域格式 title。44 这种情况下,任何 type-specific(具体类型的) 格式化指令将优先于通用指令采用。如果所有的这类格式都未定义,它将返回到 default 作为最后的方式。注意:\printfield为格式化指令提供当前正在\currentfield中处理的域名。

⁴⁴换句话说, \printfield{title} 等价于\printfield[title]{title}。

\printlist[\langle format\rangle] [\langle start\rangle -\langle stop\rangle] {\langle list\rangle} 该命令对所有在\langle list\rangle 中的项进行循环处理,从项数\langle start\rangle 开始,到项数\langle stop\rangle 结束,包括\langle start\rangle 和\langle stop\rangle (所有的列表中项以1开始计数)。每一项都用由\DeclareListFormat定义的格式化指令\langle format\rangle 打印。如果声明了 type-specific 的格式指令,其将优先于设置的通用格式指令。如果\langle list\rangle 未定义则不作打印。如果\langle format\rangle 缺省\rangle\rangle \rangle printlist将尝试列表名作为格式化指令名进行格式化。这种情况下,任何 type-specific(具体类型的)格式化指令将优先于通用指令采用。如果所有的这类格式都未定义,它将返回到 default作为最后的方式。\langle start\rangle 参数默认是 1\rangle stop\rangle\rangle\rangle start\rangle 参数默认是 1\rangle stop\rangle

```
\printnames[][1-3]{...}
```

⟨start⟩和⟨stop⟩之一可以缺省,因此下面的参数都是有效的:

```
\printnames[...][-1]{...}
\printnames[...][2-]{...}
\printnames[...][1-3]{...}
```

如果你要覆盖〈maxnames〉和〈minnames〉并打印整个列表,你可以在第二个可选参数中以如下方式设置Listtotal计数器。

```
\printnames[...][-\value{listtotal}]{...}
```

当\printnames和\printlist处理一个列表时,当前状态的信息可以通过 4 个计数器获知: listtotal 计数器保存当前列表中项的总数,listcount保存当前正在处理的项的序号,liststart是传递给\printnames 或\printlist命令的 \langle start\rangle \printlist命令的 \langle start\rangle \printlistop 则是 \langle stop\rangle \printlistop 数。这些计数器用于列表的格式化指令。listtotal也可以在第二个可选参数中使用。注意,这些计数器仅在列表格式化指令中有意义在其它任何地方都无效。对于每类列表,都有一个具有相同名字的计数器保存该类列表的项的总数。例如,author计数器保存author列表中的项的总数。这些计数

器类似于listtotal,但可用于列表格式化指令之外。还有maxnames,minnames,maxitems和minitems计数器,用于保存相应的包选项的值。这些内部计数器的完整列表详见§4.10.5。注意: \printnames为格式化指令提供当前正在\currentname中处理的域名。

- \printdate 该命令打印条目定义在date或month/year域中的日期。日期格式由§ 3.1.2.1节中的date包选项控制。另外也可以通过调整域格式 date(见§ 4.10.4)来进一步格式化(比如设置字体等)。注意:该命令与标点追踪器自动交互,不必使用\printtext命令将其包围起来。
- \printdateextra 类似于\printdate,但指定的日期域是extrayear域。用于设计作者年制的参考文献样式。
- \printlabeldate 类似于\printdate,但打印的是日期域由\DeclareLabeldate决定。日期格式由 § 3.1.2.1节中的labeldate包选项控制。另外也可以通过调整域格式 labeldate (见 § 4.10.4) 来进一步格式化。
- \printlabeldateextra 类似于\printlabeldate,但指定的日期域是extrayear域,用于设计作者年制的 参考文献样式。
- \print<datetype>date 类似于\printdate,但打印的是日期域是条目的由<datetype>date域。日期格式由§3.1.2.1节中的<datetype>date包选项控制。另外也可以通过调整域格式<datetype>date(见§4.10.4)来进一步格式化。<datetype> 在默认的数据模型中有:''(用于date域), 'orig', 'event'和'url'。

\printtime 该命令打印条目定义在date域 (见 § 2.3.8) 中的时间范围,时间格式由 § 3.1.2.1节中的time包选项控制。另外也可以通过调整域格式 time (见 § 4.10.4) 来进一步格式化 (比如设置字体等)。时间格式化相关内容还包括timezeros选项,\bibtimesep和\bibtimezonesep宏 (§ 3.10.2)。注意:该命令与标点追踪器自动交互,不必使用\printtext命令将其包围起来。注意该命令打印的是独立于日期元素的时间范围。当<datepart>dateusetime选项打开时,也可以与日期范围一起打印,而不是各自分别打印。

\print<datetype>time 类似于\printtime,但打印的条目的<datetype>time域。时间格式由§3.1.2.1节中的<datetype>time包选项控制。另外也可以通过调整域格式 <datetype>time
(见§4.10.4)来进一步格式化。<datetype> 在默认的数据模型中有:"(用于date域),
'orig', 'event'和'url'。

$\indexfield[\langle format \rangle] \{\langle field \rangle\}$

该命令类似于\printfield,差别在于不是打印 $\langle field \rangle$ 而是将其添加到索引中,其格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$ 由\DeclareIndexFieldFormat命令定义。如果声明了 type-specific 的格式指令,其将优先于设置的通用格式指令。如果 $\langle field \rangle$ 域未定义,该命令不做任何操作。如果 $\langle format \rangle$ 缺省,那么\indexfield将采用与域名相同的格式名。这种情况下任何 type-specific 的格式指令都将优先于通用的格式指令。若所有的这些格式都未定义,那么将采用 default 格式作为最后的选择。

$\index list[\langle format \rangle][\langle start \rangle - \langle stop \rangle]\{\langle literal \ list \rangle\}$

该命令类似于\printlist,差别在于不是打印列表的项而是将其添加到索引中,其格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$ 由\DeclareIndexListFormat命令定义。如果声明了 type-specific 的格式指令,其将优先于设置的通用格式指令。如果 $\langle literal\ list \rangle$ 未定义,该命令不做任何操作。如果 $\langle format \rangle$ 缺省,那么\indexlist将采用与列表名相同的格式名。这种情况下任何 type-specific 的格式指令都将优先于通用的格式指令。若所有的这些格式都未定义,那么将采用 default 格式作为最后的选择。

$\indexnames[\langle format \rangle][\langle start \rangle - \langle stop \rangle]\{\langle name\ list \rangle\}$

该命令类似于\printnames,差别在于不是打印姓名列表的项而是将其添加到索引中,其格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$ 由\DeclareIndexNameFormat命令定义。如果声明了 typespecific 的格式指令,其将优先于设置的通用格式指令。如果 $\langle name\ list \rangle$ 未定义,该命令不做任何操作。如果 $\langle format \rangle$ 缺省,那么\indexnames将采用与列表名相同的格式名。这种情况下任何 type-specific 的格式指令都将优先于通用的格式指令。若所有的这些格式都未定义,那么将采用 default 格式作为最后的选择。

 $\entrydata{\langle key \rangle} {\langle code \rangle} \\ \entrydata*{\langle key \rangle} {\langle code \rangle} \\$

像\printfield之类的数据命令正常情况下应用当前正在处理的条目的数据。可以使用\entrydata在局部环境中转换应用数据。〈key〉是要局部使用条目的关键词。〈code〉是在当前局部环境执行的任意代码。这一地面将在一个编组中执行。举例见§4.11.6节。注意该命令自动转换语言,如果autolang包选项打开的话。带星号

的命令\entrydata*将复制封装条目 (the enclosing entry) 的所有域,使用域,计数器,和其它以字符串'saved'为前缀命名的资源。这在比较两个数据集是很有用。例如,在 $\langle code \rangle$ 的参数中,author域保存了条目 $\langle key \rangle$ 的作者,而封装条目的作者保存在savedauthor域中。author计数器保存了 $\langle key \rangle$ 条目的author域的姓名数量,而封装条目的作者数量由savedauthor计数器计数。

$\ensuremath{\mbox{entryset}} \langle precode \rangle \} \{ \langle postcode \rangle \}$

该命令用在处理@set条目集的参考文献驱动中。它将对由entryset域指出的集的所有成员进行循环处理,对集的各个成员执行相应的驱动。这相当于对每个集成员执行§4.6.4节的\usedriver命令。《precode》是在集的每项处理之前执行的任意代码。《postcode》是在集的每项处理之后执行的任意代码。两个参数语法上必须的,但可以留空。用法举例见§4.11.1节。

$\DeclareFieldInputHandler{\langle field \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}$

给命令用于定义从.bbl读取数据所采用的域的数据输入处理器。在 $\langle code \rangle$ 内,宏 $\backslash NewValue$ 包含了域的值。比如,要忽略出现的 $\backslash Volumes$ 域,可以作:

\DeclareFieldInputHandler{volumes}{\def\NewValue{}}

一般情况下,要删除和修改域需要使用\DeclareSourcemap(见§4.5.3节),而这一替代方法在一些情形下会很有用,例如当强调的是数据的外观而不是数据本身时,因为 $\langle code \rangle$ 可以是任意的 TeX 代码。

\DeclareListInputHandler $\{\langle list \rangle\} \{\langle code \rangle\}$

类似于\DeclareFieldInputHandler,但用于列表。在\(\lambda code\rangle\)内,宏\NewValue包含了列表的值,而\NewCount保存列表中项的序号。

\DeclareNameInputHandler $\{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle code \rangle\}$

类似于\DeclareFieldInputHandler,但用于姓名列表。在\code\内,宏\NewValue包含了姓名列表的值,而\NewCount保存列表中姓名的序号,\NewOption保存了.bbl文件传递的任意姓名所属的选项。

4.4.2 格式化指令

本节介绍用于定义 § 4.4.1节的数据命令所需的格式化指令的命令。注意: 所有标注的格式定义在biblatex_.def 文件中。

定义域格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 。该格式化指令是由 $\backslash printfield$ 命令执行的任意 $\langle code \rangle$ 。域的值作为仅有的第一个参数传递给 $\langle code \rangle$ 。正在处理的域名在 $\langle code \rangle$ 中以 $\backslash currentfield$ 表示。如果指定一种条目类型 ($\langle entrytype \rangle$),那么格式是该类型专属的。 $\langle entrytype \rangle$ 可以是一个逗号分隔 (comma-separated) 的值列表。带星

的命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定 义。

\DeclareListFormat[$\langle entrytype, ... \rangle$] { $\langle format \rangle$ } { $\langle code \rangle$ } $\DeclareListFormat*{\langle format \rangle}{\langle code \rangle}$

> 定义文本列表45的格式(format)。格式化指令是\printlist命令处理列表中每一项 时执行的任意〈code〉。当前正在处理的项作为第一个和唯一的参数传递给〈code〉。正 在处理的文本列表名在(code)中以\currentlist表示。如果指定了(entrytype),那么 格式是该类型专属的。(entrytype)参数可以是一个逗号分隔 (comma-separated) 的 值列表。注意格式化指令也会处理在列表各项间插入的标点。需要对当前项是在 列表中间或者末尾进行检测,即检查listcount是否小于或等于liststop。带星的 命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定义。

\DeclareNameFormat[$\langle entrytype, ... \rangle$]{ $\langle format \rangle$ }{ $\langle code \rangle$ } \DeclareNameFormat* $\{\langle format \rangle\} \{\langle code \rangle\}$

> 定义姓名列表的格式(format)。格式化指令是\printnames命令处理列表中每 一项时执行的任意(code)。如果指定了(entrytype),那么格式是该类型专属的。 (entrytype)参数可以是一个逗号分隔 (comma-separated) 的值列表。单个姓名的各 个组成部分由自动创建的宏表示(见下)。默认的数据模型定义了四个组成部分对 应于标准的 BibTeX 姓名成分参数。

> family 姓, BibTeX 中为'last' name 部分。当一个姓名只有一个部分组成时 (比如 'Aristotle'),这一部分将被处理为姓。

given 名。注意名在 BibTeX 中为'first' name 部分。

prefix 前缀,比如 von, van, of, da, de, del, della 等。注意前缀在 BibTeX 格式文件 中为'von'部分。

suffix 后缀,比如 Jr, Sr 等。注意后缀在 BibTeX 格式文件中为'Jr'部分。

数据模型'nameparts' 常量的值 (见 § 4.2.3) 在姓名的数据模型中为每个姓名组成部 分创建了两个宏。比如,在默认的数据模型中,姓名格式由如下宏定义:

\namepartprefix %表示前缀部分 \namepartprefixi %表示前缀首字母 \namepartfamily %表示姓 \namepartfamilyi %表示姓首字母 \namepartsuffix %表示后缀 \namepartsuffixi %表示后缀首字母 \namepartgiven %表示名 \namepartgiveni %表示名首字母

⁴⁵literal 译为文本

如果一个姓名的某些部分没有给出,相应的宏将为空,因此可以使用,比如etoolbox中\ifdefvoid这类的判断来检查姓名的各个组成部分。正在处理的姓名列表名在〈code〉中以\currentname表示。注意格式化指令也会处理在列表各项间插入的标点。需要对当前项是在列表中间或者末尾进行检测,即检查listcount是否小于或等于liststop(见§3.13.4节)。带星的命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定义。

 $\label{local-code} $$ \ \end{\code} $$$

定义域格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 。该格式化指令是由\indexfield命令执行的任意 $\langle code \rangle$ 。域的值作为仅有的第一个参数传递给 $\langle code \rangle$ 。正在处理的域名在 $\langle code \rangle$ 中以\currentfield表示。如果指定一种条目类型 ($\langle entrytype \rangle$),那么格式是该类型专属的。 $\langle entrytype \rangle$ 可以是一个逗号分隔 (comma-separated) 的值列表。该命令类似于\DeclareFieldFormat,差别在于 $\langle code \rangle$ 处理的数据不是用于打印而是用于索引。注意\indexfield将执行 $\langle code \rangle$ 本身,即 $\langle code \rangle$ 必须包含\index或类似命令。带星的命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定义。

定义文本列表格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 。该格式化指令是由\indexlist命令执行的任意 $\langle code \rangle$ 。列表中当前值作为唯一参数传递给 $\langle code \rangle$ 。正在处理的列表名在 $\langle code \rangle$ 中以\currentlist表示。如果指定一种条目类型 ($\langle entrytype \rangle$),那么格式是该类型专属的。 $\langle entrytype \rangle$ 可以是一个逗号分隔 (comma-separated) 的值列表。该命令类似于\DeclareListFormat,差别在于 $\langle code \rangle$ 处理的数据不是用于打印而是用于索引。注意\indexlist将执行 $\langle code \rangle$ 本身,即 $\langle code \rangle$ 必须包含\index或类似命令。带星的命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定义。

定义姓名列表格式〈format〉。该格式化指令是由\indexnames命令执行的任意〈code〉。列表中当前值作为唯一参数传递给〈code〉。正在处理的列表名在〈code〉中以\currentname表示。如果指定一种条目类型(〈entrytype〉),那么格式是该类型专属的。〈entrytype〉可以是一个逗号分隔(comma-separated)的值列表。该命令类似于\DeclareNameFormat,差别在于〈code〉处理的数据不是用于打印而是用于索引。注意\indexnames将执行〈code〉本身,即〈code〉必须包含\index或类似命令。带星的命令类似于不带星的命令,区别在于它还将清除所有对条目类型做的格式定义。

 $\DeclareFieldAlias[\langle entry\ type \rangle] \{\langle alias \rangle\}[\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle] \{\langle format \rangle\}$

声明〈alias〉作为域格式〈format〉的别名。如果指定一种条目类型 (〈entrytype〉),别名是该类型专属的。〈format entry type〉是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

 $\Delta[\langle entry\ type \rangle] \{\langle alias \rangle\} [\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle] \{\langle format \rangle\}$

声明 $\langle alias \rangle$ 作为文本列表格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 的别名。如果指定一种条目类型 $(\langle entrytype \rangle)$,别名是该类型专属的。 $\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle$ 是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

 $\label{lias} $$ \DeclareNameAlias[\langle entry\ type\rangle] {\langle alias\rangle}[\langle format\ entry\ type\rangle] {\langle format\rangle}$$

声明〈alias〉作为姓名列表格式〈format〉的别名。如果指定一种条目类型(〈entrytype〉),别名是该类型专属的。〈format entry type〉是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

 $\label{lias} $$ \end{Alias} [\langle entry\ type \rangle] {\langle alias \rangle} [\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle] {\langle format \rangle} $$$

声明〈alias〉作为域格式〈format〉的别名。如果指定一种条目类型 (〈entrytype〉),别名是该类型专属的。〈format entry type〉是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

 $\label{linear_loss} $$ \end{\colored} $$$ \end{\colored} $$ \end{\colored} $$$ \end{\colored} $$$ \end{\colored} $$\end{\colored} $$$ \end{\colored} $$\end{\colored} $$$ \end{\colored} $$\end{\colored} $$$\end{\colored} $$$\end{\colored} $$$\end{\colored} $$\end{\colored} $$\end{\c$

声明 $\langle alias \rangle$ 作为文本列表格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 的别名。如果指定一种条目类型 $(\langle entrytype \rangle)$,别名是该类型专属的。 $\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle$ 是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

\DeclareIndexNameAlias[$\langle entry\ type \rangle$]{ $\langle alias \rangle$ }[$\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle$]{ $\langle format \rangle$ }

声明 $\langle alias \rangle$ 作为姓名列表格式 $\langle format \rangle$ 的别名。如果指定一种条目类型 $(\langle entrytype \rangle)$,别名是该类型专属的。 $\langle format\ entry\ type \rangle$ 是后端格式的条目类型。这仅在声明某一具体条目类型的格式化指令的别名时需要。

4.5 定制

4.5.1 关联条目

关联条目功能由如下部分构成:46

- 条目中的特殊域用于建立和描述关系
- 本地化字符串作为关联数据的前缀 (可选)
- 抽取和打印关联数据的宏
- 用于本地化字符串和关联数据格式化的格式

⁴⁶这里 related data 用关联而不是相关,其它地方用到相关的应一并改过来

特殊域是related, relatedtype, relatedstring和 relatedoptions:

与当前条目某种程度关联的条目的条目关键词列表47。注意:条目关键词48的顺序 很重要。来自多个关联条目的数据是按该域中关键词的顺序打印。

The type of relationship. This serves three purposes. If the value of this field resolves relatedtype to a localisation string identifier, then the resulting localised string is printed before the data from the related entries. Secondly, if there is a macro called related: (relatedtype), this is used to format the data from the related entries. If no such macro exists, then the macro related: default is used. Lastly, if there is a format named related: (relatedtype), then it is used to format both the localised string and related entry data. If there is no related type specific format, the related format is

> If an entry contains this field, then if value of the field resolves to a localisation string identifier, the localisation key value specified is printed before data from the related entries. If the field does not specify a localisation key, its value is printed literally. If both relatedtype and relatedstring are present in an entry, relatedstring is used for the pre-data string (but related type is still used to determine the macro and format to use when printing the data).

A list of per-entry options to set on the related entry (actually on the clone of the related entry which is used as a data source—the actual related entry is not modified because it might be cited directly itself).

The related entry feature is enabled by default by the package option related from § 3.1.2.1. The related information entry data from the related entries is included via a \usebibmacro{related} call. Standard styles call this macro towards the end of each driver. Style authors should ensure the existence of (or take note of existing) localisation strings which are useful as values for the relatedtype field, such as translation of or perhaps translatedas. A plural variant can be identified with the localisation key (relatedtype)s. This key's corresponding string is printed whenever more than one entry is specified in related. Bibliography macros and formatting directives for printing entries related by \(\langle related type \rangle \) should be defined using the name related: \(\frac{relatedtype}\). The file biblatex.def contains macros and formats for some common relation types which can be used as templates. In particular, the \entrydata* command is essential in such macros in order to make the data of the related entries available. Examples of entries using this feature can be found in the Biblatex distribution examples file biblatex-examples.bib. There are some specific formatting macros for this feature which control delimiters and separators in related entry information, see § 4.10.1.

171

relatedstring

used.

relatedoptions

⁴⁷这里 separated list 用分离列表有没有更好的说法

⁴⁸这里的 key 关键词应该是引用关键词,即 bibtex 键

4.5.2 数据源集

能够定义在循环等中的使用的数据源 (datasource) 域名的集是有用的。而且,Biber 可以利用这种集来应用选项或者对某些数据源域的特定集进行操作。下面的宏允许用来定义数据源域的任意集合,这些数据源域以etoolbox列表的形式提供给 Biblatex 并通过.bcf文件中提供给 Biber。

\member

```
fieldtype=\langle fieldtype \rangle
datatype=\langle datatype \rangle
field=\langle fieldname \rangle
```

一个\member说明将域添加到集中。域可以由数据模型 $\langle fieldtype \rangle$ 和/或 $\langle datatype \rangle$ 指定 (见 § 4.5.4)。或者,域也可以通过使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 选项显式的以名字添加。一旦完成定义,集就以etoolbox列表的形式存在,命名为 \datafieldset'setname'并通过.bcf文件传递给 Biber。

下面的例子就是 Biblatex 为姓名域和标题域定义的默认集:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{setnames}{
   \member[datatype=name, fieldtype=list]
}

\DeclareDatafieldSet{settitles}{
   \member[field=title]
   \member[field=booktitle]
   \member[field=eventtitle]
   \member[field=issuetitle]
   \member[field=journaltitle]
   \member[field=maintitle]
   \member[field=maintitle]
}
```

这将定义\datafieldsetsetnames和\datafieldsetsettitles宏以etoolbox列表形式包含指定的成员数据源域的名。

4.5.3 数据动态修改

对自动生成或者你无法控制的参考文献数据源进行修改在某种程度上会是一个问题。因此,Biber 提供了对它所读取的数据进行修改的能力,这样你可以对源数据流进行修改二不必实际改变它。这种改变可以在 Biber 的配置文件 (见 Biber 文档) 定义,或者通过 Biblatex 宏进行定义,通过宏定义的方法你可以在样式中或者以全局定义的方式,将修改应用在具体的文档中。

源映射发生在数据解析过程中,因此也在诸如继承和排序等任何其它操作之前。

源映射可以在不同的层("levels")进行定义,各层以某一定义的顺序进行处理。见 Biblatex 手册,考虑这些宏:

\DeclareSourcemap命令定义的 user-层映射 →
在 Biber 配置文件定义的 user-层映射 (见 Biber 文档)→
\DeclareStyleSourcemap定义的 style-层映射 →
\DeclareDriverSourcemap定义的 driver-层映射

$\DeclareSourcemap\{\langle specification \rangle\}\$

定义源数据修改(映射)规则,可以用于执行如下任务或其任意组合:

- •将数据源条目类型映射为其它类型
- •将数据源域映射为其它其它域
- •给条目添加新域
- •从条目移除域
- •用标准的 Perl 正则表达式匹配和替换修改域的内容。
- •将上述操作限制在来自特定数据源的条目,这些特定数据源可以 在\addresource宏中定义。
- •将上述操作限制在某些条目类型。
- •将上述操作限制在某一特定的参考文献节。

〈specification〉是一个不限范围的\maps指令列表,这些指令说明了应用于某一特定数据源类型的映射规则的容器 (§ 3.7.1)。可以自由地使用空格、制表符和行末符号来整理〈specification〉内容达到视觉效果。⁴⁹ 但空行是不允许的。这一命令仅能用于导言区并且只能使用一次—后面的命令将覆盖前面的定义。

$\mbox{maps}[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle elements \rangle\}$

包含\map元素的有序集,每个\map都是应用于数据源的映射步的逻辑相关集。 *\options*包括:

-

 $^{^{49}}$ visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$

包含的\map应用的数据源的类型 (见 § 3.7.1)

```
overwrite=true, false
```

default: false

default: bibtex

具体说明一个映射规则是否允许覆盖条目中已经存在数据。如果该选项未指定, 默认是 false。简易形式overwrite等价于 overwrite=true。

```
\texttt{\mbox{map}[\langle options \rangle]}\{\langle restrictions, steps \rangle\}
```

A container for an ordered set of map \steps, optionally restricted to particular entrytypes or data sources. This is a grouping element to allow a set of mapping steps to apply only to specific entrytypes or data sources. Mapping steps must always be contained within a \map element. The $\langle options \rangle$ are:

```
overwrite=true, false
```

As the same option on the parent \maps element. This option allows an override on a per-map group basis. If this option is not specified, the default is the parent \maps element option value. The short form overwrite is equivalent to overwrite=true.

```
foreach=\langle loopval \rangle
```

Loop over all \steps in this \map, setting the special variable \$MAPLOOP to each of the comma-separated values contained in $\langle loopval \rangle$. $\langle loopval \rangle$ can either be the name of a datafield set defined with \DeclareDatafieldSet (see § 4.5.2), a datasource field which is fetched and parsed as a comma-separated values list or an explicit comma-separated values list. $\langle loopval \rangle$ is determined in this order. This allows the user to repeat a group of \steps for each value $\langle loopval \rangle$. Using regexp maps, it is possible to create a CSV field for use with this functionality. The special variable \$MAPUNIQ may also be used the \steps to generate a random unique string. This can be useful when creating keys for new entries. An example:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite, foreach={author,editor, translator}]{
     \step[fieldsource=\regexp{$MAPLOOP}, match={Smith}, replace={Jones}
     \leftarrow }]
    }
}
```

```
refsection=\langle integer\rangle
```

Only apply the contained \step commands to entries in the reference section with number $\langle refsection \rangle$.

174

```
\percent{perdatasource} \datasource \{ \datasource \} \}
```

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries from the named $\langle datasource \rangle$. The $\langle datasource \rangle$ name should be exactly as given in a \addresource macro defining a data source for the document. Multiple \perdatasource restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

```
\pertype{\langle entrytype \rangle}
```

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries of the named $\langle entrytype \rangle$. Multiple \pertype restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

```
\permsymbol{pernottype}{\langle entrytype \rangle}
```

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries not of the named $\langle entrytype \rangle$. Multiple \pernottype restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

```
\left[\left\langle options\right\rangle \right]
```

A mapping step. Each step is applied sequentially to every relevant entry where 'relevant' means those entries which correspond to the data source type, entrytype and data source name restrictions mentioned above. Each step is applied to the entry as it appears after the application of all previous steps. The mapping performed by the step is determined by the following $\langle option \rangle$ s:

```
typesource=\langle entrytype \rangle
typetarget=\langle entrytype \rangle
fieldsource=\langle entryfield\rangle
notfield=\langle entryfield\rangle
fieldtarget=\langle entryfield\rangle
match=\langle regexp \rangle
notmatch = \langle regexp \rangle
replace=\langle regexp\rangle
fieldset=\langle entryfield\rangle
fieldvalue=(string)
entryclone=\langle clonekey \rangle
entrynew=\langle entrynewkey\rangle
entrynewtype=\langle string \rangle
entrytarget=(string)
entrynull=true, false
append=true, false
final=true, false
```

default: false

default: false

default: false

```
null=true, false default: false
origfield=true, false default: false
origfieldval=true, false default: false
origentrytype=true, false default: false
```

For all boolean \step options, the short form option is equivalent to option=true. The following rules for a mapping step apply:

- •If entrynew is set, a new entry is created with the entry key entrynewkey and the entry type given in the option entrynewtype. This entry is only in-scope during the processing of the current entry and can be referenced by entrytarget. In entrynewkey, you may use standard Perl regular expression backreferences to captures from a previous match step.
- •When a fieldset step has entrytarget set to the entrykey of an entry created by entrynew, the target for the field set will be the entrytarget entry rather than the entry being currently processed. This allows users to create new entries and set fields in them.
- •If entrynull is set, processing of the \map immediately terminates and the current entry is not created. It is as if it did not exist in the datasource. Obviously, you should select the entries which you want to apply this to using prior mapping steps.
- •If entryclone is set, a clone of the entry is created with an entry key clonekey. Obviously this may cause labelling problems in author/year styles etc. and should be used with care. The cloned entry is in-scope during the processing of the current entry and can be modified by passing its key as the value to entrytarget. In clonekey, you may use standard Perl regular expression backreferences to captures from a previous match step.
- •Change the typesource $\langle entrytype \rangle$ to the typetarget $\langle entrytype \rangle$, if defined. If final is true then if the $\langle entrytype \rangle$ of the entry is not typesource, processing of the parent \map immediately terminates.
- •Change the fieldsource $\langle entry field \rangle$ to fieldtarget, if defined. If final is true then if there is no fieldsource $\langle entry field \rangle$ in the entry, processing of the parent \map immediately terminates.
- •If notfield is used then only apply the step if the $\langle entry field \rangle$ does not exist.
- •If match is defined but replace is not, only apply the step if the fieldsource $\langle entry field \rangle$ matches the match regular expression (logic is reversed if you use notmatch instead)⁵⁰. You may use capture parenthesis as usual and refer to these (\$1...\$9) in later fieldvalue specifications. This allows you to pull out parts of some fields and put these parts in other fields.

⁵⁰Regular expressions are full Perl 5.16 regular expressions. This means you may need to deal with special characters, see examples.

- Perform a regular expression match and replace on the value of the fieldsource \(\langle entry field \rangle \) if match and replace are defined.
- •If fieldset is defined, then its value is $\langle entryfield \rangle$ which will be set to a value specified by further options. If overwrite is false for this step and the field to set already exists then the map step is ignored. If final is also true for this step, then processing of the parent map stops at this point. If append is true, then the value to set is appended to the current value of $\langle entryfield \rangle$. The value to set is specified by a mandatory one and only one of the following options:
 - \circ fieldvalue The fieldset $\langle entryfield \rangle$ is set to the fieldvalue $\langle string \rangle$
 - \circ null The fieldset $\langle \textit{entryfield} \rangle$ is ignored, as if it did not exist in the datasource
 - o origentrytype The fieldset $\langle entryfield \rangle$ is set to the most recently mentioned typesource $\langle entrytype \rangle$ name
 - \circ origfield The fieldset $\langle entry field \rangle$ is set to the most recently mentioned fieldsource $\langle entry field \rangle$ name
 - \circ origfieldval The fieldset $\langle entry field \rangle$ is set to the most recently mentioned fieldsource value

With BibTeX datasources, you may specify the pseudo-field entrykey for fieldsource which is the citation key of the entry. With biblatexml the entrykey is a normal attribute and can be reference like any other attribute. Naturally, this 'field' cannot be changed (used as fieldset, fieldtarget or changed using replace).

\DeclareStyleSourcemap{\langle specification \rangle}

This command sets the source mappings used by a style. Such mappings are conceptually separate from user mappings defined with \DeclareSourcemap and are applied directly after user maps. The syntax is identical to \DeclareSourcemap. This command is provided for style authors so that any maps defined for the style do not interfere with user maps or the default driver maps defined with \DeclareDriverSourcemap. This command is for use in style files and can be used multiple times, the maps being run in order of definition.

$\DeclareDriverSourcemap[\langle datatype=driver \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

This command sets the driver default source mappings for the specified $\langle driver \rangle$. Such mappings are conceptually separate from user mappings defined with \DeclareSourcemap and style mapping defined with \DeclareStyleSourcemap. They consist of mappings which are part of the driver setup. Users should not normally need to change these. Driver default mapping are applied after user mappings (\DeclareSourcemap) and style mappings (\DeclareStyleSourcemap). These defaults are described in Appendix § A. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is identical to that for \DeclareSourcemap but without the \maps elements: the $\langle specification \rangle$ is just a list

of \map elements since each \DeclareDriverSourcemap only applies to one datatype driver. See the default definitions in Appendix § A for examples.

Here are some data source mapping examples:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \perdatasource{example1.bib}
     \perdatasource{example2.bib}
     \step[fieldset=keywords, fieldvalue={keyw1, keyw2}]
     \step[fieldsource=entrykey]
     \step[fieldset=note, origfieldval]
    }
}
```

This would add a keywords field with value 'keyw1, keyw2' and set the note field to the entry key to all entries which are found in either the examples1.bib or examples2.bib files.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \step[fieldsource=title]
     \step[fieldset=note, origfieldval]
     }
}
```

Copy the title field to the note field unless the note field already exists.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \step[typesource=chat, typetarget=customa, final]
     \step[fieldset=type, origentrytype]
     }
}
```

Any chat entrytypes would become customa entrytypes and would automatically have a type field set to 'chat' unless the type field already exists in the entry (because overwrite is false by default). This mapping applies only to entries of type @chat since the first step has final set and so if the typesource does not match the entry entrytype, processing of this \map immediately terminates.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \perdatasource{examples.bib}
     \pertype{article}
     \pertype{book}
     \step[fieldset=abstract, null]
     \step[fieldset=note, fieldvalue={Auto-created this field}]
    }
}
```

Any entries of entrytype @article or @book from the examples.bib datasource would have their abstract fields removed and a note field added with value 'Auto-created this field'.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \step[fieldset=abstract, null]
     \step[fieldsource=conductor, fieldtarget=namea]
     \step[fieldsource=gps, fieldtarget=usera]
    }
}
```

This removes abstract fields from any entry, changes conductor fields to namea fields and changes gps fields to usera fields.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=pubmedid, fieldtarget=eprint, final]
    \step[fieldset=eprinttype, origfield]
    \step[fieldset=userd, fieldvalue={Some string of things}]
  }
}
```

179

Applies only to entries with pubmed fields and maps pubmedid fields to eprint fields, sets the eprinttype field to 'pubmedid' and also sets the userd field to the string 'Some string of things'.

Here, the contents of the series field have leading numbers stripped and the remainder of the contents lowercased. Since regular expressions usually contain all sort of special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

Here, if for an entry, the maintitle field matches a particular regular expression, we set a special keyword so we can, for example, make a references section just for certain items.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \step[fieldsource=lista, match=\regexp{regexp}, final]
     \step[fieldset=lista, null]
    }
}
```

180

If an entry has a lista field which matches regular expression 'regexp', then it is removed.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite=false]{
      \step[fieldsource=author]
      \step[fieldset=editor, origfieldval, final]
      \step[fieldsource=editor, match=\regexp{\A(.+?)\s+and.*}, replace
      \leftarrow ={$1}]
    }
}
```

For any entry with an author field, try to set editor to the same as author. If this fails because editor already exists, stop, otherwise truncate editor to just the first name in the name list.

Here, we use multiple match/replace for the same field to regularise some inconstant name variants. Bear in mind that \step processing within a map element is sequential and so the changes from a previous \steps are already committed. Note that we don't need the \regexp macro to protect the regular expressions in this example as they contain no characters which need special escaping. Please note that due to the difficulty of protecting regular expressions in ETeX, there should be no literal spaces in the argument to \regexp. Please use escape code equivalents if spaces are needed. For example, this example, if using \regexp, should be:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
```

Here, we have used the hexadecimal escape sequence '\x20' in place of literal spaces in the replacement strings.

Only applies to entries with an author field matching 'Doe,'. First the author field is copied to both the shortauthor and sortname fields, overwriting them if they already exist. Then, these two new fields are modified to canonicalise a particular name, which presumably has some variants in the data source.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite]{
     \step[fieldsource=verba, final]
     \step[fieldset=verbb, fieldvalue=/, append]
     \step[fieldset=verbb, origfieldval, append]
     \step[fieldsource=verbb, final]
     \step[fieldset=verbc, fieldvalue=/, append]
     \step[fieldset=verbc, origfieldval, append]
```

```
}
}
}
```

This example demonstrates the sequential nature of the step processing and the append option. If an entry has a verba field then first, a forward slash is appended to the verbb field. Then, the contents of verba are appended to the verbb field. A slash is then appended to the verbc field and the contents of verbb are appended to the verbc field.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite]{
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={http://scholar.google.com/
    → scholar?q="}]
      \step[fieldsource=title]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={"+author:}, append]
      \step[fieldsource=author, match=\regexp{A([^,]+)\s*,}]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={$1}, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={&as ylo=}, append]
      \step[fieldsource=year]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={&as_yhi=}, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
    }
  }
}
```

This example assumes you have created a field called autourl using the datamodel macros from § 4.5.4 in order to hold, for example, a Google Scholar query URL autocreated from elements of the entry. The example progressively extracts information from the entry, constructing the URL as it goes. It demonstrates that it is possible to refer to parenthetical matches from the most recent match in any following fieldvalue which allows extracting the family name from the author, assuming a 'family, given' format. The resulting field could then be used as a hyperlink from, for example, the title of the work in the bibliography.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=title, match={A Title}, final]
    \step[entrynull]
}
```

```
}
}
```

Any entry with a title field matching 'A Title' will be completely ignored.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
   \map{
     \pernottype{book}
     \pernottype{article}
     \step[entrynull]
     }
}
```

Any entry which is not a @book or @article will be ignored.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
     \perdatasource{biblatex-examples.bib}
     \step[entryclone={rel-}]
     }
}
```

Here, a clone of an entry from the specified data source will be created. The entry key of the clone will be the same as the original but prefixed by the value of the entryclone parameter. The cloned entry would still need to be cited in the document using its new entry key. This type of mapping step should be used with care as it may produce labelling problems in authoryear styles which use, for example, extrayear. One use case is for numeric styles which contain multiple bibliographies containing the same entry. In this case, you may need different bibliography number labeld for the same entry and this is very tricky when there is only one entry which needs different labels. Creating clones with different entry keys solves this problem.

biblatexml datasources are more structured than BibTeX since they are XML. Sourcemapping is possible with biblatexml too but the specifications of source and target fields etc. also support XPath 1.0 paths in order to be able to work with the structured data. Fields can be specified as per the BibTeX examples above and these are converted into XPath 1.0 queries internally as necessary. For example:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=biblatexml]{
```

```
\map{
 \step[fieldsource=\regexp{./bltx:names[@type='author']/bltx:name[2]/
  → bltx:namepart[@type='family']},
    match=\regexp{\ASmith},
    replace={Jones}]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=editor, fieldtarget=translator]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=\regexp{./bltx:names[@type='editor']},
          fieldtarget=\regexp{./bltx:names[@type='translator']}]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldset=\regexp{./bltx:names[@type='author']/bltx:name[2]/
  \hookrightarrow @useprefix},
          fieldvalue={false}]
  }
}
```

These maps, respectively,

- · Replace the family name 'Smith' of the second author name with 'Jones'
- Move the editor to translator
- Move the editor to translator but with explicit XPaths
- Set the per-namelist useprefix option on the author name list to 'false'

4.5.4 数据模型规范

Biblatex 使用的数据模型包括 4 个主要元素:

- · Specification of constant strings and lists of strings
- Specification of valid Entrytypes
- Specification of valid Fields along with their type, datatype and any special flags
- Specification of which Fields are valid in which Entrytypes
- Specification of constraints which can be used to validate data against the data model

The default data model is defined in the core Biblatex file blx-dm.def using the macros described in this section. The default data model is described in detail in § 2. The data model is used internally by Biblatex and also by the backend. In practice, changing the data model means that you can define the entrytypes and fields for your datasources and validate your data against the data model. Naturally, this is not much use unless your style supports any new entrytypes or fields and it raises issues of portability between styles (although this can be mitigated by using the dynamic data modification functionality described in § 4.5.3).

Validation against the data model means that after mapping your data sources into the data model, Biber (using its --validate_datamodel option) can check:

- Whether all entrytypes are valid entrytypes
- Whether all fields are valid fields for their entrytype
- Whether the fields obey various constraints on their format which you specify

Redefining the data model can be done in several places. Style authors can create a .dbx file which contains the data model macros required and this will be loaded automatically when using the Biblatex package style option by looking for a file named after the style with a .dbx extension (just like the .cbx and .bbx files for a style). If the style option is not used but rather the citestyle and bibstyle options, then the package will try to load .dbx files called <citestyle>.dbx and <bibstyle>.dbx. Alternatively, the name of the data model file can be different from any of the style option names by specifying the name (without .dbx extension) to the package datamodel option. After loading the style data model file, Biblatex then loads, if present, a users biblatex-dm.cfg which should be put somewhere Biblatex can find it, just like the main configuration file biblatex.cfg. To summarise, the data model is determined by adding to the data model from each of these locations, in order:

```
\begin{tabular}{ll} blx-dm.def $\rightarrow$ \\ &<datamodel option>.dbx $\rightarrow$ \\ &<style option>.dbx $\rightarrow$ \\ &<citestyle option>.dbx and <math><bibstyle option>.dbx \rightarrow biblatex-dm.cfg
```

It is not possible to add to a loaded data model by using the macros below in your preamble as the preamble is read after Biblatex has defined critical internal macros based on the data model. If any data model macro is used in a document, it will be ignored and a warning will be generated. The data model is defined using the following macros:

```
\DeclareDatamodelConstant[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle constantdef \rangle\}
```

Declares the $\langle name \rangle$ as a datamodel constant with definition $\langle constantdef \rangle$. Such constants are typically used internally by Biber.

```
type=string, list
```

A constant can be a simple string (default if the $\langle type \rangle$ option is omitted) or a commaseparated list of strings.

```
\DeclareDatamodelEntrytypes[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle entrytypes \rangle\}
```

Declares the comma-separated list of $\langle entrytypes \rangle$ to be valid entrytypes in the data model. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

```
skipout=true, false
```

default: false

default: string

This entrytype is not output to the .bbl. Typically used for special entrytypes which are processed and consumed by the backend such as @xdata.

```
\DeclareDatamodelFields[\langle options \rangle] \{ \langle fields \rangle \}
```

Declares the comma-separated list of $\langle fields \rangle$ to be valid fields in the data model with associated comma-separated $\langle options \rangle$. The $\langle type \rangle$ and $\langle datatype \rangle$ options are mandatory. All valid $\langle options \rangle$ are:

```
type = \langle field \ type \rangle
```

Set the type of the field as described in § 2.2.1, typically 'field' or 'list'.

```
format=⟨field format⟩
```

Any special format of the field. Normally unspecified but can take the value 'xsv' which tells Biber that this field has a separated values format. The exact separator can be controlled with the Biber option xsvsep and defaults to the expected comma surrounded by optional whitespace.

```
datatype=\langle field datatype\rangle
```

Set the datatype of the field as described in § 2.2.1. For example, 'name' or 'literal'.

```
nullok=true, false default: false
```

The field is allowed to be defined but empty.

```
skipout=true, false default: false
```

The field is not output to the .bbl and is therefore not present during Biblatex style processing. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

```
label=true, false default: false
```

The field can be used as a label in a bibliography or bibliography list. Specifying this causes Biblatex to create several helper macros for the field so that there are some internal lengths and headings etc. defined.

```
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[\langle entrytypes\rangle] \{\langle fields\rangle\}
```

Declares that the comma-separated list of $\langle fields \rangle$ is valid for the comma-separated list of $\langle entrytypes \rangle$. If $\langle entrytypes \rangle$ is not given, the fields are valid for all entrytypes. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

$\DeclareDatamodelConstraints[\langle entrytypes \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

If a comma-separated list of $\langle entrytypes \rangle$ is given, the constraints apply only to those entrytypes. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of $\backslash constraint$ directives which specify a constraint. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible.

 $\constraint[\langle type=constrainttype \rangle] \{\langle elements \rangle\}$

Specifies a constraint of type *(constrainttype)*. Valid constraint types are:

type=data, mandatory, conditional

Constraints of type 'data' put restrictions on the value of a field. Constraints of type 'mandatory' specify which fields or combinations of fields an entrytype should have. Constraints of type 'conditional' allow more sophisticated conditional and quantified field constraints.

datatype=integer, isbn, issn, ismn, date, pattern

For constraints of type $\langle data \rangle$, constrain field values to be the given datatype.

 $rangemin=\langle num \rangle$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'data' and $\langle datatype \rangle$ 'integer', constrain field values to be at least $\langle num \rangle$.

 $rangemax = \langle num \rangle$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'data' and $\langle datatype \rangle$ 'integer', constrain field values to be at most $\langle num \rangle$.

 $pattern=\langle patt \rangle$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'data' and $\langle datatype \rangle$ 'pattern', constrain field values to match regular expression pattern $\langle patt \rangle$. It is best to wrap any regular expression in the macro \regexp, see § 4.5.3.

A \constraint macro may contain any of the following:

$\constraintfieldsor{\langle fields \rangle}$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'mandatory', specifies that an entry must contain a boolean OR of the \constraintfields.

$\constraintfieldsxor{\langle fields \rangle}$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'mandatory', specifies that an entry must contain a boolean XOR of the \constraintfields.

$\arrange \arrange \$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'conditional', specifies a quantified set of \constraintfields which must be satisfied before the \consequent of the constraint is checked. $\langle quantspec \rangle$ should have one of the following values:

```
quantifier=all, one, none
```

Specifies how many of the \constrainfield's inside the \antecedent have to be present to satisfy the antecedent of the conditional constraint.

```
\consequent[\langle quantifier=quantspec \rangle] \{\langle fields \rangle\}
```

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'conditional', specifies a quantified set of \constraintfields which must be satisfied if the preceding \antecedent of the constraint was satisfied. $\langle quantspec \rangle$ should have one of the following values:

```
quantifier=all, one, none
```

Specifies how many of the \constraintfield's inside the \consequent have to be present to satisfy the consequent of the conditional constraint.

$\constraintfield{\langle field \rangle}$

For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'data', the constraint applies to this $\langle field \rangle$. For constraints of $\langle type \rangle$ 'mandatory', the entry must contain this $\langle field \rangle$.

The data model declaration macros may be used multiple times as they append to the previous definitions. In order to replace, change or remove existing definitions (such as the default model which is loaded with Biblatex), you should reset (clear) the current definition and then set what you want using the following macros. Typically, these macros will be the first things in any biblatex-dm.cfg file:

\ResetDatamodelEntrytypes

Clear all data model entrytype information.

\ResetDatamodelFields

Clear all data model field information.

\ResetDatamodelEntryfields

Clear all data model fields for entrytypes information.

\ResetDatamodelConstraints

Clear all data model fields Constraints information.

Here is an example of a simple data model. Refer to the core Biblatex file blx-dm.def for the default data model specification.

```
\ResetDatamodelEntrytypes
\ResetDatamodelFields
\ResetDatamodelEntryfields
\ResetDatamodelConstraints
\DeclareDatamodelEntrytypes{entrytype1, entrytype2}
\DeclareDatamodelFields[type=field, datatype=literal]{field1,field2,
    → field3,field4}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields{field1}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[entrytype1]{field2,field3}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[entrytype2]{field2,field3,field4}
\DeclareDatamodelConstraints[entrytype1]{
  \constraint[type=data, datatype=integer, rangemin=3, rangemax=10]{
    \constraintfield{field1}
  }
  \constraint[type=mandatory]{
    \constraintfield{field1}
    \constraintfieldsxor{
      \constraintfield{field2}
      \constraintfield{field3}
    }
  }
\DeclareDatamodelConstraints{
  \constraint[type=conditional]{
    \antecedent[quantifier=none]{
      \constraintfield{field2}
    }
    \consequent[quantifier=all]{
      \constraintfield{field3}
      \constraintfield{field4}
    }
  }
}
```

This model specifies:

- Clear the default data model completely
- Two valid entry types @entrytype1 and @entrytype2

- · Four valid literal field fields
- field1 is valid for all entrytypes
- field2 and field3 are valid for entrytype1
- field2, field3 and field4 are valid for @entrytype2
- For @entrytype1:
 - field1 must be an integer between 3 and 10
 - field1 must be present
 - One and only one of field2 or field3 must be present
- For any entrytype, if field2 is not present, field3 and field4 must be present

4.5.5 标签

字母顺序制样式使用一个标签来区分参考文献条目。这个标签由条目的内容使用一个描述怎么构建标签的模板构建。该模板可以全局自定义或者分条目类型定义。如何抽取姓名域的部分作为标签使用一个独立的模板,因为姓名域是相当复杂的域。标签的自定义需要用 Biber 后端程序而不能用其它后端程序。

$\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

Defines the alphabetic label template for the given entrytypes. If no entrytypes are specified in the first argument, then the global label template is defined. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \labelelement directives which specify the elements used to build the label. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$\label{elements} \$

Specifies the elements used to build the label. The *(elements)* are an undelimited list of \field or \literal commands which are evaluated in the order in which they are given. The first \field or \literal which expands to a non-empty string is used as the \labelelement expansion and the next \labelelement, if any, is then processed.

$\left| \left(\left\langle options \right\rangle \right] \left(\left\langle field \right\rangle \right) \right|$

If $\langle field \rangle$ is non-empty, use it as the current label \labelelement, subject to the options below. Useful values for $\langle field \rangle$ are typically the name list type fields, date fields, and title fields. You may also use the 'citekey' pseudo-field to specify the citation key as part of the label. Name list fields are treated specially and when a name list field is specified, the template defined with \DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate is used to extract parts from the name which then returns the string that the \field option uses.

final=true, false default: false

This option marks a \field directive as the final one in the $\langle specification \rangle$. If the $\langle field \rangle$ is non-empty, then this field is used for the label and the remainder of the $\langle specification \rangle$ will be ignored. The short form final is equivalent to final=true.

lowercase=true, false default: false

Forces the label part derived from the field to lowercase. By default, the case is taken from the field source and not modified.

 $strwidth=\langle integer \rangle$ default: 1

The number of characters of the $\langle field \rangle$ to use. This setting may be overridden by an individual name part when extracting characters from a name. See \DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate below.

strside=left, right default: left

The side of the string from which to take the strwidth number of characters. This setting may be overridden by an individual name part when extracting characters from a name. See \DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate below.

padside=left, right
default: right

Side to pad the label part when using the padchar option. Only for use with fixed-width label strings (strwidth).

padchar=\langle character\rangle

If present, pads the label part on the padside side with the specified character to the length of strwidth. Only for use with fixed-width label strings (strwidth).

uppercase=true, false default: false

Forces the label part derived from the field to uppercase. By default, the case is taken from the field source and not modified.

varwidth=true, false default: false

Use a variable width, left-side substring of characters from the string returned for $\langle field \rangle$. The length of the string is determined by the minimum length needed to disambiguate the substring from all other $\langle field \rangle$ elements in the same position in the label. For name list fields, this means that each name substring is disambiguated from all other name substrings which occur in the same position in the name list (see examples below). This option overrides strwidth if both are used. The short form varwidth is equivalent to varwidth=true. For name list fields, the \nameparts with the pre option set are prepended to the string returned from this disambiguation.

varwidthnorm=true, false default: false

As varwidth but will force the disambiguated substrings for the $\langle field \rangle$ to be the same length as the longest disambiguated substring. This can be used to regularise the format of the labels if desired. This option overrides strwidth if both are used. The short form varwidthnorm is equivalent to varwidthnorm=true.

Alternative method of automatic label disambiguation where the field as a whole is disambiguated from all other fields in the same label position. For non-name list fields, this is equivalent to varwidth. For name list fields, names in a name list are not disambiguated from other names in the same position in their name lists but instead the entire name list is disambiguated as a whole from other name lists (see examples below). This option overrides strwidth if both are used. The short form varwidthlist is equivalent to varwidthlist=true. For name list fields, the \nameparts with the pre option set are prepended to the string returned from this disambiguation.

```
strwidthmax=\langle integer\rangle
```

When using varwidth, this option sets a limit (in number of characters) on the length of variable width substrings. This option can be used to regularise the label.

```
strfixedcount = \langle integer \rangle default: 1
```

When using varwidthnorm, there must be at least strfixedcount disambiguated substrings with the same, maximal length to trigger the forcing of all disambiguated substrings to this same maximal length.

```
ifnames = \langle range \rangle
```

Only use this \field specification if it is a name list field with a number of names matching the ifnames range value. This allows a \labelelement to be conditionalised on name length (see below). The range can specified as in the following examples:

```
names = \langle range \rangle
```

By default, for name list fields, the names used range from the first name to the maxalphanames/minalphanames truncation. This option can be used to override this with an explicit range of names to consider. The plus '+' sign is a special end of range marker denoting the truncation point of max/minalphanames. The range separator can be any number of characters with the Unicode Dash property. For example:

```
name=3 -> Use first 3 names in the name list

name={2-3} -> Use second and thirds names only

name={-3} -> Same as 1-3

name={2-} -> Use all names starting with the second name (ignoring max/

→ minalphanames truncation)

name={2-+} -> Use all names starting with the second name (respecting max

→ /minalphanames truncation)
```

 $namessep=\langle string \rangle$ default: empty

An arbitrary string separator to put between names in a namelist.

```
noalphaothers=true, false
```

default: false

By default, \labelalphaothers is appended to label parts derived from name lists if there are more names in the list than are shown in the label part. This option can be used to disable the default behaviour.

```
\left( characters \right)
```

Insert the literal $\langle characters \rangle$ into the label at this point.

When a name list \field is specified, the method of extracting the string is specified by a separate template specified by the following command:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}
```

Specifies the template to use to extract a label string from a name list when a \field specification in \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate contains a name list. The template can be specified per-entrytype.

```
\langle namepart[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle namepart \rangle\}
```

 $\langle namepart \rangle$ is one of the datamodel nameparts defined with the \DeclareDatamodelConstant command (see § 4.2.3). The options are:

```
use=true, false default: false
```

Only use the $\langle namepart \rangle$ in constructing the label information if there is a corresponding option use 'namepart' and that option is true.

```
pre=true, false default: false
```

When constructing label strings from names, the \namepart without a pre option will be used to construct label string, passing through disambiguation, substring etc. operations as specified by the \field options in \DeclareLabelalpaTemplate. Then the \namepart options with the pre option set will be prepended to the result, (in the order given, if there are more than one such \nameparts). This allows to unconditionally prepend certain namepart information to name label strings, like name prefices. Note that the uppercase and lowercase options of \field in \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate are applied to the entire label returned from \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate, both pre parts and non pre.

```
compound=true, false default: false
```

For static (non-varwidth) disambiguation in \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate, nameparts separated by whitespace or hyphens (compound names) as separate names for label generation. This means that when forming a label out of, for example the surname 'Ballam Forsyth' with a 1 character, left-side substring, this name would give 'BF' with compound=true and 'B' with compound=false. The short form compound is equivalent to compound=true.

```
strwidth=\langle integer \rangle default: 1
```

The number of characters of the $\langle namepart \rangle$ to use.

```
strside=left, right default: left
```

The side of the string from which to take the strwidth number of characters.

Note that the templates for labels can be defined per-type and you should be aware of this when using the automatically disambiguated label functionality. Disambiguation is not per-type as this might lead to ambiguity due to different label formats for different types being isolated from each others disambiguation process. Normally, you will want to use very different label formats for different types to make the type obvious by the label.

Here are some examples. The default global Biblatex alphabetic label template is defined below. Firstly, shorthand has final=true and so if there is a shorthand field, it is used as the label and nothing more of the template is considered. Next, the label field is used as the first label element if it exists. Otherwise, if there is only one name (ifnames=1) in the labelname list, then three characters from the left side of the family name in the labelname are used as the first label element. If the labelname has more than one name in it, one character from the left side of each family name is used as the first label element. The second label element consists of 2 characters from the right side of the year field.

The default template for constructing labels from names is also shown. This prepends the first character from the left side of any prefix (if the useprefix option is true) to a label extracted from the family name (according to the options on the calling \field option from \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate), allowing for compound family names.

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \field[final]{shorthand}
  \field{label}
  \field[strwidth=3,strside=left,ifnames=1]{labelname}
  \field[strwidth=1,strside=left]{labelname}
}
\labelelement{
  \field[strwidth=2,strside=right]{year}
}
}

\DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate{
  \namepart[use=true, pre=true, strwidth=1, compound=true]{prefix}
  \namepart{family}
}
```

To get an idea of how the label automatic disambiguation works, consider the following author lists:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver (2000)
Agassi, Connors, Lendl (2001)
Agassi, Courier, Laver (2002)
Borg, Connors, Edberg (2003)
Borg, Connors, Emerson (2004)
```

Assuming a template declaration such as:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidth]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Then the labels would be:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [AChLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [AConLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [ACouLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BConEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BConEm]
```

With normalised variable width labels defined:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthnorm]{labelname}
  }
}
```

You would get the following as the substrings of names in each position are extended to the length of the longest substring in that same position:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [AChaLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [AConLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [ACouLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BConEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BConEm]
```

With a restriction to two characters for the name components of the label element defined like this:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthnorm,strwidthmax=2]{labelname}
  }
}
```

This would be the result (note that the individual family name label parts are no longer unambiguous):

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [AChLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [ACoLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [ACoLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BCoEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BCoEm]
```

Alternatively, you could choose to disambiguate the name lists as a whole with:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthlist]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Which would result in:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [AChL]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [ACoL]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [ACL]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BCEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BCE]
```

Perhaps you only want to consider at most two names for label generation but disambiguate at the whole name list level:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthlist,names=2]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Which would result in:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [ACh+]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [ACo+]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [AC+]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BC+a]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BC+b]
```

In this last example, you can see \labelalphaothers has been appended to show that there are more names. The last two labels now require disambiguating with \extraalpha as there is no way of disambiguating this label name list with only two names.

Finally, here is an example using multiple label elements:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \field[varwidthlist]{labelname}
}
\labelelement{
  \literal{-}
}
\labelelement{
  \field[strwidth=3,strside=right]{labelyear}
}
```

Which would result in:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver [AChL-000]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [AConL-001]
Agassi, Courier, Laver [ACouL-002]
Borg, Connors, Edberg [BCEd-003]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BCEm-004]
```

Here is another rather contrived example showing that you don't need to specially quote LaTeX special characters (apart from '%', obviously) when specifying padding characters and literals:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \literal{>}
  }
  \labelelement{
    \literal{\%}
```

```
}
\labelelement{
  \field[namessep={/}, strwidth=4, padchar=_]{labelname}
}
\labelelement{
  \field[strwidth=3, padchar=&, padside=left]{title}
}
\labelelement{
  \field[strwidth=2,strside=right]{year}
}
```

which given:

```
@Book{test,
  author = {XXX YY and WWW ZZ},
  title = {T},
  year = {2007},
}
```

would resulting a label looking like this:

```
[>%YY/ZZ__&&T07]
```

Generating labels from fields may involve some difficulties when you have fields containing diacritics, hyphens, spaces etc. Often, you want to ignore things like separator characters or spaces when generating labels. An option is provided to customise the regular expression(s) to strip from a field before it is passed to the label generation system.

\DeclareNolabel{\langle specification \rangle}

Defines regular expressions to strip from any field before generating a label part for the field. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \nolabel directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from fields. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

```
\nolabel{regexp}
```

Any number of \nolabel commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the $\langle regexp \rangle$ from the copy of the field which the label generation system sees. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

If there is no \DeclareNolabel specification, Biber will default to:

```
\DeclareNolabel{
   % strip punctuation, symbols, separator and control characters
   \nolabel{\regexp{[\p{P}\p{S}\p{C}]+}}
}
```

This Biber default strips punctuation, symbol, separator and control characters from fields before passing the field string to the label generation system.

\DeclareNolabelwidthcount{\langle specification \rangle}

Defines regular expressions to ignore from any field when counting characters in fixed-width substrings. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \nolabelwidthcount directives which specify the regular expressions to ignore when counting characters for fixed-width substrings. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$\normalfont{\langle regexp \rangle}$

Any number of \nolabelwidthcount commands can be given each of which specifies to ignore the $\langle regexp \rangle$ when generating fixed-width substrings during label generation. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

There is no default \DeclareNolabelwidthcount specification. Note that this setting is only taken into account when using fixed-width substrings (non-varwidth) during label part generation. See § 4.5.5.

4.5.6 排序

In addition to the predefined sorting schemes discussed in § 3.5, it is possible to define new ones or modify the default definitions. The sorting process may be customized further by excluding certain fields from sorting on a per-type basis and by automatically populating the presort field on a per-type basis.

```
\DeclareSortingScheme[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle specification \rangle\}
```

Defines the sorting scheme $\langle name \rangle$. The $\langle name \rangle$ is the identifier passed to the sorting option (§ 3.1.2.1) when selecting the sorting scheme. The \DeclareSortingScheme command supports the following optional arguments:

```
locale = \langle locale \rangle
```

The locale for the sorting scheme which then overrides the global sorting locale in the sortlocale option discussed in § 3.1.2.1.

The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \sort directives which specify the elements to be considered in the sorting process. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

\sort{\langle elements \rangle}

Specifies the elements considered in the sorting process. The $\langle elements \rangle$ are an undelimited list of \field, \literal, and \citeorder commands which are evaluated in the order in which they are given. If an element is defined, it is added to the sort key and the sorting routine skips to the next \sort directive. If it is undefined, the next element is evaluated. Since literal strings are always defined, any \literal commands should be the sole or the last element in a \sort directive. All $\langle elements \rangle$ should be the same datatype as described in § 2.2.2 since they will be potentially compared to any of the other $\langle elements \rangle$ in other entries.. The \sort command supports the following optional arguments:

```
locale = \langle locale \rangle
```

Override the locale used for sorting at the level of a particular set of sorting elements. If specified, the locale overrides the locale set at the level of \DeclareSortingScheme and also the global setting. See also the discussion of the global sorting locale option sortlocale in § 3.1.2.1.

```
direction=ascending, descending
```

The sort direction, which may be either ascending or descending. The default is ascending order.

default: ascending

```
final=true, false default: false
```

This option marks a \sort directive as the final one in the $\langle specification \rangle$. If one of the $\langle elements \rangle$ is available, the remainder of the $\langle specification \rangle$ will be ignored. The short form final is equivalent to final=true.

```
sortcase=true, false
```

Whether or not to sort case-sensitively. The default setting depends on the global sortcase option.

```
sortupper=true, false
```

Whether or not to sort in 'uppercase before lowercase' (true) or 'lowercase before uppercase' order (false). The default setting depends on the global sortupper option.

```
field[\langle key=value, ... \rangle] \{\langle field \rangle\}
```

The \field element adds a $\langle field \rangle$ to the sorting specification. If the $\langle field \rangle$ is undefined, the element is skipped. The \field command supports the following optional arguments:

```
padside=left, right
```

default: left

Pads a field on the left or right side using padchar so that its width is padwidth. If no padding option is set, no padding is done at all. If any padding option is specified, then padding is performed and the missing options are assigned built-in default values. If padding and substring matching are both specified, the substring match is performed first.

```
padwidth=\langle integer \rangle default: 4
```

The target width in characters.

```
padchar=(character) default: 0
```

The character to be used when padding the field.

```
strside=left, right default: left
```

Performs a substring match on the left or right side of the field. The number of characters to match is specified by the corresponding strwidth option. If no substring option is set, no substring matching is performed at all. If any substring option is specified, then substring matching is performed and the missing options are assigned built-in default values. If padding and substring matching are both specified, the substring match is performed first.

```
strwidth=\langle integer \rangle default: 4
```

The number of characters to match.

```
\left( \left( string \right) \right)
```

The \literal element adds a literal $\langle string \rangle$ to the sorting specification. This is useful as a fallback if some fields are not available.

\citeorder

The \citeorder element has a special meaning. It requests a sort based on the lexical order of the actual citations. For entries cited within the same citation command like:

```
\cite{one,two}
```

there is a distinction between the lexical order and the semantic order. Here "one" and "two" have the same semantic order but a unique lexical order. The semantic order only matters if you specify further sorting to disambiguate entries with the same semantic order. For example, this is the definition of the none sorting scheme:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{none}{
  \sort{\citeorder}
}
```

This sorts the bibliography purely lexically by the order of the keys in the citation commands. In the example above, it sorts "one" before "two". However, suppose that

you consider "one" and "two" to have the same order (semantic order) since they are cited at the same time and want to further sort these by year. Suppose "two" has an earlier year than "one":

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{noneyear}{
  \sort{\citeorder}
  \sort{year}
}
```

This sorts "two" before "one", even though lexically, "one" would sort before "two". This is possible because the semantic order can be disambiguated by the further sorting on year. With the standard none sorting scheme, the lexical order and semantic order are identical because there is nothing further to disambiguate them. This means that you can use \citeorder just like any other sorting specification element, choosing how to further sort entries cited at the same time (in the same citation command).

$\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme[\langle schemename \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

Defines how the sorting keys for names are constructed. This can change the sorting order of names arbitrarily because you can choose how to put together the name parts when constructing the string to compare when sorting. The sorting key construction scheme so defined is called $\langle schemename \rangle$ which defaults to "global" if this optional parameter is absent. When constructing the sorting key for a name, a sorting key for each name part is constructed and the key for each name is formed into an ordered key list with a special internal separator. The point of this option is to accommodate languages or situations where sorting of names needs to be customised (for example, Icelandic names are sometimes sorted by given names rather than by family names). This macro may be used multiple times to define schemes with different names which can then be referred to later. Sorting name key schemes can have the following scopes, in order of increasing precedence:

- •The default scheme defined without the optional name argument
- •Given as the sortingnamekeyscheme option to a reference context (see § 3.7.10)
- •Given as a per-entry option sortnamekeyscheme in a bibliography data source entry
- •Given as a per-namelist option sortnamekeyscheme
- •Given as a per-name option sortnamekeyscheme

By default there is only a global scheme which has the following *(specification)*:

```
\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme{
  \keypart{
   \namepart[use=true]{prefix}
```

```
}
\keypart{
  \namepart{family}
}
\keypart{
  \namepart{given}
}
\keypart{
  \namepart{suffix}
}
\keypart{
  \namepart[use=false]{prefix}
}
}
```

This means that the key is constructed by concatenating, in order, the name prefix (only if the useprefix option is true), the family name(s), the given names(s), the name suffix and then the name prefix (only if the useprefix option is false).

```
\keypart{\langle part \rangle}
```

 $\langle part \rangle$ is an ordered list of of \namepart and \literal specifications which are concatenated together when constructing a part of the name sorting key.

```
\langle string \rangle
```

A literal string to insert into the name sorting key.

```
\langle namepart \{ \langle name \rangle \}
```

Specifies the $\langle name \rangle$ of a namepart to use in constructing the name sorting key.

```
use=true, false default: true
```

Indicates that the namepart $\langle name \rangle$ is only to be used in this concatenation position if the corresponding use 'name' option is set to the specified boolean value.

```
inits=true, false default: true
```

Indicates that only the initials of namepart $\langle name \rangle$ are to be used in constructing the sorting specification.

As an example, suppose you wanted to be able to sort names by given name rather than family name, you could define a sorting name key scheme like this:

```
\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme[givenfirst]{
  \keypart{
   \namepart{given}
```

```
}
\keypart{
   \namepart[use=true]{prefix}
}
\keypart{
   \namepart{family}
}
\keypart{
   \namepart[use=false]{prefix}
}
```

You can then use the name givenfirst at the appropriate scope in order to make Biber use this scheme when constructing sorting name keys. For example, you could enable this for one bibliography list like this:

```
\begin{refcontext}[sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst]
\printbibliography
\end{refcontext}
```

or perhaps you only want to do this for a particular entry:

```
@BOOK{key,
   OPTIONS = {sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst},
   AUTHOR = {Arnar Vigfusson}
}
```

or just a name list by using the option as a pseudo-name which will be ignored:

```
@B00K{key,
   AUTHOR = {sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst and Arnar Vigfusson}
}
```

or just a single name by passing the option as part of the extended name information format which Biber supports (see Biber doc):

```
@B00K{key,
   AUTHOR = {given=Arnar, family=Vigfusson, sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst}
}
```

Now we give some examples of sorting schemes. In the first example, we define a simple name/title/year scheme. The name element may be either the author, the editor, or the translator. Given this specification, the sorting routine will use the first element which is available and continue with the title. Note that the options use<name> options are considered automatically in the sorting process:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{sample}{
  \sort{
  \field{author}
  \field{editor}
  \field{translator}
}
\sort{
  \field{title}
}
\sort{
  \field{year}
}
```

In the next example, we define the same scheme in a more elaborate way, considering special fields such as presort, sortkey, sortname, etc. Since the sortkey field specifies the master sort key, it needs to override all other elements except for presort. This is indicated by the final option. If the sortkey field is available, processing will stop at this point. If not, the sorting routine continues with the next \sort directive. This setup corresponds to the default definition of the nty scheme:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{nty}{
  \sort{
    \field{presort}
  }
  \sort[final]{
    \field{sortkey}
  }
  \sort{
    \field{sortname}
   \field{author}
   \field{editor}
   \field{translator}
    \field{sorttitle}
    \field{title}
  }
  \sort{
    \field{sorttitle}
    \field{title}
  }
  \sort{
    \field{sortyear}
```

```
\field{year}
}
```

Finally, here is an example of a sorting scheme which overrides the global sorting locale and additionally overrides again when sorting by the origitale field. Note the use in the scheme-level override of a babel/polyglossia language name instead of a real locale identifier. Biber will map this to a suitable, real locale identifier (in this case, sv_SE):

```
\DeclareSortingScheme[locale=swedish]{custom}{
  \sort{
  \field{sortname}
  \field{author}
  \field{editor}
  \field{translator}
  \field{sorttitle}
  \field{title}
}
\sort[locale=de_DE_phonebook]{
  \field{origtitle}
}
```

```
\DeclareSortExclusion{\langle entrytype, ... \rangle}{\langle field, ... \rangle}
```

Specifies fields to be excluded from sorting on a per-type basis. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument and the $\langle field \rangle$ argument may be a comma-separated list of values. A blank $\langle field \rangle$ argument will clear all exclusions for this $\langle entrytype \rangle$. A value of '*' for $\langle entrytype \rangle$ will exclude $\langle field,... \rangle$ for every entrytype. This is equivalent to simply deleting the field from the sorting specification and is only normally used in combination with <code>\DeclareSortInclusion</code> when one wishes to exclude a field for all but explicitly included entrytypes. See example in <code>\DeclareSortInclusion</code> below. This command may only be used in the preamble.

```
\DeclareSortInclusion{\langle entrytype, ... \rangle}{\langle field, ... \rangle}
```

Only used along with \DeclareSortExclusion. Specifies fields to be included in sorting on a per-type basis. This allows the user to exclude a field from sorting for all entry-types and then to override this for certain entrytypes. This is easier sometimes than using \DeclareSortExclusion to list exclusions for many entrytypes. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument and the $\langle field \rangle$ argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble. For example, this would use title during sorting only for @articles:

```
\DeclareSortExclusion{*}{title}
\DeclareSortInclusion{article}{title}
```

 $\DeclarePresort[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle string \rangle\}$

Specifies a string to be used to automatically populate the presort field of entries without a presort field. The presort may be defined globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument is given, the $\langle string \rangle$ applies to the respective entry type. If not, it serves as the global default value. Specifying an $\langle entrytype \rangle$ in conjunction with a blank $\langle string \rangle$ will clear the type-specific setting. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

 $\DeclareSortTranslit[\langle entrytype \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

Languages which can be written in different scripts or alphabets often only have CLDR sorting tailoring for one script and it is expected that you transliterate into the supported script for sorting purposes. A common example is Sanskrit which is often written in academic contexts in IAST romanised script but which needs to be sorted in the 'sa' locale which expects the Devanāgarī script. This means that it is necessary to transliterate into the sorting script internally. \DeclareSortTranslit declares which parts of an entry you would like to transliterate for sorting purposes. Without the $\langle entrytype \rangle$ parameter, the $\langle specification \rangle$ applies to all entrytypes. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is one or more \translit commands:

 $\translit{\langle field\ or\ fieldset \rangle}{\langle from \rangle}{\langle to \rangle}$

Specifies that the data field field or all fields in a fieldset $\langle fieldset \rangle$ declared with \DeclareDatafieldSet (see § 4.5.2) should be transliterated from script $\langle from \rangle$ to script $\langle to \rangle$ for sorting purposes. The field/set argument can also be '*' to apply transliteration to all fields. The valid $\langle from \rangle$ and $\langle to \rangle$ values are given in table 12. Note that Biblatex does not aim to support general transliteration, only those which are useful for sorting purposes. Please open a GitHub ticket for Biblatex if you think you need additional transliterations.

An example of transliterating titles so that they sort correctly in Sanskrit:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{settitles}{
  \member[field=title]
  \member[field=booktitle]
  \member[field=eventtitle]
  \member[field=issuetitle]
  \member[field=journaltitle]
  \member[field=maintitle]
```

From	То	Description
iast	devanagari	Sanskrit IAST ⁵¹ to Devanāgarī

Table 12: Valid transliteration pairs

```
\member[field=origtitle]
}
\DeclareSortTranslit{
  \translit[settitles]{iast}{devanagari}
}
```

4.5.7 Bibliography List Filters

When using customisable bibliography lists (See § 3.7.3), usually one wants to return in the .bbl only those entries which have the particular fields which the bibliography list is summarising. For example, when printing a normal list of shorthands, you want the list returned by Biber in the .bbl to contain only those entries which have a shorthand field. This is accomplished by defining a bibliography list filter using the \DeclareBiblistFilter command. This differs from the filters defined using \defbibfilter (see § 3.7.9) since the filters defined by \defbibfilter run inside Biblatex after the .bbl has been generated. In addition, bibliography lists in the .bbl do not contain entry data, only the citation keys for the entries and so no filtering by Biblatex using \defbibfilter is possible for bibliography lists.

```
\DeclareBiblistFilter{\langle name \rangle} {\langle specification \rangle}
```

 $filteror{\langle type \rangle} {\langle filters \rangle}$

Defines a bibliography list filter with $\langle name \rangle$. The $\langle specification \rangle$ consists of one or more \filter or \filter or macros, all of which must be satisfied for the entry to pass the filter:

```
| Filter | (filterspec) | {\langle filter \rangle } |
| Filter entries according to the \langle filterspec \rangle and \langle filter \rangle. \langle filterspec \rangle can be one of:
| type/nottype Entry is/is not of entrytype \langle filter \rangle
| subtype/notsubtype Entry is/is not of subtype \langle filter \rangle
| keyword/notkeyword Entry has/does not have keyword \langle filter \rangle
| field/notfield Entry has/does not have a field called \langle filter \rangle
```

A wrapper around one or more \filter commands specifying that they form a disjunctive set, i.e. any one of the $\langle filters \rangle$ must be satisfied.

Fields in the datamodel which are marked as 'Label fields' (see § 4.5.4) automatically have a filter defined for them with the same name and which filters out any entries which do no contain the field. For example, Biblatex automatically generates a filter for the shorthand field:

```
\DeclareBiblistFilter{shorthand}{
  \filter[type=field,filter=shorthand]
}
```

4.5.8 Controlling Name Initials Generation

Generating initials for name parts from a given name involves some difficulties when you have names with prefixes, diacritics, hyphens etc. Often, you want to ignore things like prefixes when generating initials so that the initials for "al-Hasan" is just "H" instead of "a-H". This is tricky when you also have names like "Ho-Pun" where you want the initials to be "H-P", for example.

$\DeclareNoinit{\langle specification \rangle}$

Defines regular expressions to strip from names before generating initials. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \noinit directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from the name. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

```
\noinit{\langle regexp \rangle}
```

Any number of \noinit commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the $\langle regexp \rangle$ from the copy of the name which the initials generation system sees. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

If there is no \DeclareNoinit specification, Biber will default to:

This Biber default strips a couple of diacritics and also strips lowercase prefixes from names before generating initials.

4.5.9 排序微调 Fine Tuning Sorting

对排序微调是很有用的,它可以忽略一些特殊域的某些部分。It can be useful to fine tune sorting so that it ignores certain parts of particular fields.

$\DeclareNosort{\langle specification \rangle}$

Defines regular expressions to strip from particular fields or types of fields when sorting. The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an undelimited list of \nosort directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from particular fields or type of field. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle specification \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

```
\nosort{\langle field \ or \ field \ type \rangle}{\langle regexp \rangle}
```

Any number of \nosort commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the $\langle regexp \rangle$ from the $\langle field \rangle$ or $\langle field \ type \rangle$. A $\langle field \ type \rangle$ is simple a convenience grouping of semantically similar fields from which you might want to remove a regexp. Table 13 shows the available field types. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

The default is:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  % strip prefixes like 'al-' when sorting names
  \nosort{type_names}{\regexp{\A\p{L}{2}\p{Pd}}}
  % strip some diacritics when sorting names
  \nosort{type_names}{\regexp{[\x{2bf}\x{2018}]}}
}
```

This Biber default strips a couple of diacritics and also strips prefixes from names when sorting. Suppose you wanted to ignore "The" at the beginning of a title field when sorting:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  \nosort{title}{\regexp{\AThe\s+}}
}
```

Or if you wanted to ignore "The" at the beginning of any title field:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  \nosort{type_title}{\regexp{\AThe\s+}}
}
```

Field Type	Fields
type_name	author
	afterword
	annotator
	bookauthor
	commentator
	editor
	editora
	editorb
	editorc
	foreword
	holder
	introduction
	namea
	nameb
	namec
	shortauthor
	shorteditor
	translator
type_title	booktitle
	eventtitle
	issuetitle
	journaltitle
	maintitle
	origtitle
	title

Table 13: Field types for \nosort

4.5.10 特殊域 Special Fields

Some of the automatically generated fields from § 4.2.4.2 may be customized.

 $\DeclareLabelname[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

Defines the fields to consider when generating the labelname field (see § 4.2.4.2). The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an ordered list of \field commands. The fields are checked in the order listed and the first field which is available will be used as labelname. This is the default definition:

```
\DeclareLabelname{%
  \field{shortauthor}
  \field{author}
  \field{shorteditor}
  \field{editor}
  \field{translator}
}
```

The labelname field may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If

not, it is applied globally. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

```
\DeclareLabeldate[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}
```

Defines the date components to consider when generating labelyear, labelmonth, labelday, labelendyear, labelendmonth and labelendday fields (see § 4.2.4.2). The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an ordered list of \field or \literal commands. The items are checked in the order listed and the first item which is available will be used to popluate the mentioned fields. Note that the \field items do not have to be datetype 'date' in the data model so that you can create pseudo-year labels by, for example, using a pubstate field contents, if available, as the year label by defining \DeclareLabeldate suitably. Note also that a \literal command will always be used when found and so this should always be the last thing in the list. If the value of a \literal command is a valid localisation string, then this will be resolved in the current language, otherwise the value is used as a literal string as-is. This is the default definition:

```
\DeclareLabeldate{%
  \field{date}
  \field{year}
  \field{eventdate}
  \field{origdate}
  \field{urldate}
  \literal{nodate}
}
```

Note that the date field is split by the backend into year, month which are also valid fields in the default data model. In order to support legacy data which directly sets year and/or month, the specification 'date' in \DeclareLabeldate will also match year and month fields, if present. The label* fields may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional \(\langle entry type \rangle \) argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If not, it is applied globally. The \(\langle entry type \rangle \) argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble. See also \(\xi \) 4.2.4.3.

$\DeclareLabeltitle[\langle entrytype, ... \rangle] \{\langle specification \rangle\}$

Defines the fields to consider when generating the labeltitle field (see § 4.2.4.2). The $\langle specification \rangle$ is an ordered list of \field commands. The fields are checked in the order listed and the first field which is available will be used as labeltitle. This is the default definition:

```
\DeclareLabeltitle{%
  \field{shorttitle}
```

```
\field{title}
}
```

The labeltitle field may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If not, it is applied globally. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

4.5.11 数据继承 Data Inheritance (crossref)

Biber features a highly customizable cross-referencing mechanism with flexible data inheritance rules. This sections deals with the configuration interface. See 附录 B for the default configuration. A note on terminology: the *child* or *target* is the entry with the crossref field, the *parent* or *source* is the entry the crossref field points to. The child inherits data from the parent.

 $\DefaultInheritance[\langle exceptions \rangle] \{\langle options \rangle\}$

Configures the default inheritance behavior. This command may only be used in the preamble. The default behavior may be customized be setting the following *(options)*:

```
all=true, false default: true
```

Whether or not to inherit all fields from the parent by default.

all=true means that the child entry inherits all fields from the parent, unless a more specific inheritance rule has been set up with \DeclareDataInheritance. If an inheritance rule is defined for a field, data inheritance is controlled by that rule. all=false means that no data is inherited from the parent by default and each field to be inherited requires an explicit inheritance rule set up with \DeclareDataInheritance. The package default is all=true.

```
override=true, false default: false
```

Whether or not to overwrite target fields with source fields if both are defined. This applies both to automatic inheritance and to explicit inheritance rules. The package default is override=false, i. e., existing fields of the child entry are not overwritten.

```
ignore=\( csv list of uniqueness options \)
```

This option takes a comma-separated list of one of more of 'singletitle', 'uniquetitle', 'uniquebaretitle' and/or 'uniquework'. The purpose of this option is to ignore tracking information for these three options when the field which would trigger the tracking (表 7) is inherited. An example—Suppose that you have several @book entries which all crossref a @mvbook from which they get their author field. You might reasonably want the \ifsingletitle test to return 'true' for this author as their only 'work' is the @mvbook. Similar comments would apply to situations involving the \ifuniquetitle, \ifuniquebaretitle and \ifuniquework tests. The ignore option lists which of these should have their tracking information ignored when the fields which would trigger

them are inherited. The idea is that the presence of an inherited field does not contribute towards the determination of whether some combination of name/title is unique in the bibliographic data. For example, this modified default setting would ignore singletitle and uniquetitle tracking:

```
\label{lem:defaultInheritance} $$ \operatorname{singletitle,uniquetitle}, all=true, override $$ \hookrightarrow = false$
```

Of course, the ignoring of tracking does nothing if the fields inherited do not play a role in tracking. Only the fields listed in $\frac{1}{8}$ 7 are relevant to this option.

The optional $\langle exceptions \rangle$ are an undelimited list of \except directives. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle exceptions \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible.

```
\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath}\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ens
```

Defines an exception to the default inheritance rules.

\DeclareDataInheritance sets the inheritance $\langle options \rangle$ for a specific $\langle source \rangle$ and $\langle target \rangle$ combination. The $\langle source \rangle$ and $\langle target \rangle$ arguments specify the parent and the child entry type. The asterisk matches all types and is permissible in either argument.

Declares inheritance rules. The $\langle source \rangle$ and $\langle target \rangle$ arguments specify the parent and the child entry type. Either argument may be a single entry type, a comma-separated list of types, or an asterisk. The asterisk matches all entry types. The $\langle rules \rangle$ are an undelimited list of \inherit and/or \noinherit directives. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the $\langle rules \rangle$. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble. The options are:

```
ignore=\( csv list of uniqueness options \)
```

As the ignore option on \DefaultInheritance explained above. When set here, it takes precedence over any global options set with \DefaultInheritance. For example, this would ignore singletitle and uniquetitle tracking for a @book inheriting from a @mvbook.

```
\inherit[\langle option \rangle] \{\langle source \rangle\} \{\langle target \rangle\}
```

Defines an inheritance rule by mapping a $\langle source \rangle$ field to a $\langle target \rangle$ field. $\langle option \rangle$ can be one of

```
override=true, false
```

default: false

As the override option for \DefaultInheritance explained above. When set here, it takes precedence over any global options set with \DefaultInheritance.

```
\noinherit{\langle source \rangle}
```

Unconditionally prevents inheritance of the *(source)* field.

\ResetDataInheritance Clears all inheritance rules defined with \DeclareDataInheritance. This command may only be used in the preamble.

Here are some practical examples:

```
\DefaultInheritance{all=true,override=false}
```

This example shows how to configure the default inheritance behavior. The above settings are the package defaults.

```
\DefaultInheritance[
  \except{*}{online}{all=false}
]{all=true,override=false}
```

This example is similar to the one above but adds one exception: entries of type @online will, by default, not inherit any data from any parent.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{collection}{incollection}{
  \inherit{title}{booktitle}
  \inherit{subtitle}{booksubtitle}
  \inherit{titleaddon}{booktitleaddon}
}
```

So far we have looked at setting up standard inheritance. For example, all=true means that the publisher field of a source entry is copied to the publisher field of the target entry. In some cases, however, asymmetric mappings are required. They are defined with \DeclareDataInheritance. The above example sets up three typical rules for @incollection entries referencing a @collection. We map the title and related fields of the source to the corresponding booktitle fields of the target.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{mvbook,book}{inbook,bookinbook}{
  \inherit{author}{author}
  \inherit{author}{bookauthor}
}
```

This rule is an example of one-to-many mapping: it maps the author field of the source to both the author and the bookauthor fields of the target in order to allow for compact inbook/bookinbook entries. The source may be either a @mvbook or a @book entry, the target either an @inbook or a @bookinbook entry.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{*}{inbook,incollection}{
  \noinherit{introduction}
}
```

This rule prevents inheritance of the introduction field. It applies to all targets of type @inbook or @incollection, regardless of the source entry type.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{*}{*}{
  \noinherit{abstract}
}
```

This rule, which applies to all entries, regardless of the source and target entry types, prevents inheritance of the abstract field.

```
\DefaultInheritance{all=true,override=false}
\ResetDataInheritance
```

This example demonstrates how to emulate traditional BibTeX's cross-referencing mechanism. It enables inheritance by default, disables overwriting, and clears all other inheritance rules and mappings.

In a bibliography entry, you can give an option 'noinherit' where the value is a datafield set defined with \DeclareDatafieldSet (§ 4.5.2). This will block inheritance of the fields in the set on a per-entry basis. For example:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{nobtitle}{
  \member[field=booktitle]
}
```

```
@INBOOK{s1,
    OPTIONS = {noinherit=nobtitle},
    TITLE = {Subtitle},
    CROSSREF = {s2}
}

@BOOK{s2,
    TITLE = {Title}
}
```

217

Here, s1 will not inherit the TITLE of s2 as BOOKTITLE as this is blocked by the datafield set given as the value to the noinherit option. One important thing to note is that children will never inherit any dateparts of a given type if they already contain a datepart of that type. So, for example:

```
@INBOOK{b1,

DATE = {2004-03-03},

ORIGDATE = {2004-03},

CROSSREF = {b2}

}

@BOOK{b2,

DATE = {2004-03-03/2005-08-09},

ORIGDATE = {2004-03/2005-08},

EVENTDATE = {2004-03/2005-08},

}
```

Here, b1 will not inherit any of endyear, endmonth, endday, origendyear or origendmonth as this would make a mess of its own dates. It will, given the inheritance defaults, inherit all of the event* date parts.

4.6 辅助命令

本节的工具用来分析和保存参考文献数据而不是对其进行格式化或者打印。

4.6.1 数据命令

本节的命令允许以 low-level 方式访问未格式化的参考文献数据。这些命令不是用来输出,而是用来将数据保存到临时宏中,可以用于下一步的比较。

$\time {\langle field \rangle}$

展开为未格式化的〈field〉。如果〈field〉未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。

$\mathsf{strfield}(\langle field \rangle)$

类似于\thefield命令,但其值经自动净化,以便安全的用于构成控制序列名。

$\csfield{\langle field \rangle}$

类似于\thefield命令,但禁止展开

$\sl (command)$ { $\sl (field)$ }

执行(command)命令使用未格式化的(field)作为其参数

$\mathsf{thelist}\{\langle \mathit{literal list}\rangle\}$

展开为未格式化的〈literal list〉。如果 list 未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。注意该命令中将〈literal list〉转存为本宏包使用的内部格式。这一格式不适合打印。

```
\mathsf{strlist}(\langle literal\ list \rangle)
```

类似于\thelist,差别在于该命令能自动处理列表的内部表示,因此列表的值可以安全地用于控制序列名的构建。

展开为未格式化的〈name list〉。如果 list 未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。注意该命令中将〈name list〉转存为本宏包使用的内部格式。这一格式不适合打印。

$\operatorname{trname}\{\langle name\ list \rangle\}$

类似于\thename,差别在于该命令能自动处理列表的内部表示,因此列表的值可以安全地用于控制序列名的构建。

```
\label{eq:condition} $$\operatorname{d}_{\langle field \rangle}_{\langle macro \rangle} $$ \savefield $$\{\langle field \rangle\}_{\langle macro \rangle}_{\langle macro \rangle}$$
```

将未格式化的 $\langle field \rangle$ 拷贝到一个 $\langle macro \rangle$ 中。不带星的命令全局的定义 $\langle macro \rangle$,而带星的命令是局部定义。

将未格式化的 $\langle literal\ list \rangle$ 拷贝到一个 $\langle macro \rangle$ 中。不带星的命令全局的定义 $\langle macro \rangle$,而带星的命令是局部定义。

```
\space{ame list}{{\langle macro \rangle}} 
\space{ame list}{{\langle macro \rangle}}
```

将未格式化的 $\langle name\ list \rangle$ 拷贝到一个 $\langle macro \rangle$ 中。不带星的命令全局的定义 $\langle macro \rangle$,而带星的命令是局部定义。

```
\sin savefieldcs{\langle field \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle}
\savefieldcs*{\langle field \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle}
```

类似于\savefield命令,当将控制序列名\csname\(即没有斜杠)作为参数,而不是宏。

```
\sin savelistcs{\langle literal \ list \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle} 
\sin savelistcs*{\langle literal \ list \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle}
```

类似于\savelist命令,当将控制序列名⟨csname⟩(即没有斜杠) 作为参数,而不是 宏。

```
\sin savenamecs{\langle name \ list \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle}
```

类似于\savename命令,当将控制序列名 $\langle csname \rangle$ (即没有斜杠)作为参数,而不是宏。

$\rcstorefield{\langle field \rangle}{\langle macro \rangle}$

从之前用\savefield命令定义的 $\langle macro \rangle$ 中将 $\langle field \rangle$ 恢复回来。该域是在局部范围内恢复。

$\rcstorelist{\langle literal \ list \rangle}{\langle macro \rangle}$

从之前用\savelist命令定义的\macro\中将\(literal list\)恢复回来。该 list 是在局部范围内恢复。

$\restorename{\langle name\ list \rangle}{\langle macro \rangle}$

从之前用\savename命令定义的\macro\中将\name list\恢复回来。该 list 是在局部范围内恢复。

$\cline{field}{\langle field \rangle}$

在局部范围内清除〈field〉。以这种方式清除的域对于后续的数据命令来说相当于 没有定义。

$\clearlist{\langle literal \ list \rangle}$

在局部范围内清除〈literal list〉。以这种方式清除的 list 对于后续的数据命令来说相当于没有定义。

$\clearname{\langle name\ list \rangle}$

在局部范围内清除〈name list〉。以这种方式清除的 list 对于后续的数据命令来说相当于没有定义。

4.6.2 独立判断命令

本节的命令是不同类型的 stand-alone 判断命令,用于参考文献著录和标注样式中。

$\if < datetype > julian {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

当日期'datetype'date 因为julian和gregorianstart选项的设置转换为儒略历 (Julian Calendar) 时,展开为〈true〉。

$\left(\operatorname{false} \right)$

类似于\if<datetype>julian但用于\mkbibdate*格式化命令中(§ 4.10.2),在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的\if<datetype>julian命令等价于该命令。

$\if < datetype > dateera{\langle era \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

当日期'datetype'date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 指定了一个时区等于〈era〉,则展开为〈true〉,否则展开为〈false〉。Biber 确认并在.bbl文件中传递的可用〈era〉字符串是:

bceBCE/BC era

ceCE/AD era

该命令用于确定是否打印§4.9.2.21节的地址字符串。

$\ifdateera{\langle era \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

类似于\if<datetype>dateera,但用于\mkbibdate*格式化命令 (§ 4.10.2),在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的\if<datetype>dateera命令等价于该命令。

$\if < datetype > datecirca \{ \langle true \rangle \} \{ \langle false \rangle \}$

当日期'datetype'date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 在数据源中具有一个'circa' 标记时,则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。参见§ 2.3.8。该命令用于确定是否打印§ 4.9.2.21节中的字符串。

$\iftime {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

类似于\if<datetype>datecirca,但用于\mkbibdate*格式化命令(§ 4.10.2),在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的\if<datetype>datecirca 命令等价于该命令。

$\if < datetype > dateuncertain {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

当日期'datetype'date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 在数据源中具有一个不确定标记时,则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。参见§ 2.3.8。该命令用于确定是否打印例如年份后的一个问号。

$\iftime (true)$ { $\langle true \rangle$ } { $\langle false \rangle$ }

类似于\if<datetype>dateuncertain,但用于\mkbibdate*格式化命令(§ 4.10.2),在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的\if<datetype>dateuncertain命令等价于该命令。

\ightharpoonup \ifenddateuncertain{ $\langle true \rangle$ }{ $\langle false \rangle$ }

类似于\ifend<datetype>dateuncertain,但用于\mkbibdate*格式化命令(§ 4.10.2),在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的\ifend<datetype>dateuncertain命令等价于该命令。

$\ightharpoonup (language)] {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

如果可选的 $\langle language \rangle$ 是\DeclareCaseLangs(见§ 4.6.4) 声明的语言之一,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。但可选参数不给出时,对\currentlang值进行判断。

如果(string)等于范围排序名关键词格式名52(4.5.6), 否则展开为(false)。 $\left(\frac{field}{field}\right)\left(\frac{false}{false}\right)$ 展开为\(\true\), 如果\(\field\)未定义,否则展开为\(\false\) $\left(iflistundef{\langle literal \ list \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle} \right)$ 展开为\(\true\), 如果\(\literal list\)未定义, 否则展开为\(\false\) $\ifnameundef{\langle name \ list \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$ 展开为〈true〉,如果〈name list〉未定义,否则展开为〈false〉 $\left(\frac{1}{field 2}\right)\left(\frac{2}{field 2}\right)\left(\frac{2}{false}\right)$ 展开为〈true〉,如果〈field 1〉和〈field 2〉相等,否则展开为〈false〉 $\left(\frac{1}{true}\right) \left(\frac{1}{true}\right) \left(\frac{$ 展开为(true),如果(literal list 1)和(literal list 2)相等,否则展开为(false) ∞ \iff name list 1\}{\(name \list 2 \)}{\(\frac{true}{}} \{ \(false \)} 展开为\langle true\, 如果\langle name list 1\rangle 和\langle name list 2\rangle 相等,否则展开为\langle false\ $\left\langle field\right\rangle \left\langle false\right\rangle \left\langle false\right$ 展开为〈true〉,如果〈field〉的值和〈macro〉的定义相等,否则展开为〈false〉。53 $\left\langle iflistequals \left\langle literal \ list \right\rangle \right\rangle \left\langle macro \right\rangle \left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$ 展开为\(true\),如果\(literal list\)的值和\(macro\)的定义相等,否则展开为\(false\)。 展开为(true),如果(name list)的值和(macro)的定义相等,否则展开为(false)。

 $\left(\frac{\langle field \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle} \right) \left(\frac{\langle false \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}\right)$

类似于\iffieldequals,但将控制序列名\(csname\)(不带斜杠)作为参数,而不是一 个宏名。

 $\left(iflistequalcs \{ \langle literal \ list \rangle \} \{ \langle csname \rangle \} \{ \langle true \rangle \} \{ \langle false \rangle \}$

类似于\iflistequals,但将控制序列名(csname)(不带斜杠)作为参数,而不是一 个宏名。

⁵²the current in scope sorting name key scheme name 待议

⁵³可以用于改进 gb7714-2015 中的新闻和标准的判断

类似于\ifnameequals,但将控制序列名\csname\(不带斜杠)作为参数,而不是一个宏名。

$\left(field \right) \left(string \right) \left(true \right) \left(false \right)$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果 $\langle field \rangle$ 的值和字符串 $\langle string \rangle$ 的定义相等,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的。

$\left(\frac{field}{field}\right)\left(\frac{false}{false}\right)$

如果一个条目定义了crossref/xref,该命令检测 $\langle field \rangle$ 是否与 cross-referenced 父条目相关联。如果子条目的 $\langle field \rangle$ 与父条目对应的 $\langle field \rangle$ 相等,那么执行 $\langle true \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果crossref/xref未定义,总是执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的。crossref和xref域的描述见§ 2.2.3,更多关于 cross-referencing 的信息见§ 2.4.1。

$\left(iflistxref{\langle literal\ list \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle} \right)$

类似于\iffieldxref命令,但检测〈literal list〉是否与 cross-referenced 父条目相关 联。crossref和xref域的描述见§2.2.3,更多关于 cross-referencing 的信息见§2.4.1。

类似于\iffieldxref命令,但检测\(name list\)是否与 cross-referenced 父条目相关联。crossref和 xref域的描述见 § 2.2.3,更多关于 cross-referencing 的信息见 § 2.4.1。

$\ifcurrentfield{\langle field \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前域为 $\langle field \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中,如果在其它环境中总是执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ifcurrentlist{\langle literal \ list \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前 list 为 $\langle literal\ list \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中,如果在其它环境中总是执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ifcurrentname{\langle name \ list \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前 list 为 $\langle name\ list \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中,如果在其它环境中总是执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ightharpoonup (true) { \langle false \rangle }$

执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果useprefix选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目),否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

$\ightharpoonup \fill \$

这只是下面的\ifuse<name>宏的一个特例,因为author是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果useauthor选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目),否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

$\ightharpoonup \langle true \rangle \} \{ \langle false \rangle \}$

这只是下面的\ifuse<name>宏的一个特例,因为editor是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果useeditor选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目),否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

$\ightharpoonup \fill \$

这只是下面的\ifuse<name>宏的一个特例,因为translator是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果usetranslator选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目),否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

$\injty \langle name \rangle \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\}$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果选项use<name>打开 (无论全局还是当前条目的选项),否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。这一选项的细节详见第 § 3.1.3节。

$\verb|\ifcrossrefsource|{\langle true \rangle}|{\langle false \rangle}|$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果包含在.bbl中的条目的间接引用 (referenced)⁵⁴次数大于mincrossrefs,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。见§ 3.1.2.1。如果条目被直接引用则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\time {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果包含在.bbl中的条目的间接引用 (referenced)⁵⁵次数大于 optminxrefs,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。见§ 3.1.2.1。如果条目被直接引用则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

\ifsingletitle $\{\langle true \rangle\}\{\langle false \rangle\}$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果文献表中只有以labelname为名的一片文献,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果没有labelname为名的条目,当文献表中有以labeltitle为题的文献则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果条目既没设置labelname也没设置labeltitle,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意该功能需要显式的打开宏包选项singletitle才行。

$\left(\frac{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle} \right)$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果只有一篇文献的题名是labeltitle,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果条目的labeltitle未设置也展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意: 要使用这一功能需要显式地打开包选项uniquetitle。

\ightharpoonup

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果labelname域为空且只有一篇文献的题名是labeltitle,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果条目的labeltitle未设置也展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意: 要使用这一功能需要显式地打开包选项uniquebaretitle。

⁵⁴应该是交叉引用次数

⁵⁵应该是交叉引用次数

$\injlie_{true} \$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果文献表中只有一篇文献的标签名是labelname且题名是labeltitle,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果条目的labelname和labeltitle均未设置也展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意:要使用这一功能需要显式地打开包选项uniquework。如果同一条目的singletitle和uniquetitle都是 false,可能是因为其他条目也有相同的labelname或者labeltitle。uniquework可以让我们知道有另一条目具有相同的labelname和labeltitle。这对于一种多人合作的情况很有用,当多个同时维护参考文献数据源时,有可能会添加内容相同但引用关键词不同的文献。这一判断能帮助找到这中存在副本情况。

\ightharpoonup \igh

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果一篇文献的对于其labelname的第一作者的姓是唯一的,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果条目的labelname未设置,将展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意使用该功能需要显式的打开包选项uniqueprimaryauthor。

展开为〈true〉,如果〈list〉已定义并且在bib文件中以关键词'and others' 截短了,否则展开为〈false〉。〈list〉可以是 literal 或 name 列表。

∞ \iff if more names {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前姓名列表已经截短或将截短,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令中,在其它地方使用将展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令对当前列表执行与\ifandothers判断一样的操作。如果判断结果为否,它将检测listtotal是否大于liststop。该命令用于格式化命令中用以决定是否需要在列表默认打印"and others" or "et al."这样的标注。注意: 当需要检测实在列表中间或者末尾时,即listcount是否小于或等于liststop,详见第§4.4.1节。

$\forall fmoreitems \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\}$

类似于\ifmorenames,但检测 literal 列表。用于 literal 列表的格式化指令,其它地方用总是展开为(false)。

$\if<$ namepart>inits $\{\langle true \rangle\}\{\langle false \rangle\}$

根据firstinits包选项的状态,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 或 $\langle false \rangle$ (见第§3.1.2.3节)。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令。

$\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

根据terseinits包选项的状态,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 或 $\langle false \rangle$ (见第§3.1.2.3节)。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令。

$\ifentrytype{\langle type \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

如果当前处理条目类型是 $\langle type \rangle$,则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ifkeyword{\langle keyword \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

如果〈keyword〉能在当前处理的条目的keywords域中找到,展开为〈true〉,否则展开为〈false〉。

$\label{lem:lemma$

当条目关键词作为\ifkeyword命令参数的变化形式,在判断当前处理条目是否是某一条目时很有用。

$\ightharpoonup \{\langle category \rangle\} \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\}$

执 行 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前正在处理条目被指派为由\addtocategory命令定义的 $\langle category \rangle$ 中,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ifentrycategory{\langle entrykey \rangle}{\langle category \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

当条目关键词作为\ifcategory命令参数时的变化形式,在判断当前处理条目是否是某一条目时很有用。

$\ifciteseen{\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果当前条目之前已经被引用过,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令是鲁棒的,用于标注样式中。如果文档中有refsection环境,引用追踪是基于这些环境的。注意:引用追踪器需要显式的以包选项citetracker打开,如果追踪器未打开,该命令总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见第 § 4.6.4节的 $\langle tetrackertrue$

$\ifentryseen{\langle entrykey \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

当条目关键词作为

\ifciteseen命令参数时的变化形式。因为\(entrykey\)先于判断展开,它也可以用来测试在xref等域中的条目关键词。

\ifentryseen{\thefield{xref}}{true}{false}

除了一个额外参数,\ifentryseen的操作类似于\ifciteseen。

$\left(\frac{\langle entry key \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}\right)$

如果 $\langle entrykey \rangle$ 出现当前文献表中,执行 $\langle true \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令用于参考文献著录样式。

$\left\langle false\right\rangle$

如果当前处理条目是引用列表中的第一个,执行 $\langle true \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令依赖于citecount, citetotal, multicitecount 和 multicitetotal计数器 (见§ 4.10.5),因此只能用于\DeclareCiteCommand命令定义的标注命令的循环执行代码 $\langle loopcode \rangle$ 中。

类似于\iffirstcitekey,但判断的是是否为引用列表中的最后一个。

$\left(\operatorname{false} \right)$

如果当前处理条目于前一条相同,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令用于标注样式。如果有refsection环境,追踪器是基于这些环境的。注意:'ibidem' 追踪器需要由ibidtracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关,详见§3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\left(true \right) \left(false \right)$

如果当前处理条目的责任者 (即作者或编者) 于前一条目的相同,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。该命令用于标注样式。如果有refsection环境,追踪器是基于这些环境的。注意: 'idem' 追踪器需要由idemtracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关,详见§3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的 $\langle talse \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的 $\langle talse \rangle$ 。

$\left(true \right) \left(false \right)$

该命令类似于\ifciteibid,但只要当前处理等条目的作者或编者与前一条目相同,则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 。注意: 'opcit' 追踪器需要由opcittracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关,详见§3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

$\left(\left(true \right) \right) \left(\left(false \right) \right)$

该命令类似于\ifopcit,但还要比较 $\langle postnote \rangle$ 的参数,如果他们相同且是数值(§ 4.6.2节的\ifopcitnumerals命令判断),则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 。即:如果引文的页码与前一文献相同则展开为 true。注意: 'loccit' 追踪器需要由loccittracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关,详见§ 3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。另可参见§ 4.6.4节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

$\iffirstonpage{\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

该命令的运行与pagetracker包选项相关,如果选项设置成 page,当当前项是页中的第一项,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果选项设置成 spread,当当前项是合页中的第一项,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。如果选项未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。根据所处环境不同,'item'可以是一个标注,或者参考文献表中的条目。注意该命令区分正文文本和脚注,例如,当在某页的第一个脚注中使用,即便是文中有一个标注且先于该脚注。另可参见§ 4.6.4节的\pagetrackertrue和\pagetrackerfalse开关。

$\ifsamepage{\langle instance 1 \rangle} {\langle instance 2 \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

如果两个引用实例位于同于页或者同一合页中,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。一个引用实例可以是一个标注也可以是文献表中的条目。这些实例用instcount计数区分,见§4.10.5。该命令的运行与pagetracker包选项相关,如果选项设置成spread,其本质是'if same spread'(是否同意合页) 的判断。如果选项未打开,总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。参数 $\langle instance\ 1 \rangle$ 和 $\langle instance\ 2 \rangle$ 以e-TeX's \numexpr方式当成整数表达式处理。这意味着可以在参数中计算。比如:

\ifsamepage{\value{instcount}}{\value{instcount}-1}{true}{false}

注意:\value命令不是以\the为前缀,在第二个参数中做了减法运算。如果 $\langle instance 1 \rangle$ 或 $\langle instance 2 \rangle$ 是无效数字 (比如一个负值),总是展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。也要注意该命令不区分正文和脚注。另可参见 § 4.6.4节的\pagetrackertrue和\pagetrackerfalse开关。

$\left\langle string \right\rangle \left\{ \left\langle true \right\rangle \right\} \left\{ \left\langle false \right\rangle \right\}$

如果(string)是一个正整数,展开为(true),否则为(false),该命令鲁棒。

$\infnumeral{\langle string \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

如果〈string〉是一个阿拉伯或者罗马数字,展开为〈true〉,否则为〈false〉,该命令鲁棒。另可参见§4.6.4节的\DeclareNumChars和\NumCheckSetup命令。

$\infnumerals{\langle string \rangle}{\langle true \rangle}{\langle false \rangle}$

如果 $\langle string \rangle$ 是一个阿拉伯或者罗马数字的范围或列表,展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则为 $\langle false \rangle$,该命令鲁棒。相比于\ifnumeral命令,当参数像"52–58","14/15","1,3,5"等时,该命令会执行 $\langle true \rangle$ 。另可参见§4.6.4节的\DeclareNumChars,\NumCheckSetup,\DeclareRangeCommands和\NumCheckSetup命令。

$\left\langle \frac{\langle string \rangle}{\langle true \rangle} \right\rangle \left\langle \frac{\langle false \rangle}{\langle false \rangle} \right\rangle$

类似于\ifnumerals,但也考虑§4.6.4节的\DeclarePageCommands命令。

$\left(field \right) \left(field \right) \left(false \right)$

类似于\ifinteger命令,但使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 的值而不是一个字符串,如果域未定义,执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\left(field \right) \left(field \right) \left(false \right)$

类似于\ifnumeral命令,但使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 的值而不是一个字符串,如果域未定义,执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\left\langle field\right\rangle \left\langle frue\right\rangle \left\langle false\right\rangle \right\rangle$

类似于\ifnumerals命令,但使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 的值而不是一个字符串,如果域未定义,执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。⁵⁶

⁵⁶是否可以用来解析卷期的范围?

$\left(field \right) \left(field \right) \left(false \right)$

类似于\ifpages命令,但使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 的值而不是一个字符串,如果域未定义,执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\left\langle string \right\rangle \left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

如果〈string〉是已知的本地化关键词,展开为〈true〉,否则〈false〉。默认定义的本地化字符串见 § 4.9.2。新的字符串可以用命令\NewBibliographyString定义。

$\left\langle string \right\rangle \left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

类似于\ifbibstring, 但\(\rang\) 是展开的。

$\left(field \right) \left(field \right) \left(false \right)$

类似于\ifbibstring,但使用 $\langle field \rangle$ 域的值而不是一个字符串,如果域未定义,执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\ifdriver{\langle entrytype \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}$

展开为\(true\)如果\(entrytype\)的驱动存在,否则为\(false\)。

$\left(true \right) \left(false \right)$

如果 Biblatex 的标点追踪器将当前位置的本地化字符串大写,则执行 $\langle true \rangle$,否则执行 $\langle false \rangle$ 。给命令在格式化指令中对于姓名的某一部分做有条件的大写处理时有用。

$\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

当处于标注中则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意这一命令与其所在的最外层环境有关。比如,当由\DeclareCiteCommand命令定义的标注命令执行一个由\DeclareBibliographyDriver定义的驱动,则任何在该驱动中的\ifcitation都会展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 。在§4.11.6可以看到一个实例。

当处于文献表中则展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,否则为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。注意这一命令与其所在的最外层环境有关。比如,当由\DeclareBibliographyDriver命令定义的驱动执行一个由\DeclareCiteCommand定义的标注,则任何在该标注中的\ifbibliography都会展开为 $\langle true \rangle$ 。在§ 4.11.6可以看到一个实例。

根据§3.1.1的natbib选项展开为〈true〉或〈false〉。

$\ightharpoonup \langle true \rangle \} \langle false \rangle \}$

根据§3.1.2.1的indexing选项展开为\(true\)或\(false\)。

 $\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

根据§3.1.2.1的indexing选项展开为〈true〉或〈false〉。

 $\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

当处于脚注中时,展开为\(true\),否则为\(false\)。注意:在minipage中的脚注被认为正 文的一部分。当处于页面底部的脚注中或者由endnotes提供的 endnotes 中时,只 会展开为〈true〉。

citecounter 这一计数器表示当前处理条目在当前 reference section 中的引用次数。注意该功能 需要以包选项citecounter显式的打开。如果选项设置为 context, 正文和脚注中 的引用分别计数。这种情况下,citecounter记录其所在环境中的值。

uniquename

这一计数器用于labelname列表。它以每个名字为基础进行设置。如果姓不同,它的 值设置为0,当增加姓名的其它部分的首字母使得姓名能区分,则设置为1,如果需 要完整的姓名才能区分,则设置为2。作者年值和作者标题值得标注格式需要这一 信息来增加姓名的其它部分以对姓相同的作者进行引用。比如: 当引用列表中有一 个'John Doe' 和一个'Edward Doe',该计数器将设置为 1。如果有有一个'John Doe' 和一个'John Doe',该计数器将设置为 2。如果选项设置成 init/allinit/mininit, 那么计数器将限制值最大为 1。这对于标注样式不打印全名而使用首字母来区分 姓名很有用。如果添加首字母还无法区分姓名,uniquename将设置为 0。该功能需 要以包选项uniquename显式的打开。注意uniquename是对\printnames局部的,仅根 据labelname列表或其来源姓名列表 (典型如author 或editor) 设置。它的值在任何 正文中都是0,即它仅在处理姓名的格式化指令中计算,更多细节和实例见§4.11.4。

uniquelist 该计数器用于labelname列表。它以每个域为基础进行设置。它的值表示当使 用maxnames/minnames自动将姓名列表截短后导致标注歧义时,消除歧义需要的最 小姓名数。比如,有一篇作者是'Doe/Smith/Johnson'的文献和另一篇作者是'Doe/ Edwards/Williams'的文献,设置 maxnames=1 将导致两篇的作者都是'Doe et al.'。这 种情况下,两个条目的labelname列表的uniquelist将设置成 2,因为至少需要两 个名字来区分。注意uniquelist是对\printnames命令局部的,仅根据labelname列 表或其来源姓名列表 (典型如author 或editor) 设置。它的值在任何正文中都是 0,即它仅在处理姓名的格式化指令中计算,如果该值存在,则\printnames命令在 处理姓名列表时将自动应用,即自动覆盖maxnames/minnames。该功能需要以包选 项uniquelist显式的打开。更多细节和实例见§4.11.4。

parenlevel

圆括号和/或方括号的嵌套层级。该信息仅在§3.1.2.3的parentracker选项打开的情 况下提供。

4.6.3 使用\ifboolexpr和\ifthenelse的判断

第 § 4.6.2节介绍的判断可以与etoolbox宏包提供的\ifboolexpr命令 和ifthen宏包提供的\ifthenelse命令一同使用。这种情况下,其语法略有差 异,判断命令的\(\true\\)和\(\false\)参数自动省略,而直接传递给\\ifboolexpr 或 \ifthenelse。注意,使用这些命令需要一些计算代价。如果不需要一些布尔操作, 使用§4.6.2节的 stand-alone 判断命令更高效。

```
\ifboolexpr{\langle expression \rangle} {\langle true \rangle} {\langle false \rangle}
```

该etoolbox包命令允许进行包括布尔运算和编组的复杂判断。

 $\left\langle tests \right\rangle \left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

该ifthen包命令允许进行包括布尔运算和编组的复杂判断。

Biblatex 提供的附加判断命令仅在标注命令和文献表中使用\ifboolexpr或\ifthenelse命令时可用。

4.6.4 综合命令

本节介绍参考文献著录和标注样式中使用的一些综合命令和小巧工具。

```
\label{lem:condition} $$\operatorname{\continuous}(\alpha) = \langle \alpha \rangle [\langle \alpha \rangle] [\langle \alpha \rangle] $$ \end{\continuous} $$\operatorname{\continuous}(\langle \alpha \rangle) [\langle \alpha \rangle] [\langle \alpha \rangle] $$ $$ \end{\continuous} $$
```

定义一个用于后面\usebibmacro调用的宏。该命令的语法类似于\newcommand,除了\(\(rangle\) pul包含一些数字或标点,但不以斜杠开头。可选参数\(\(arguments\))是一个整数用于指定宏需要处理的参数数量。如果\(\(optional\)\()给出,它指定了该宏的第一个参数的默认值,这第一个参数自动变成为可选参数。相比于\newcommand,当宏已经定义时,\newbibmacro命令会给出一个警告信息,并自动转换为\renewbibmacro命令。类似于\newcommand,该命令的常规形式在定义中使用\long前缀,而带星的命令则没有。如果一个宏声明为 long,它的参数可以包含\par记号。

提供\newbibmacro和\renewbibmacro命令是为了方便使用,样式作者也可以使用\newcommand 或\def。然而,需要注意,共享文件 biblatex.def 中的绝大多数定义都是用\newbibmacro定义的,因此,要使用和修改它们要用相应的方式处理。

 $\label{lem:condition} $$\operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) = \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) = \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) = \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}(\alpha,\alpha) + \operatorname{contional}_{\alpha,\alpha}$

类似于\newbibmacro,但用于重定义(name)。相比于\newcommand,当宏未定义时,\renewbibmacro命令给出一个警告信息,并自动转换为\newbibmacro命令。

 $\providebibmacro{\langle name \rangle}[\langle arguments \rangle][\langle optional \rangle]{\langle definition \rangle} \\ \providebibmacro*{\langle name \rangle}[\langle arguments \rangle][\langle optional \rangle]{\langle definition \rangle}$

类似于\newbibmacro,但仅在〈name〉未定义时定义宏。该命令概念上类似于\providecommand。

\usebibmacro $\{\langle name \rangle\}$ \usebibmacro* $\{\langle name \rangle\}$

该命令执行由\newbibmacro定义的宏 $\langle name \rangle$ 。如果宏带参数,只要简单的跟在 $\langle name \rangle$ 后面即可。该命令的常规形式会处理 $\langle name \rangle$,而带星的命令不会。 $\langle name \rangle$ while the starred variant does not.

 $\verb|\array| savecommand{|\langle command \rangle|} \\ \verb|\array| savecommand{|\langle command \rangle|}$

这两个命令用来保存和恢复〈command〉,其中〈command〉必须是以斜杠开头的命令。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

 $\space{name} \$ \restorebibmacro{ \normale name}

这两个命令用来保存和恢复宏〈name〉,其中〈name〉由\newbibmacro定义的宏的标识。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$,其中 $\langle format \rangle$ 由\DeclareFieldFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

 $\label{lem:continuous} $$\operatorname{centry\ type}] {\langle format \rangle} $$\operatorname{centry\ type}] {\langle format \rangle} $$$

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令 $\langle format \rangle$,其中 $\langle format \rangle$ 由\DeclareListFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\space{2mm} \spa
\rownian \
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令(format), 其 中(format)由\DeclareNameFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它 们主要用于本地化文件中。

如果参考文献宏(name)未定义,展开为(true)否则为(false)。

```
\iffieldformatundef[\langle entry\ type \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\}
                \left(\frac{dentry\ type}{dentry\ type}\right) = \left(\frac{dentry\ type}{dentry\ ty
                \infty type \] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle true \rangle\} \{\langle false \rangle\} \}
```

如果参考文献格式化指令〈format〉未定义,展开为〈true〉否则为〈false〉。 otherwise.

 $\usedriver{\langle code \rangle} {\langle entrytype \rangle}$

执行〈entrytype〉类条目的参考文献驱动。在由\DeclareCiteCommand定义的标注命 令的〈loopcode〉中调用该命令是打印类似于一个参考文献条目的完整标注的简单 方法。诸如\newblock等命令无法用于标注,自动省略。附加的初始化命令可以通 过(code)参数传递。该参数在一个编组内执行,这一编组用于运行相应驱动。注意: 该参数语法上是必须的,但可以留空。也要注意如果autolang包选项打开的话,该 命令会自动切换语言。

 $\bigliar{delta} \bigliar{delta} \aligned \alig$

hyperref的\hypertarget命令的封套⁵⁷。〈name〉是超链接锚的名字,〈text〉的内容作 为超链接锚,可以是任意可打印文字或代码。如果文档中存在refsection环境, (name)是基于当前 refsection 环境。如果hyperref包选项未打开或者hyperref包 未加载,该命令简单的传递(text)变量。另可参见 § 4.10.4节的格式化指令 bibhypertarget_o

\bibhyperlink $\{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle text \rangle\}$

hyperref的\hyperlink命令的包套。(name)是由\bibhypertarget定义的超链接锚 的名字,〈text〉的内容将转变成超链接,可以是任意可打印文字或代码。如果文档 中存在refsection环境,〈name〉是基于当前 refsection 环境。如果hyperref包选项 未打开或者hyperref包未加载,该命令简单的传递(text)变量。另可参见§4.10.4节 的格式化指令 bibhyperlink。

 $\bigliar{bibhyperref[\langle entrykey \rangle] {\langle text \rangle}}$

将(text)转变为指向参考文献表中的(entrykey)(即某一条目)的内部链接。如 果〈entrykey〉省略,该命令使用当前正在处理的条目的引用关键词。该命令用于 将标注转换为可点击的超链接,可以链接到参考文献表中的相应条目。链接目标

⁵⁷wrapper 译为包围器,封套,包套?

由 Biblatex 自动标记。如果文档中有多个文献表,链接目标将是所有文献表中第一个出现的〈*entrykey*〉条目。如果文档中存在refsection环境,则超链接基于当前 refsection 环境。另可参见 § 4.10.4节的格式化指令 bibhyperref。

展开为 $\langle true \rangle$,如果hyperref包选项已打开 (意味着hyperref包已加载),否则展开为 $\langle false \rangle$ 。

$\docsvfield{\langle field \rangle}$

类似于etoolbox包的\docsvlist命令,差别在于它的参数是一个域名。域的值将以一个 comma-separated(英文逗号分隔) 的列表进行解析。如果〈field〉为定义,该命令展开为空字符串。

$\forcsvfield{\langle handler \rangle}{\langle field \rangle}$

类似于etoolbox包的\forcsvlist命令,差别在于它的参数是一个域名。域的值将以一个 comma-separated(英文逗号分隔) 的列表进行解析。如果 $\langle field \rangle$ 为定义,该命令展开为空字符串

$\MakeCapital{\langle text \rangle}$

类似于\MakeUppercase,但仅将 $\langle text \rangle$ 的第一个可打印字符转换为大写。注意:\MakeUppercase命令的限制也适用于这一命令。即: $\langle text \rangle$ 中的所有命令必须是鲁棒的或者以\protect为前缀,因为在大写操作中 $\langle text \rangle$ 需要展开。除了 Ascii 字符和标准重音命令外,该命令也处理inputenc包的活动字符和babel包的缩略词。如果 $\langle text \rangle$ 以一个控制序列开头,不做任何大写操作。该命令是鲁棒的。

$\MakeSentenceCase{\langle text \rangle}$ $\MakeSentenceCase*{\langle text \rangle}$

将〈text〉参数转换为 sentence case(句子模式),即字符串中的第一个单词首字母大写而剩下其他部分转换为小写。该命令是鲁棒的。带星号的命令与常规命令(不带星号)的差别在于它能考虑条目的语言,根据langid域指定。只有当langid未定义或者定为由\DeclareCaseLangs命令(见后面)声明的某种语言时,它才将〈text〉转换为句子模式。58 否则〈text〉不做任何改变。推荐使用\MakeSentenceCase*而不是常规命令。两个命令都支持bib文件的传统 BibTeX 规范,即: 遇到任何以花括号包围的内容大小写都不作变化,例如:

\MakeSentenceCase{an Introduction to LaTeX}
\MakeSentenceCase{an Introduction to {LaTeX}}

将得到:

⁵⁸默认情况下,如下语言支持转换: american, british, canadian, english, australian, newzealand as well as the aliases USenglish and UKenglish. 要扩展或修改该列表请使用\DeclareCaseLangs命令。

```
An introduction to latex
An introduction to LaTeX
```

在以传统 BibTeX 方式设计的bib文件中,为阻止字母的 case-changing(大小写变化),将单个字母用花括号包围是一种相当常见的方法。

```
title = {An Introduction to {L}a{T}e{X}}
```

这种方式存在一个问题是括号会压缩被包围字母两侧的字距。最好的方式是如第 一个例子所示的那样,将整个单词都包围起来。

$\mbox{\label{localization} $$\mbox{\localization}$] [\langle postpro\rangle] {\langle text\rangle}$}$

该命令用于域格式化指令中,包括标注命令的 $\langle postnote \rangle$ 参数和文献条目的pages域的格式化。默认情况下,它将会解析 $\langle text \rangle$ 参数,并且以'p.' or 'pp.' 做为前缀。可选参数 $\langle pagination \rangle$ 保存指示 pagination 类型的域名,可以是pagination或bookpagination,默认是pagination。前缀与 $\langle text \rangle$ 之间的间距可以通过重定义 $\langle ppspace命令来调整。默认是一个不可断行的词内空格。详见 §§ 2.3.10和 3.13.3。另可参见<math>\langle postpro \rangle$ 指定了用于对 $\langle text \rangle$ 后处理的宏。如果只给出一个可选参数,将作为 $\langle pagination \rangle$,下面是两个典型例子:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{postnote}{\mkpageprefix[pagination]{#1}}
\DeclareFieldFormat{pages}{\mkpageprefix[bookpagination]{#1}}
```

第一个例子中的可选参数pagination可以省略。

$\mbox{\label{localization} $$\mbox{\localization}$] [\langle postpro \rangle] {\langle text \rangle}$}$

该命令类似于\mkpageprefix,差别在于它用于条目的pagetotal域,即它将打印"123 pages"而不是"page 123"。可选参数 $\langle pagination \rangle$ 默认是bookpagination。在 $\langle text \rangle$ 和后缀之间的间距可由对\ppspace重定义进行调整。可选参数 $\langle postpro \rangle$ 指定了用于对 $\langle text \rangle$ 后处理的宏。如果只给出一个可选参数,将作为 $\langle pagination \rangle$,下面是一个典型例子:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{pagetotal}{\mkpagetotal[bookpagination]{#1}}
```

在本例中可选参数bookpagination可省略。

```
\label{eq:mkcomprange} $$ \mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$\m
```

该命令,用于域格式化指令,将〈text〉参数解析为页码范围并且压缩这些范围。扫描程序将\bibrangedash和 hyphens 作为范围间隔符。支持范围列表

Input	Output		
	mincomprange=10	mincomprange=100	mincomprange=1000
11–15	11-5	11–15	11-15
111–115	111-5	111-5	111-115
1111–1115	1111-5	1111-5	1111-5
	maxcomprange=1000	maxcomprange=100	maxcomprange=10
1111–1115	1111-5	1111-5	1111-5
1111–1155	1111-55	1111-55	1111-1155
1111–1555	1111-555	1111-1555	1111-1555
	mincompwidth=1	mincompwidth=10	mincompwidth=100
1111–1115	1111-5	1111-15	1111-115
1111–1155	1111-55	1111-55	1111-155
1111-1555	1111-555	1111-555	1111-555

Table 14: \mkcomprange setup

以\bibrangessep(Biber⁵⁹) 或 commas/semicolon(BibTeX) 分隔。如果因为某些原因需要隐藏来自 list/range 扫描程序的一个字符,那么可以将该字符或者整个字符串用花括号包围起来。可选参数《postpro》指定了一个用于对《text》进行后处理的宏。怎么使用该参数见\mkcomprange命令。带星的命令的差别在于《postpro》参数应用于列表的各项。例如:

注意:\mkcomprange命令首先处理,\mkpageprefix则作为后处理器。也要注意〈postpro〉被额外的一对花括号包围。这仅在特殊情况下需要,为阻止 LaTeX 的可选参数扫描器与嵌套的方括号混淆。带星的命令与不带星命令的差别是它应用于值得列表,例如:

```
\mkcomprange[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
\mkcomprange*[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
```

将输出:

```
pp. 5, 123-9, 423-39
p. 5, pp. 123-9, pp. 423-39
```

```
\label{eq:mkfirstpage} $$ \mbox{ $$\mbox{$mkfirstpage}(\postpro)] {$\langle text\rangle$} $$ $$ \mbox{$mkfirstpage}(\postpro)] {$\langle text\rangle$} $$
```

该命令,用于域格式化指令,将〈text〉参数解析为页码范围并且仅打印这些范围的起始页码。扫描程序将\bibrangedash和 hyphens 作为范围间隔符。支持范围列表

⁵⁹Biber 总会将 commas/semicolon(逗号或冒号) 的多范围分隔符转换为 \bibrangessep ,因此可以在样式中控制。

以\bibrangessep(Biber⁶⁰) 或 commas/semicolon(BibTeX) 分隔。如果因为某些原因需要隐藏来自 list/range 扫描程序的一个字符,那么可以将该字符或者整个字符串用花括号包围起来。可选参数〈postpro〉指定了一个用于对〈text〉进行后处理的宏。怎么使用该参数见\mkcomprange命令。带星的命令的差别在于〈postpro〉参数应用于列表的各项。例如:

```
\mkfirstpage[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
\mkfirstpage*[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
```

将输出:

```
pp. 5, 123, 423
p. 5, p. 123, p. 423
```

\rangelen{\(\rangefield\)}该命令将其参数解析为一个范围,并返回范围的长度。对于开口的范围将返回-1。这可以作为样式中一些判断的一部分,例如将'f' 作为只有两页的范围的后缀,比如范围'36-37'将打印'36f'。这可以通过命令\\ifnumcomp实现:

- •Calculate the total of multiple ranges in the same field such as '1-10, 20-30'
- •Handle implicit ranges such as '22-4' and '130-33'
- •Handle roman numeral ranges in upper and lower case and consisting of both ASCII and Unicode roman numeral representations.

下面是一些例子:

\rangelen命令可以用于判断中:

```
pages = '10'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '1'
pages = '10-15'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '6'
pages = '10-15,47-53'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '13'
pages = '10-'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '-1'
pages = '-10'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '-1'
pages = 48-9
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '2'
pages = '172-77'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '6'
pages = 'i-vi'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '6'
pages = 'X-XX'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '11'
                                \rangelen{pages} returns '6'
pages = 'VII-xii'
pages = 'VII-xii, 145-7, 135-39'
                               \rangelen{pages} returns '14'
```

⁶⁰Biber 总会将 commas/semicolon(逗号或冒号) 的多范围分隔符转换为 \bibrangessep ,因此可以在样式中控制。

```
\DeclareNumChars{\langle characters \rangle}
\DeclareNumChars*{\langle characters \rangle}
```

该命令设置§4.6.2节的\ifnumeral,\ifnumerals,和\ifpages命令。该设置也将影响\iffieldnum,\iffieldnums,\iffieldpages,\mkpageprefix和\mkpagetotal命令。 ⟨characters⟩参数是一个无分隔符的符号列表,将作为数字的一部分进行处理。不带星命令将替换当前设置,带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认设置为:

\DeclareNumChars{.}

这意味着 (节或者其他) 数值比如 '3.4.5' 将被认为是一个数字。注意,默认检测的是阿拉伯和罗马数字,没有必要对此做显式声明。

 $\label{lem:decomposition} $$ \end{center} \ \DeclareRangeChars*{$\langle characters \rangle$} $$$

该命令设置§4.6.2的\ifnumerals和\ifpages命令。其设置还将影响\iffieldnums,\iffieldpages,\mkpageprefix和\mkpagetotal。⟨characters⟩参数是一个无分隔符的符号列表,将作为范围指示符进行处理。不带星命令将替换当前设置,带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认设置为:

\DeclareRangeChars{~,;-+/}

这意味着比如'3-5', '35+', '8/9' 等字符串会被\ifnumerals和\ifpages认为是一个范围。这些字符串中的非范围字符将被认为是数字。因此,类似于'3a-5a' 和'35b+'之类的字符串默认情况下不被认为是范围。更多细节详见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.13.3。

该命令类似于\DeclareRangeChars,差别在于〈commands〉参数是一个无分隔符的命令列表,将被视为范围指示符。不带星命令将替换当前设置,带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认列表相当长,应该覆盖所有一般情况。下面是一个简单例子:

\DeclareRangeCommands{\&\bibrangedash\textendash\textemdash\psq\psqq}

更多细节参见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.13.3。

该 命 令 类 似 于\DeclareRangeCommands, 差 别 在 于 它 仅 影响\ifpages和\iffieldpages判断,而不影响\ifnumerals 和\iffieldnums。默认设置为:

\DeclarePageCommands{\pno\ppno}

\mathbb{C}_{code}

该命令用于临时重定义一些命令,若不重定义,这些命令将与 § 4.6.2节的\ifnumeral, \ifnumerals, \ifpages命令执行的判断冲突。该设置也将影响\iffieldnum, \iffieldnums, \iffieldpages, \mkpageprefix和\mkpagetotal。这些命令将在组内执行 $\langle code \rangle$ 。因为上述命令将展开为字符串用于分析,可以利用将冲突命令展开为空字符串 (将被判断命令忽略)的方式来移除这些命令。更多细节参见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.13.3。

$\DeclareCaseLangs{\langle languages \rangle}$ $\DeclareCaseLangs*{\langle languages \rangle}$

定义语言列表,该列表在\MakeSentenceCase*命令将一个字符串转换成句子时考虑。〈languages〉参数是一个由babel/polyglossia语言标识构成的 comma-separated (逗号分隔) 列表。不带星命令用于替换当前设置,而带星的命令用于附加当前列表。默认的设置为:

\DeclareCaseLangs{%

american, british, canadian, english, australian, newzealand, USenglish,

→ UKenglish}

语言标识的列表见babel/polyglossia手册和表 3。

$\BibliographyWarning{\langle message \rangle}$

该命令类似于\PackageWarning,但打印内容除了输入行号外还有当前处理条目的引用关键词。如果《message》相当长,可以使用\MessageBreak命令来断行。注意:标准的\PackageWarning命令在参考文献中使用时无法提供一个有意义的提示,因为其打印的输入行号只是\printbibliography命令所在的行号。

\pagetrackertrue \pagetrackerfalse

这些命令将打开或关闭局部引用追踪器(这将影响来自 § 4.6.2节的\iffirstonpage和\ifsamepage判断)。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除页码追踪,可以在\DeclareCiteCommand命令的《precode》参数中使用\pagetrackerfalse。详见§ 4.3.1。注意: 当全局页码追踪关闭时,这些命令无效。

\citetrackertrue \citetrackerfalse

这些命令将打开或关闭所有的局部引用追踪器 (这将影响来自 § 4.6.2节的 \ifciteseen, \ifciteibid, 和\ifciteidem判断)。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除页码追踪,可以在\DeclareCiteCommand命令的 $\langle precode \rangle$ 参数中使用\citetrackerfalse。详见 § 4.3.1。注意: 当全局追踪关闭时,这些命令无效。

\backtrackertrue \backtrackerfalse

这些命令将打开或关闭所有的局部 backref 追踪器。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除反向链接追踪,可以在\DeclareCiteCommand命令的《precode》参数中使用\backtrackerfalse。注意: 当 backref 选项未进行全局设置,这些命令无效。

4.7 标点和间距

The Biblatex package provides elaborate facilities designed to manage and track punctuation and spacing in the bibliography and in citations. These facilities work on two levels. The high-level commands discussed in § 4.7.1 deal with punctuation and whitespace inserted by the bibliography style between the individual segments of a bibliography entry. The commands in §§ 4.7.2、4.7.3、4.7.4 work at a lower level. They use TeX's space factor and modified space factor codes to track punctuation in a robust and efficient way. This way it is possible to detect trailing punctuation marks within fields, not only those explicitly inserted between fields. The same technique is also used for automatic capitalization of localisation strings, see \DeclareCapitalPunctuation in § 4.7.5 as well as § 4.8 for details. Note that these facilities are only made available locally in citations and bibliographies. They will not affect any other part of a document.

4.7.1 块和单元标点 Block and Unit Punctuation

The major segments of a bibliography entry are 'blocks' and 'units'. A block is the larger segment of the two, a unit is shorter or at most equal in length. For example, the values of fields such as title or note usually form a unit which is separated from subsequent data by a period or a comma. A block may comprise several fields which are treated as separate units, for example publisher, location, and year. The segmentation of an entry into blocks and units is at the discretion of the bibliography style. An entry is segmented by inserting \newblock and \newunit commands at suitable places and \finentry at the very end (see § 4.2.3 for an example). See also § 4.11.7 for some practical hints.

\newblock Records the end of a block. This command does not print anything, it merely marks the end of the block. The block delimiter \newblockpunct will be inserted by a subsequent \printtext, \printfield, \printlist, \printnames, or \bibstring command. You may use \newblock at suitable places without having to worry about spurious blocks. A new block will only be started by the next \printfield (or similar) command if this command prints anything. See § 4.11.7 for further details.

\newunit Records the end of a unit and puts the default delimiter \newunitpunct in the punctuation buffer. This command does not print anything, it merely marks the end of the unit. The punctuation buffer will be inserted by the next \printtext, \printfield, \printlist, \printnames, or \bibstring command. You may use \newunit after commands like \printfield without having to worry about spurious punctuation and whitespace. The buffer will only be inserted by the next \printfield or similar

command if both fields are non-empty. This also applies to \printtext, \printlist, \printnames, and \bibstring. See § 4.11.7 for further details.

\finentry Inserts \finentrypunct. This command should be used at the very end of every bibliography entry.

```
\operatorname{setunit}\{\langle punctuation \rangle\}
\operatorname{\mathsf{Netunit}}^{*}\{\langle punctuation \rangle\}
```

The \setunit command is similar to \newunit except that it uses \(\(\text{punctuation} \) instead of \newunitpunct. The starred variant differs from the regular version in that it checks if the last \printtext, \printfield, \printlist, \printnames, or \bibstring command did actually print anything. If not, it does nothing.

```
\printunit{\langle punctuation \rangle}
\printunit*{\langle punctuation\rangle}
```

The \printunit command is similar to \setunit except that \(\punctuation \) persists in the buffer. This ensures that \(\frac{punctuation}{} \) is inserted before the next non-empty field printed by the \printtext, \printfield, \printlist, \printnames, or \bibstring commands—regardless of any intermediate calls to \newunit or \setunit.

```
\strut {\langle command \rangle}
```

This command, which is intended for use in field formatting directives, provides an alternative way of dealing with unit punctuation after a field printed in a different font (for example, a title printed in italics). The standard LaTeX way of dealing with this is adding a small amount of space, the so-called italic correction. This command allows adapting the punctuation to the font of the preceding field. The \(\chiommand \) should be a text font command which takes one argument, such as \emph or \textbf. This command will only affect punctuation marks inserted by one of the commands from § 4.7.3. The font adaption is applied to the next punctuation mark only and will be reset automatically thereafter. If you want to reset it manually before it takes effect, issue \resetpunctfont. If the punctfont package option is disabled, this command does nothing. Note that the \mkbibemph, \mkbibitalic and \mkbibbold wrappers from § 4.10.4 incorporate this feature by default.

\resetpunctfont This command resets the unit punctuation font defined with \setpunctfont before it takes effect. If the punctfont package option is disabled, this command does nothing.

4.7.2 标点判断 Punctuation Tests

The following commands may be used to test for preceding punctuation marks at any point in citations and the bibliography.

```
\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle
```

Executes $\langle true \rangle$ if preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot, and $\langle false \rangle$ otherwise.

```
\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle
```

Executes $\langle true \rangle$ if preceded by a terminal punctuation mark, and $\langle false \rangle$ otherwise. A terminal punctuation mark is any punctuation mark which has been registered for automatic capitalization, either with \DeclareCapitalPunctuation or by default, see § 4.7.5 for details. By default, this applies to periods, exclamation marks, and question marks.

Executes $\langle true \rangle$ if preceded by the punctuation mark $\langle character \rangle$, and $\langle false \rangle$ otherwise. The $\langle character \rangle$ may be a comma, a semicolon, a colon, a period, an exclamation mark, a question mark, or an asterisk. Note that a period denotes an end-of-sentence period. Use the asterisk to test for the dot after an abbreviation. If this command is used in a formatting directive for name lists, i. e., in the argument to \DeclareNameFormat, the $\langle character \rangle$ may also be an apostrophe.

$\left\langle true \right\rangle \left\langle false \right\rangle$

Executes $\langle true \rangle$ if preceded by any prefix character declared by \DeclarePrefChars.

4.7.3 添加标点 Adding Punctuation

下面的命令设计用来重复标点。参考文献和标注样式总需要使用这些命令来代替原样输出标点符号。本节中所有的\add...命令自动利用\unspace命令移除前面的空白 (见 § 4.7.4)。注意:下面讨论的所有的\add...命令的作用是宏包默认的,无论 Biblatex 换哪种语言都会重新恢复。其作用可以通过\DeclarePunctuationPairs命令进行调整,见 § 4.7.5。节

The following commands are designed to prevent double punctuation marks. Bibliography and citation styles should always use these commands instead of literal punctuation marks. All \add... commands in this section automatically remove preceding whitespace with \unspace (see § 4.7.4). Note that the behavior of all \add... commands discussed below is the package default, which is restored whenever Biblatex switches languages. This behavior may be adjusted with \DeclarePunctuationPairs from § 4.7.5.

\adddot 如果前面输出的不是任何一种标点符号,那么添加一个句点 (period)。该命令的目的是在一个缩写后面插入点 (dot)。以这种方式插入的点被认为与其它标点命令插入的标点性质相同。该命令也用来将前面如实输出的句点 (原样输出的句点, literal period) 转换成一个缩写的点。Adds a period unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark. The purpose of this command is inserting the dot after an abbreviation. Any dot inserted this way is recognized as such by the other punctuation commands. This command may also be used to turn a previously inserted literal period into an abbreviation dot.

\addcomma 如果前面输出不是一个逗号 (comma)、分号 (semicolon)、冒号 (colon) 和句点 (period),那么添加一个逗号。Adds a comma unless it is preceded by another comma, a semicolon, a colon, or a period.

\addsemicolon Adds a semicolon unless it is preceded by a comma, another semicolon, a colon, or a period.

\addcolon Adds a colon unless it is preceded by a comma, a semicolon, another colon, or a period.

如果前面输出不是一个缩写点或其他任何标点符号,那么添加一个句号。该命令也可以用来将前面插入的缩写点转换为句号,比如在句子的末尾⁶¹。Adds a period unless it is preceded by an abbreviation dot or any other punctuation mark. This command may also be used to turn a previously inserted abbreviation dot into a period, for example at the end of a sentence.

\addexclam Adds an exclamation mark unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot.

\addquestion Adds a question mark unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot.

\isdot 当前面输出的是句号的时候,将其转换为缩写的点,如果前面是其它符号那么不添加任何符号。Turns a previously inserted literal period into an abbreviation dot. In contrast to \adddot, nothing is inserted if this command is not preceded by a period.

\nopunct Adds an internal marker which will cause the next punctuation command to print nothing.

4.7.4 添加空格 Adding Whitespace

The following commands are designed to prevent spurious whitespace. Bibliography and citation styles should always use these commands instead of literal whitespace. In contrast to the commands in §§ 4.7.2 和 4.7.3, they are not restricted to citations and the bibliography but available globally.

\unspace Removes preceding whitespace, i. e., removes all skips and penalties from the end of the current horizontal list. This command is implicitly executed by all of the following commands.

\addspace Adds a breakable interword space.

\addnbspace Adds a non-breakable interword space.

\addthinspace Adds a breakable thin space.

\addnbthinspace Adds a non-breakable thin space. This is similar to \, and \thinspace.

\addlowpenspace Adds a space penalized by the value of the lownamepenalty counter, see §§ 3.10.3 和 4.10.3 for details.

\addhighpenspace Adds a space penalized by the value of the highnamepenalty counter, see §§ 3.10.3 和 4.10.3 for details.

⁶¹不是很理解,前面如果是缩写的点,那么不加入句号,那么缩写的点就转变为句号了?

\addlpthinspace Similar to \addlowpenspace but adds a breakable thin space.

\addhpthinspace Similar to \addhighpenspace but adds a breakable thin space.

 \addabbrvspace Adds a space penalized by the value of the abbrvpenalty counter, see §§ 3.10.3 和 4.10.3

for details.

\addabthinspace Similar to \addabbrvspace but using a thin space.

\adddotspace Executes \adddot and adds a space penalized by the value of the abbrvpenalty counter,

see §§ 3.10.3 和 4.10.3 for details.

 $\verb| Adds a breakable slash|. This command differs from the \verb| Slash| command in the LaTeX| \\$

kernel in that a linebreak after the slash is not penalized at all.

Note that the commands in this section implicitly execute \unspace to remove spurious whitespace, hence they may be used to override each other. For example, you may use \addnbspace to transform a previously inserted interword space into a non-breakable one and \addspace to turn a non-breakable space into a breakable one.

62

4.7.5 标点设置和大写 Configuring Punctuation and Capitalization

The following commands configure various features related to punctuation and automatic capitalization. 63

$\DeclarePrefChars{\langle characters \rangle}$

This command declares characters that are to be treated specially when testing to see if \bibnamedelimc is to be inserted between a name prefix and a family name. If a character is in the list of \characters\,\bibnamedelimc is not inserted. It is used to allow abbreviated name prefices like 'd'Argent' where no space should be inserted after the apostrophe. The default setting is:

\DeclarePrefChars{'}

\DeclareAutoPunctuation{\langle characters\rangle}

This command defines the punctuation marks to be considered by the citation commands as they scan ahead for punctuation. Note that $\langle characters \rangle$ is an undelimited list of characters. Valid $\langle characters \rangle$ are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. The default setting is:

\DeclareAutoPunctuation{.,;:!?}

⁶²注意有的时候\unspace看似能够起到作用,但其实并不能随意使用的。在 beamer 中 printtext 老是有些问题,可能是实现 printtext 命令的依赖命令,在 beamer 中重定义了,跟 aritcle 文档类中的情况差别很大。

⁶³这里的 capitalization 是大写的意思么?

This definition is restored automatically whenever the autopunct package option is set to true. Executing \DeclareAutoPunctuation{} is equivalent to setting autopunct=false, i. e., it disables this feature.

$\DeclareCapitalPunctuation{\langle characters \rangle}$

When Biblatex inserts localisation strings, i. e., key terms such as 'edition' or 'volume', it automatically capitalizes them after terminal punctuation marks. This command defines the punctuation marks which will cause localisation strings to be capitalized if one of them precedes a string. Note that $\langle characters \rangle$ is an undelimited list of characters. Valid $\langle characters \rangle$ are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. The package default is:

\DeclareCapitalPunctuation{.!?}

Using \DeclareCapitalPunctuation with an empty argument is equivalent to disabling automatic capitalization. Since this feature is language specific, this command must be used in the argument to \DefineBibliographyExtras (when used in the preamble) or \DeclareBibliographyExtras (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.9 和 4.9 for details. By default, strings are capitalized after periods, exclamation marks, and question marks. All strings are generally capitalized at the beginning of a paragraph (in fact whenever TeX is in vertical mode).

$\DeclarePunctuationPairs{\langle identifier \rangle} {\langle characters \rangle}$

Use this command to declare valid pairs of punctuation marks. This will affect the punctuation commands discussed in § 4.7.3. For example, the description of \addcomma states that this command adds a comma unless it is preceded by another comma, a semicolon, a colon, or a period. In other words, commas after abbreviation dots, exclamation marks, and question marks are permitted. These valid pairs are declared as follows:

\DeclarePunctuationPairs{comma}{*!?}

The $\langle identifier \rangle$ selects the command to be configured. The identifiers correspond to the names of the punctuation commands from § 4.7.3 without the \add prefix, i. e., valid $\langle identifier \rangle$ strings are dot, comma, semicolon, colon, period, exclam, question. The $\langle characters \rangle$ argument is an undelimited list of punctuation marks. Valid $\langle characters \rangle$ are comma, semicolon, colon, period, exclamation mark, question mark, and asterisk. A period in the $\langle characters \rangle$ argument denotes an end-of-sentence period, an asterisk the dot after an abbreviation. This is the default setup, which is automatically restored whenever Biblatex switches languages and corresponds to the behavior described in § 4.7.3:

\DeclarePunctuationPairs{dot}{}

```
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{comma}{*!?}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{semicolon}{*!?}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{colon}{*!?}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{period}{}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{exclam}{*}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{question}{*}
```

Since this feature is language specific, \DeclarePunctuationPairs must be used in the argument to \DefineBibliographyExtras (when used in the preamble) or \DeclareBibliographyExtras (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.9 和 4.9 for details. Note that some localisation modules may use a setup which is different from the package default.64

$\DeclareQuotePunctuation{\langle characters \rangle}$

This command controls 'American-style' punctuation. The \mkbibquote wrapper from § 4.10.4 can interact with the punctuation facilities discussed in §§ 4.7.1、4.7.3、4.7.4. Punctuation marks after \mkbibquote will be moved inside the quotes if they have been registered with \DeclareQuotePunctuation. Note that \(\characters \) is an undelimited list of characters. Valid $\langle characters \rangle$ are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. Here is an example:

```
\DeclareQuotePunctuation{.,}
```

Executing \DeclareQuotePunctuation{} is equivalent to disabling this feature. This is the package default. Since this feature is language specific, this command must be used in the argument to \DefineBibliographyExtras (when used in the preamble) or \DeclareBibliographyExtras (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.9 和 4.9 for details. See also § 3.11.1.

\uspunctuation

A shorthand using the lower-level commands \DeclareQuotePunctuation and \DeclarePunctuationPairs to activate 'American-style' punctuation. See § 3.11.1 for details. This shorthand is provided for convenience only. The effective settings are applied by the lower-level commands.

\stdpunctuation Undoes the settings applied by \uspunctuation, restoring standard punctuation. As standard punctuation is the default setting, you only need this command to override a previously executed \uspunctuation command. See § 3.11.1 for details.

4.7.6 Correcting Punctuation Tracking

The facilities for punctuation tracking and automatic capitalization are very reliable under normal circumstances, but there are always marginal cases which may

⁶⁴As of this writing, the american module uses different settings for 'American-style' punctuation.

require manual intervention. Typical cases are localisation strings printed as the first word in a footnote (which is usually treated as the beginning of a paragraph as far as capitalization is concerned, but TeX is not in vertical mode at this point) or punctuation after periods which are not really end-of-sentence periods (for example, after an ellipsis like "[...]" a command such as \addperiod would do nothing since parentheses and brackets are transparent to the punctuation tracker). In such cases, use the following commands in bibliography and citation styles to mark the beginning or middle of a sentence if and where required:

\bibsentence

This command marks the beginning of a sentence. A localisation string immediately after this command will be capitalized and the punctuation tracker is reset, i. e., this command hides all preceding punctuation marks from the punctuation tracker and enforces capitalization.

\midsentence

This command marks the middle of a sentence. A localisation string immediately after this command will not be capitalized and the punctuation tracker is reset, i. e., this command hides all preceding punctuation marks from the punctuation tracker and suppresses capitalization.

\midsentence*

The starred variant of \midsentence differs from the regular one in that a preceding abbreviation dot is not hidden from the punctuation tracker, i. e., any code after \midsentence* will see a preceding abbreviation dot. All other punctuation marks are hidden from the punctuation tracker and capitalization is suppressed.

4.8 本地化字符串 Localization Strings

Localization strings are key terms such as 'edition' or 'volume' which are automatically translated by Biblatex's localisation modules. See § 4.9 for an overview and § 4.9.2 for a list of all strings supported by default. The commands in this section are used to print the localised term.

 $\bigsymbol{bibstring}[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}$

Prints the localisation string $\langle key \rangle$, where $\langle key \rangle$ is an identifier in lowercase letters (see § 4.9.2). The string will be capitalized as required, see § 4.7.5 for details. Depending on the abbreviate package option from § 3.1.2.1, \bibstring prints the short or the long version of the string. If localisation strings are nested, i.e., if \bibstring is used in another string, it will behave like \bibxstring. If the $\langle wrapper \rangle$ argument is given, the string is passed to the $\langle wrapper \rangle$ for formatting. This is intended for font commands such as \emph.

 $\bigliar{biblstring}[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}$

Similar to \bibstring but always prints the long string, ignoring the abbreviate option.

```
\bigstyle \big
                                                                                        Similar to \bibstring but always prints the short string, ignoring the abbreviate op-
                                                                                        tion.
        \bibcpstring[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                        Similar to \bibstring but the term is always capitalized.
\bibcplstring[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                       Similar to \biblstring but the term is always capitalized.
\bibcpsstring[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                       Similar to \bibsstring but the term is always capitalized.
        Similar to \bibstring but the whole term is uppercased.
\bigliar{bibuclstring}[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                       Similar to \biblstring but the whole term is uppercased.
Similar to \bibsstring but the whole term is uppercased.
        \bigliar{\label{limits} \bigliar{\label{limits} \label{limits} \label{limits} \bigliar{\label{limits} \label{limits} \label{limits} \bigliar{\label{limits} \label{limits} \bigliar{\label{limits} \label{limits} \bigliar{\label{limits} \bigliar{\label} \bigliar{\label{limits} \bigliar{\label} \bigliar{\label}
                                                                                       Similar to \bibstring but the whole term is lowercased.
\bible \cline 
                                                                                       Similar to \biblstring but the whole term is lowercased.
\bible{csstring}[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                       Similar to \bibsstring but the whole term is lowercased.
              \bibxstring\{\langle key \rangle\}
                                                                                      A simplified but expandable version of \bibstring. Note that this variant does not
                                                                                        capitalize automatically, nor does it hook into the punctuation tracker. It is intended for
                                                                                        special cases in which strings are nested or an expanded localisation string is required
                                                                                       in a test.
        \bibxlstring[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
```

Similar to \bibxstring but always uses the long string, ignoring the abbreviate option.

```
\bibxsstring[\langle wrapper \rangle] \{\langle key \rangle\}
```

Similar to \bibxstring but always uses the short string, ignoring the abbreviate option.

\mainlang

Switches from the current language to the main document language. This can be used the $\langle wrapper \rangle$ argument in the localisation string commands above.

4.9 本地化模块 Localization Modules

A localisation module provides translations for key terms such as 'edition' or 'volume' as well as definitions for language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. These definitions are provided in files with the suffix lbx. The base name of the file must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia packages. The lbx files may also be used to map babel/polyglossia language names to the backend modules of the Biblatex package. All localisation modules are loaded on demand in the document body. Note that the contents of the file are processed in a group and that the category code of the character @ is temporarily set to 'letter'.

4.9.1 本地化命令 Localization Commands

The user-level versions of the localisation commands were already introduced in § 3.9. When used in lbx files, however, the syntax of localisation commands is different from the user syntax in the preamble and the configuration file. When used in localisation files, there is no need to specify the $\langle language \rangle$ because the mapping of strings to a language is already provided by the name of the lbx file.

$\DeclareBibliographyStrings\{\langle definitions\rangle\}\$

This command is only available in lbx files. It is used to define localisation strings. The $\langle definitions \rangle$ consist of $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ pairs which assign an expression to an identifier. A complete list of all keys supported by default is given is § 4.9.2. Note that the syntax of the value is different in lbx files. The value assigned to a key consists of two expressions, each of which is wrapped in an additional pair of brackets. This is best shown by example:

```
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{%
bibliography = {{Bibliography}{Bibliography}},
shorthands = {{List of Abbreviations}{Abbreviations}},
editor = {{editor}{ed.}},
editors = {{editors}{eds.}},
```

The first value is the long, written out expression, the second one is an abbreviated or short form. Both strings must always be given even though they may be identical if an expression is always (or never) abbreviated. Depending on the setting of the abbreviate package option (see § 3.1.2.1), Biblatex selects one expression when loading the lbx file. There is also a special key named inherit which copies the strings from a different language. This is intended for languages which only differ in a few expressions, such as German and Austrian or American and British English. For example, here are the complete definitions for Austrian:

```
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{%
  inherit = {german},
  january = {{J\"anner}{J\"an.}},
}
```

The above examples are slightly simplified. Real localisation files should use the punctuation and formatting commands discussed in §§ $4.7.3 \, \text{Ål} \, 3.10$ instead of literal punctuation. Here is an excerpt from a real localisation file:

```
bibliography = {{Bibliography}{Bibliography}},
shorthands = {{List of Abbreviations}{Abbreviations}},
editor = {{editor}{ed\adddot}},
editors = {{editors}{eds\adddot}},
byeditor = {{edited by}{ed\adddotspace by}},
mathesis = {{Master's thesis}{MA\addabbrvspace thesis}},
```

Note the handling of abbreviation dots, the spacing in abbreviated expressions, and the capitalization in the example above. All expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. The Biblatex package will automatically capitalize the first word when required at the beginning of a sentence, see \DeclareCapitalPunctuation in § 4.7.5 for details. Expressions intended for use in headings are special. They should be capitalized in a way that is suitable for titling and should not be abbreviated (but they may have a short form).

$\InheritBibliographyStrings{\langle language \rangle}$

This command is only available in lbx files. It copies the localisation strings for $\langle language \rangle$ to the current language, as specified by the name of the lbx file.

\DeclareBibliographyExtras $\{\langle code \rangle\}$

This command is only available in 1bx files. It is used to adapt language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. The $\langle code \rangle$, which may be arbitrary LaTeX code, will usually consist of redefinitions of the formatting commands from § 4.10.2.

\UndeclareBibliographyExtras $\{\langle code \rangle\}$

This command is only available in lbx files. It is used to restore any formatting commands modified with \DeclareBibliographyExtras. If a redefined command is included in § 4.10.2, there is no need to restore its previous definition since these commands are localised by all language modules anyway.

$\InheritBibliographyExtras{\langle language \rangle}$

This command is only available in lbx files. It copies the bibliography extras for $\langle language \rangle$ to the current language, as specified by the name of the lbx file.

$\DeclareHyphenationExceptions{\langle text \rangle}$

This command corresponds to \DefineHyphenationExceptions from § 3.9. The difference is that it is only available in lbx files and that the $\langle language \rangle$ argument is omitted. The hyphenation exceptions will affect the language of the lbx file currently being processed.

\DeclareRedundantLanguages $\{\langle language, language, ... \rangle\}$ $\{\langle langid, langid, ... \rangle\}$

This command provides the language mappings required by the clearlang option from § 3.1.2.1. The $\langle language \rangle$ is the string given in the language field (without the optional lang prefix); $\langle langid \rangle$ is babel/polyglossia's language identifier, as given in the optional argument of \usepackage when loading babel or the argument of \setdefaultlanguage or \setdefaultlanguages when using polyglossia. This command may be used in lbx files or in the document preamble. Here are some examples:

```
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{french}{french}
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{german}{german, ngerman, austrian, nswissgerman, swissgerman}
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{english, american}{english, american, british, canadian, australian, newzealand, USenglish, UKenglish}
```

Note that this feature needs to be enabled globally with the clearlang option from § 3.1.2.1. If it is disabled, all mappings will be ignored. If the $\langle langid \rangle$ parameter is blank, Biblatex will clear the mappings for the corresponding $\langle language \rangle$, i. e., the feature will be disabled for this $\langle language \rangle$ only.

$\DeclareLanguageMapping{\langle language \rangle} {\langle file \rangle}$

This command maps a babel/polyglossia language identifier to an lbx file. The $\langle language \rangle$ must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia package, i. e., one of the identifiers listed in $\gtrsim 3$. The $\langle file \rangle$ argument is the name of an alternative lbx file without the .lbx suffix. Declaring the same mapping more than once is possible. Subsequent declarations will simply overwrite any previous ones. This command may only be used in the preamble. See § 4.11.8 for further details.

$\NewBibliographyString\{\langle key \rangle\}$

This command, which may be used in the preamble (including cbx and bbx files) as well as in lbx files, declares new localisation strings, i.e., it initializes a new $\langle key \rangle$ to be used in the $\langle definitions \rangle$ of \DefineBibliographyStrings or \DeclareBibliographyStrings. The $\langle key \rangle$ argument may also be a comma-separated list of key names. When used in an lbx, the $\langle key \rangle$ is initialized only for the language specified by the name of the lbx file. The keys listed in § 4.9.2 are defined by default.

4.9.2 Localization Keys

The localisation keys in this section are defined by default and covered by the localisation files which come with Biblatex. Note that these strings are only available in citations, the bibliography and bibliography lists. All expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. Biblatex will capitalize them automatically at the beginning of a sentence. The only exceptions to these rules are the three strings intended for use in headings.

4.9.2.1 Headings The following strings are special because they are intended for use in headings and made available globally via macros. For this reason, they should be capitalized for use in headings and they must not include any local commands which are part of Biblatex's author interface.

bibliography The term 'bibliography', also available as \bibname.

references The term 'references', also available as \refname.

shorthands The term 'list of shorthands' or 'list of abbreviations', also available as \biblistname.

4.9.2.2 Roles, Expressed as Functions The following keys refer to roles which are expressed as a function ('editor', 'translator') rather than as an action ('edited by', 'translated by').

editor The term 'editor', referring to the main editor. This is the most generic editorial role.

editors The plural form of editor.

compiler The term 'compiler', referring to an editor whose task is to compile a work.

compilers The plural form of compiler.

founder The term 'founder', referring to a founding editor.

founders The plural form of founder.

continuator An expression like 'continuator', 'continuation', or 'continued', referring to a past editor who continued the work of the founding editor but was subsequently replaced by the current editor.

continuators The plural form of continuator.

redactor The term 'redactor', referring to a secondary editor.

The plural form of redactor. redactors The term 'reviser', referring to a secondary editor. reviser The plural form of reviser. revisers A term like 'collaborator', 'collaboration', 'cooperator', or 'cooperation', referring to a collaborator secondary editor. The plural form of collaborator. collaborators The term 'translator'. translator The plural form of translator. translators The term 'commentator', referring to the author of a commentary to a work. commentator commentators The plural form of commentators. The term 'annotator', referring to the author of annotations to a work. annotator annotators The plural form of annotators. 4.9.2.3 Concatenated Editor Roles, Expressed as Functions The following keys are similar in function to editor, translator, etc. They are used to indicate additional roles of the editor, e.g., 'editor and translator', 'editor and foreword'. Used if editor/translator are identical. editortr The plural form of editortr. editorstr Used if editor/commentator are identical. editorco The plural form of editorco. editorsco Used if editor/annotator are identical. editoran The plural form of editoran. editorsan Used if editor/introduction are identical. editorin editorsin The plural form of editorin. editorfo Used if editor/foreword are identical. The plural form of editorfo. editorsfo Used if editor/aftword are identical. editoraf The plural form of editoraf. editorsaf Keys for editor/translator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/translator/commentator are identical. editortrco The plural form of editortrco. editorstrco Used if editor/translator/annotator are identical. editortran The plural form of editortran. editorstran

Used if editor/translator/introduction are identical.

editortrin

Used if editor/translator/foreword are identical. editortrfo editorstrfo The plural form of editortrfo. editortraf Used if editor/translator/aftword are identical. editorstraf The plural form of editortraf. Keys for editor/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: editorcoin Used if editor/commentator/introduction are identical. The plural form of editorcoin. editorscoin editorcofo Used if editor/commentator/foreword are identical. editorscofo The plural form of editorcofo. editorcoaf Used if editor/commentator/aftword are identical. editorscoaf The plural form of editorcoaf. Keys for editor/annotator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/annotator/introduction are identical. editoranin The plural form of editoranin. editorsanin editoranfo Used if editor/annotator/foreword are identical. The plural form of editoranfo. editorsanfo editoranaf Used if editor/annotator/aftword are identical. The plural form of editoranaf. editorsanaf Keys for editor/translator/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/translator/commentator/introduction are identical. editortrcoin The plural form of editortrcoin. editorstrcoin editortrcofo Used if editor/translator/commentator/foreword are identical. editorstrcofo The plural form of editortrcofo. Used if editor/translator/commentator/aftword are identical. editortrcoaf The plural form of editortrcoaf. editorstrcoaf Keys for editor/annotator/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: editortranin Used if editor/annotator/commentator/introduction are identical. The plural form of editortranin. editorstranin editortranfo Used if editor/annotator/commentator/foreword are identical. The plural form of editortranfo. editorstranfo Used if editor/annotator/commentator/aftword are identical. editortranaf editorstranaf The plural form of editortranaf.

editorstrin

The plural form of editortrin.

4.9.2.4 Concatenated Translator Roles, Expressed as Functions The following keys are similar in function to translator. They are used to indicate additional roles of the translator, e.g., 'translator and commentator', 'translator and introduction'.

translatorco Used if translator/commentator are identical.

translatorsco The plural form of translatorco.

translatoran Used if translator/annotator are identical.

translatorsan The plural form of translatoran.

translatorin Used if translator/introduction are identical.

translatorsin The plural form of translatorin.

translatorfo Used if translator/foreword are identical.

translators o The plural form of translator fo.

translatoraf Used if translator/aftword are identical.

translatorsaf The plural form of translatoraf.

Keys for translator/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

translatorcoin Used if translator/commentator/introduction are identical.

translatorscoin The plural form of translatorcoin.

translatorcofo Used if translator/commentator/foreword are identical.

translatorscofo The plural form of translatorcofo.

translatorcoaf Used if translator/commentator/aftword are identical.

translatorscoaf The plural form of translatorcoaf.

Keys for translator/annotator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

translatoranin Used if translator/annotator/introduction are identical.

 $translators an in \quad The \ plural \ form \ of \ translator an in.$

translatorsanfo The plural form of translatoranfo.

translatoranaf Used if translator/annotator/aftword are identical.

translatorsanaf The plural form of translatoranaf.

4.9.2.5 Roles, Expressed as Actions The following keys refer to roles which are expressed as an action ('edited by', 'translated by') rather than as a function ('editor', 'translator').

by author The expression '[created] by $\langle name \rangle$ '.

by editor The expression 'edited by $\langle name \rangle$ '.

bycompiler The expression 'compiled by $\langle name \rangle$ '. The expression 'founded by $\langle name \rangle$ '. byfounder bycontinuator The expression 'continued by $\langle name \rangle$ '. The expression 'redacted by $\langle name \rangle$ '. byredactor The expression 'revised by $\langle name \rangle$ '. byreviser The expression 'reviewed by $\langle name \rangle$ '. byreviewer bycollaborator An expression like 'in collaboration with $\langle name \rangle$ ' or 'in cooperation with $\langle name \rangle$ '. bytranslator The expression 'translated by $\langle name \rangle$ ' or 'translated from $\langle language \rangle$ by $\langle name \rangle$ '. bycommentator The expression 'commented by $\langle name \rangle$ '. The expression 'annotated by $\langle name \rangle$ '. byannotator 4.9.2.6 Concatenated Editor Roles, Expressed as Actions The following keys are similar in function to byeditor, bytranslator, etc. They are used to indicate additional roles of the editor, e.g., 'edited and translated by', 'edited and furnished with an introduction by', 'edited, with a foreword, by'. Used if editor/translator are identical. byeditortr byeditorco Used if editor/commentator are identical. Used if editor/annotator are identical. byeditoran byeditorin Used if editor/introduction are identical. Used if editor/foreword are identical. byeditorfo byeditoraf Used if editor/aftword are identical. Keys for editor/translator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/translator/commentator are identical. byeditortrco byeditortran Used if editor/translator/annotator are identical. Used if editor/translator/introduction are identical. byeditortrin byeditortrfo Used if editor/translator/foreword are identical. byeditortraf Used if editor/translator/aftword are identical. Keys for editor/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/commentator/introduction are identical. byeditorcoin byeditorcofo Used if editor/commentator/foreword are identical. byeditorcoaf Used if editor/commentator/aftword are identical. Keys for editor/annotator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations: Used if editor/annotator/introduction are identical. byeditoranin

byeditoranfo Used if editor/annotator/foreword are identical.

byeditoranaf Used if editor/annotator/aftword are identical.

Keys for editor/translator/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

byeditortrcoin Used if editor/translator/commentator/introduction are identical.

byeditortrcofo Used if editor/translator/commentator/foreword are identical.

byeditortrcoaf Used if editor/translator/commentator/aftword are identical.

Keys for editor/translator/annotator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

byeditortranin Used if editor/annotator/commentator/introduction are identical.

byeditortranfo Used if editor/annotator/commentator/foreword are identical.

byeditortranaf Used if editor/annotator/commentator/aftword are identical.

4.9.2.7 Concatenated Translator Roles, Expressed as Actions The following keys are similar in function to bytranslator. They are used to indicate additional roles of the translator, e.g., 'translated and commented by', 'translated and furnished with an introduction by', 'translated, with a foreword, by'.

bytranslatorco Used if translator/commentator are identical.

bytranslatoran Used if translator/annotator are identical.

bytranslatorin Used if translator/introduction are identical.

 $by translator fo \\ \ Used if \ translator/for eword \ are \ identical.$

 $by translator af \ Used \ if \ translator/aftword \ are \ identical.$

Keys for translator/commentator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

bytranslatorcoin Used if translator/commentator/introduction are identical.

bytranslatorcofo Used if translator/commentator/foreword are identical.

 $by translator coaf \quad Used \ if \ translator / commentator / aftword \ are \ identical.$

Keys for translator/annotator/ $\langle role \rangle$ combinations:

bytranslatoranin Used if translator/annotator/introduction are identical.

bytranslatoranfo Used if translator/annotator/foreword are identical.

bytranslatoranaf Used if translator/annotator/aftword are identical.

tions ('commentator') or as actions ('commented by'). The expression 'with a commentary by $\langle name \rangle$ '. withcommentator The expression 'with annotations by $\langle name \rangle$ '. withannotator withintroduction The expression 'with an introduction by $\langle name \rangle$ '. The expression 'with a foreword by $\langle name \rangle$ '. withforeword withafterword The expression 'with an afterword by $\langle name \rangle$ '. 4.9.2.9 Supplementary Material commentary The term 'commentary'. The term 'annotations'. annotations The term 'introduction'. introduction The term 'foreword'. foreword The term 'afterword'. afterword 4.9.2.10 Publication Details The term 'volume', referring to a book. volume The plural form of volume. volumes The term 'in', as used in expressions like 'in \(number of volumes \) volumes'. involumes The term 'volume', referring to a journal. jourvol The term 'series', referring to a journal. jourser The term 'book', referring to a document division. book The term 'part', referring to a part of a book or a periodical. part issue The term 'issue', referring to a periodical. The expression 'new series', referring to a journal. newseries The expression 'old series', referring to a journal. oldseries The term 'edition'. edition The term 'in', referring to the title of a work published as part of another one, e.g., ' $\langle title\ of\ article \rangle$ in $\langle title\ of\ journal \rangle$ '. The term 'in', as used in expressions like 'volume $\langle number \rangle$ in $\langle name\ of\ series \rangle$ '. inseries The term 'of', as used in expressions like 'volume $\langle number \rangle$ of $\langle name\ of\ series \rangle$ '. ofseries The term 'number', referring to an issue of a journal. number The term 'chapter', referring to a chapter in a book. chapter The term 'version', referring to a revision number. version

4.9.2.8 Roles, Expressed as Objects Roles which are related to supplementary material may also be expressed as objects ('with a commentary by') rather than as func-

```
The term 'reprint'.
        reprint
                 The expression 'reprint of \langle title \rangle'.
      reprintof
                 The expression 'reprinted as \langle title \rangle '.
      reprintas
                 The expression 'reprinted from \( \text{title} \)'.
   reprintfrom
  translationof
                 The expression 'translation of \langle title \rangle'.
                 The expression 'translated as \langle title \rangle'.
  translationas
translationfrom
                 The expression 'translated from [the] \(\language\rangle\)'.
                 The expression 'review of \langle title \rangle'.
      reviewof
                 The expression 'originally published as \( \text{title} \)'.
     origpubas
                 The expression 'originally published in \langle year \rangle'.
     origpubin
        astitle
                 The term 'as', as used in expressions like 'published by \langle publisher \rangle as \langle title \rangle'.
                 The term 'by', as used in expressions like 'published by \( \textit{publisher} \)'.
   bypublisher
                 4.9.2.11 Publication State
                 The expression 'in preparation' (the manuscript is being prepared for publication).
 inpreparation
                 The expression 'submitted' (the manuscript has been submitted to a journal or
     submitted
                 conference).
                 The expression 'forthcoming' (the manuscript has been accepted by a press or
   forthcoming
                 journal).
                 The expression 'in press' (the manuscript is fully copyedited and out of the author's
        inpress
                 hands; it is in the final stages of the production process).
                 The expression 'pre-published' (the manuscript is published in a preliminary form or
  prepublished
                 location, such as online version in advance of print publication).
                 4.9.2.12 Pagination
                 The term 'page'.
          page
                 The plural form of page.
         pages
                 The term 'column', referring to a column on a page.
       column
                 The plural form of column.
      columns
                 The term 'section', referring to a document division (usually abbreviated as §).
       section
                 The plural form of section (usually abbreviated as §§).
       sections
                 The term 'paragraph' (i. e., a block of text, not to be confused with section).
     paragraph
                 The plural form of paragraph.
    paragraphs
                 The term 'verse' as used when referring to a work which is cited by verse numbers.
         verse
                 The plural form of verse.
         verses
                 The term 'line' as used when referring to a work which is cited by line numbers.
           line
                 The plural form of line.
          lines
```

```
@report, @misc, and other entries:
            An expression equivalent to the term 'Master's thesis'.
            The term 'PhD thesis', 'PhD dissertation', 'doctoral thesis', etc.
 phdthesis
            An expression equivalent to the term 'Candidate thesis'. Used for 'Candidate' degrees
candthesis
             that have no clear equivalent to the Master's or doctoral level.
techreport
            The term 'technical report'.
            The term 'research report'.
 resreport
            The term 'computer software'.
  software
            The term 'data CD' or 'CD-ROM'.
   datacd
            The term 'audio CD'.
  audiocd
             4.9.2.14 Miscellaneous
            The term to use in place of a date when there is no date for an entry e.g., 'n.d.'
   nodate
            The term 'and', as used in a list of authors or editors, for example.
      and
            The expression 'and others' or 'et alii', used to mark the truncation of a name list.
andothers
 andmore
            Like and others but used to mark the truncation of a literal list.
             4.9.2.15 Labels The following strings are intended for use as labels, e.g., 'Address:
             \langle url \rangle' or 'Abstract: \langle abstract \rangle'.
            The term 'address' in the sense of an internet address.
            An expression like 'available from \langle url \rangle' or 'available at \langle url \rangle'.
   urlfrom
            An expression like 'accessed on \langle date \rangle', 'retrieved on \langle date \rangle', 'visited on \langle date \rangle',
   urlseen
             referring to the access date of an online resource.
            The term 'file'.
       file
            The term 'library'.
    library
            The term 'abstract'.
  abstract
            The term 'annotations'.
annotation
             4.9.2.16 Citations Traditional scholarly expressions used in citations:
            The term equivalent to the Latin 'idem' ('the same [person]').
            The feminine singular form of idem.
   idemsf
            The masculine singular form of idem.
  idemsm
            The neuter singular form of idem.
   idemsn
            The feminine plural form of idem.
   idempf
```

4.9.2.13 Types The following keys are typically used in the type field of @thesis,

```
The masculine plural form of idem.
              The neuter plural form of idem.
     idempn
              The plural form of idem suitable for a mixed gender list of names.
     idempp
              The term equivalent to the Latin 'ibidem' ('in the same place').
     ibidem
              The term equivalent to the Latin term 'opere citato' ('[in] the work [already] cited').
       opcit
              The term equivalent to the Latin term 'loco citato' ('[at] the place [already] cited').
       loccit
              The term equivalent to the Latin 'confer' ('compare').
      confer
              The term equivalent to the Latin 'sequens' ('[and] the following [page]'), as used to
    sequens
              indicate a range of two pages when only the starting page is provided (e.g., '25 sq.' or
              '25 f.' instead of '25-26').
              The term equivalent to the Latin 'sequentes' ('[and] the following [pages]'), as used to
   sequentes
              indicate an open-ended range of pages when only the starting page is provided (e.g.,
              '25 sqq.' or '25 ff.').
              The term equivalent to the Latin 'passim' ('throughout', 'here and there', 'scatteredly').
     passim
              Other expressions frequently used in citations:
              The term 'see'.
              The expression 'see also'.
     seealso
              An expression like 'see note \langle footnote \rangle' or 'as in \langle footnote \rangle', used to refer to a previous
     seenote
              footnote in a citation.
              An expression like 'see page \langle page \rangle' or 'cited on page \langle page \rangle', used to introduce back
backrefpage
              references in the bibliography.
              The plural form of backrefpage, e.g., 'see pages \langle pages \rangle' or 'cited on pages \langle pages \rangle'.
backrefpages
              An expression like 'quoted in \( \citation \)', used when quoting a passage which was
   quotedin
              already a quotation in the cited work.
              An expression like 'henceforth cited as (shorthand)', used to introduce a shorthand in
     citedas
              a citation.
              The expression used in some verbose citation styles to differentiate between the page
     thiscite
              range of the cited item (typically an article in a journal, collection, or conference
              proceedings) and the page number the citation refers to. For example: "Author, Title,
              in: Book, pp. 45-61, thiscite p. 52."
              4.9.2.17 Month Names
              The name 'January'.
    january
              The name 'February'.
    february
              The name 'March'.
      march
```

The name 'April'.

april

```
may
               The name 'May'.
               The name 'June'.
         june
               The name 'July'.
         july
               The name 'August'.
       august
               The name 'September'.
    september
               The name 'October'.
      october
               The name 'November'.
    november
               The name 'December'.
     december
                4.9.2.18 Language Names
               The language 'American' or 'American English'.
 langamerican
               The language 'Brazilian' or 'Brazilian Portuguese'.
  langbrazilian
   langcatalan
               The language 'Catalan'.
  langcroatian
               The language 'Croatian'.
    langczech
               The language 'Czech'.
               The language 'Danish'.
   langdanish
               The language 'Dutch'.
    langdutch
               The language 'English'.
   langenglish
               The language 'Estonian'.
  langestonian
   langfinnish
               The language 'Finnish'.
               The language 'French'.
    langfrench
   langgerman
               The language 'German'.
               The language 'Greek'.
    langgreek
    langitalian
               The language 'Italian'.
  langjapanese
               The language 'Japanese'.
               The language 'Latin'.
     langlatin
langnorwegian
               The language 'Norwegian'.
               The language 'Polish'.
    langpolish
               The language 'Portuguese'.
langportuguese
               The language 'Russian'.
   langrussian
               The language 'Slovak'.
    langslovak
               The language 'Slovene'.
   langslovene
               The language 'Spanish'.
   langspanish
```

langswedish

The language 'Swedish'.

The following strings are intended for use in phrases like 'translated from [the] English by $\langle translator \rangle$ ':

fromamerican The expression 'from [the] American' or 'from [the] American English'.

frombrazilian The expression 'from [the] Brazilian' or 'from [the] Brazilian Portuguese'.

fromcatalan The expression 'from [the] Catalan'.

fromcroatian The expression 'from [the] Croatian'.

fromczech The expression 'from [the] Czech'.

fromdanish The expression 'from [the] Danish'.

fromdutch The expression 'from [the] Dutch'.

fromenglish The expression 'from [the] English'.

fromestonian The expression 'from [the] Estonian'.

fromfinnish The expression 'from [the] Finnish'.

fromfrench The expression 'from [the] French'.

fromgerman The expression 'from [the] German'.

fromgreek The expression 'from [the] Greek'.

fromitalian The expression 'from [the] Italian'.

fromjapanese The expression 'from [the] Japanese'.

fromlatin The expression 'from [the] Latin'.

fromnorwegian The expression 'from [the] Norwegian'.

frompolish The expression 'from [the] Polish'.

fromportuguese The expression 'from [the] Portuguese'.

fromrussian The expression 'from [the] Russian'.

fromslovak The expression 'from [the] Slovak'.

fromslovene The expression 'from [the] Slovene'.

fromspanish The expression 'from [the] Spanish'.

fromswedish The expression 'from [the] Swedish'.

4.9.2.19 Country Names Country names are localised by using the string country plus the ISO-3166 country code as the key. The short version of the translation should be the ISO-3166 country code. Note that only a small number of country names is defined by default, mainly to illustrate this scheme. These keys are used in the location list of <code>@patent</code> entries but they may be useful for other purposes as well.

countryde The name 'Germany', abbreviated as DE.

countryeu The name 'European Union', abbreviated as EU.

countryep Similar to countryeu but abbreviated as EP. This is intended for patent entries.

```
The name 'United Kingdom', abbreviated (according to 150-3166) as GB.
       countryuk
                 The name 'United States of America', abbreviated as US.
       countryus
                  4.9.2.20 Patents and Patent Requests Strings related to patents are localised by
                  using the term patent plus the ISO-3166 country code as the key. Note that only a
                  small number of patent keys is defined by default, mainly to illustrate this scheme.
                  These keys are used in the type field of @patent entries.
                 The generic term 'patent'.
          patent
       patentde
                 The expression 'German patent'.
                 The expression 'European patent'.
        patenteu
                 The expression 'French patent'.
        patentfr
                 The expression 'British patent'.
       patentuk
        patentus
                 The expression 'U.S. patent'.
                  Patent requests are handled in a similar way, using the string patreq as the base name
                  of the key:
                 The generic term 'patent request'.
        patreqde
                 The expression 'German patent request'.
        patreqeu
                 The expression 'European patent request'.
                 The expression 'French patent request'.
        patreqfr
                 The expression 'British patent request'.
       patrequk
                 The expression 'U.S. patent request'.
        patregus
                  4.9.2.21 Dates and Times Abbreviation strings for standard eras. Both secular and
                  Christian variants are supported.
                 The era 'CE'
     commonera
                 The era 'BCE'
beforecommonera
                 The era 'AD'
     annodomini
                 The era 'BC'
     beforechrist
                      Abbreviation strings for 'circa' dates:
                 The string 'circa'
           circa
                      Abbreviation strings for seasons parsed from EDTF dates:
          spring The string 'spring'
```

The name 'France', abbreviated as FR.

```
summer The string 'summer'

autumn The string 'autumn'

winter The string 'winter'

Abbreviation strings for AM/PM:

am The string 'AM'

pm The string 'PM'
```

4.10 Formatting Commands

This section corresponds to § 3.10 in the user part of this manual. Bibliography and citation styles should incorporate the commands and facilities discussed in this section in order to provide a certain degree of high-level configurability. Users should not be forced to write new styles if all they want to do is modify the spacing in the bibliography or the punctuation used in citations.

4.10.1 User-definable Commands and Hooks

This section corresponds to § 3.10.1 in the user part of the manual. The commands and hooks discussed here are meant to be redefined by users, but bibliography and citation styles may provide a default definition which is different from the package default. These commands are defined in biblatex.def. Note that all commands starting with \mk... take one mandatory argument.

\bibnamedelima

This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically by the backend after the first name element if the element is less than three characters long and before the last element. The default definition is \addhighpenspace, i. e., a space penalized by the value of the highnamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedelimb

This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically by the backend between all name elements where \bibnamedelima does not apply. The default definition is \addlowpenspace, i. e., a space penalized by the value of the lownamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedelimc

This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. The default name formats use it between the name prefix and the last name if useprefix=true. The default definition is \addhighpenspace, i. e., a space penalized by the value of the highnamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedelimd

This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. The default name formats use it between all name parts where \bibnamedelimc does not apply. The default definition is \addlowpenspace, i. e., a space penalized by the value of the lownamepenalty counter (§ 3.10.3). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedelimi This delimiter replaces \bibnamedelima/b after initials. Note that this only applies to initials given as such in the bib file, not to the initials automatically generated by Bibla-

tex which use their own set of delimiters.

The punctuation inserted automatically by the backend after all initials unless \bibinitperiod \bibinithyphendelim applies. The default definition is a period (\adddot). Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibinitdelim The spacing inserted automatically by the backend between multiple initials unless \bibinithyphendelim applies. The default definition is an unbreakable interword space. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibinithyphendelim The punctuation inserted automatically by the backend between the initials of hyphenated name parts, replacing \bibinitperiod and \bibinitdelim. The default definition is a period followed by an unbreakable hyphen. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibindexnamedelima Replaces \bibnamedelima in the index.

\bibindexnamedelimb Replaces \bibnamedelimb in the index.

\bibindexnamedelimc Replaces \bibnamedelimc in the index.

\bibindexnamedelimd Replaces \bibnamedelimd in the index.

\bibindexnamedelimi Replaces \bibnamedelimi in the index.

Replaces \bibinitperiod in the index. \bibindexinitperiod

\bibindexinitdelim Replaces \bibinitdelim in the index.

\bibindexinithyphendelim Replaces \bibinithyphendelim in the index.

\revsdnamepunct The punctuation to be printed between the first and last name parts when a name is reversed. The default is a comma. This command should be incorporated in formatting directives for name lists. Please refer to § 3.13.4 for further details.

\bibnamedash The dash to be used as a replacement for recurrent authors or editors in the bibliography. The default is an 'em' or an 'en' dash, depending on the indentation of the list of references.

The separator to be printed after the name used for alphabetizing in the bibliogra-\labelnamepunct phy (author or editor, if the author field is undefined). Use this separator instead of \newunitpunct at this location. The default is \newunitpunct, i. e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation but permits convenient reconfiguration.

\subtitlepunct The separator to be printed between the fields title and subtitle, booktitle and booksubtitle, as well as maintitle and mainsubtitle. Use this separator instead of \newunitpunct at this location. The default is \newunitpunct, i.e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation but permits convenient reconfiguration.

\intitlepunct The separator to be printed between the word "in" and the following title in entry types such as @article, @inbook, @incollection, etc. Use this separator instead of \newunitpunct at this location. The default definition is a colon plus an interword space.

\bibpagespunct The separator to be printed before the pages field. Use this separator instead of \newunitpunct at this location. The default is a comma plus an interword space.

\bibpagerefpunct The separator to be printed before the pageref field. Use this separator instead of \newunitpunct at this location. The default is an interword space.

\multinamedelim The delimiter to be printed between multiple items in a name list like author or editor if there are more than two names in the list. If there are only two names in the list, use the \finalnamedelim instead. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.

\finalnamedelim Use this command instead of \multinamedelim before the final name in a name list.

\revsdnamedelim The extra delimiter to be printed after the first name in a name list consisting of two names (in addition to \finalnamedelim) if the first name is reversed. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.

\andothersdelim The delimiter to be printed before the localisation string 'andothers' if a name list like author or editor is truncated. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.

\multilistdelim The delimiter to be printed between multiple items in a literal list like publisher or location if there are more than two names in the list. If there are only two items in the list, use the \finallistdelim instead. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for literal lists.

\finallistdelim Use this command instead of \multilistdelim before the final item in a literal list.

\andmoredelim The delimiter to be printed before the localisation string 'andmore' if a literal list like publisher or location is truncated. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for literal lists.

\multicitedelim The delimiter printed between citations if multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands, for example in the $\langle sepcode \rangle$ argument passed to \DeclareCiteCommand. See § 4.3.1 for details.

\supercitedelim Similar to \multinamedelim, but intended for the \supercite command only.

\compcitedelim Similar to \multicitedelim, but intended for citation styles that 'compress' multiple
citations, i. e., print the author only once if subsequent citations share the same author
etc.

\textcitedelim Similar to \multicitedelim, but intended for \textcite and related commands (§ 3.8.2).

\nametitledelim The delimiter to be printed between the author/editor and the title. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of author-title and some verbose citation styles.

\nameyeardelim The delimiter to be printed between the author/editor and the year. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of author-year citation styles.

\namelabeldelim The delimiter printed between the name/title and the label. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of alphabetic and numeric citation styles.

\nonameyeardelim The delimiter printed between the substitute for the labelname when it does not exist (usually the label or title in standard styles) and the year in author-year citation styles. This is only used when there is no labelname since when the labelname exists, \nameyeardelim is used.

\volcitedelim The delimiter to be printed between the volume portion and the page/text portion of \volcite and related commands (§ 3.8.6).

\prenotedelim The delimiter to be printed after the $\langle prenote \rangle$ argument of a citation command.

\postnotedelim The delimiter to be printed after the $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument of a citation command.

\extpostnotedelim The delimiter printed between the citation and the parenthetical $\langle postnote \rangle$ argument of a citation command when the postnote occurs outside of the citation parentheses. In the standard styles, this occurs when the citation uses the shorthand field of the entry.

\mkbibnamefamily{ $\langle text \rangle$ }Formatting hook for the family name, to be used in all formatting directives for name lists.

 $\mbox{$$

\mkbibnameprefix $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ Similar to \mkbibnamefamily, but intended for the name prefix.

\mkbibnamesuffix $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ Similar to \mkbibnamefamily, but intended for the name suffix.

\relatedpunct The separator between the relatedtype bibliography localisation string and the data from the first related entry.

\relateddelim The separator between the data of multiple related entries. The default definition is a linebreak.

\relateddelim<relatedtype> The separator between the data of multiple related entries inside related entries of type 'relatedtype'. There is no default, if such a type-specific delimiter does not exist, \relateddelim is used.

4.10.2 Language-specific Commands

This section corresponds to § 3.10.2 in the user part of the manual. The commands discussed here are usually handled by the localisation modules, but may also be redefined by users on a per-language basis. Note that all commands starting with \mk... take one or more mandatory arguments.

\bibrangedash The language specific range dash. Defaults to \textendash.

\bibrangessep The language specific separator to be used between multiple ranges. Defaults to a comma followed by a space.

\bibdatesep The language specific separator used between date components in terse date formats.

Defaults to \hyphen.

\bibdaterangesep The language specific separator to be used for date ranges. Defaults to \textendash for all date formats apart from ymd which defaults to a \slash. The date format option edtf is hard-coded to \slash since this is a standards compliant format.

Takes the names of three field as arguments which correspond to three date components (in the order year/month/day) and uses their values to print the date in the language specific long date format.

\mkbibdateshort Similar to \mkbibdatelong but using the language specific short date format.

\mkbibtimezone Modifies a timezone string passed in as the only argument. By default this changes 'Z' to the value of \bibtimezone.

\bibdateuncertain The language specific marker to be used after uncertain dates when the global option dateuncertain is enabled. Defaults to a space followed by a question mark.

\bibdateeraprefix The language specific marker which is printed as a prefix to beginning BCE/BC dates in a date range when the option dateera is set to 'astronomical'. Defaults to \textminus, if defined and \textendash otherwise.

\bibdateeraendprefix The language specific marker which is printed as a prefix to end BCE/BC dates in a date range when the option dateera is set to 'astronomical'. Defaults to a thin space followed by \bibdateeraprefix when \bibdaterangesep is set to a dash and to \bibdateeraprefix otherwise. This is a separate macro so that you may add extra space before a negative date marker which, for example follows a dash date range marker as this can look a little odd.

\bibtimesep The language specific marker which separates time components. Default to a colon.

\bibutctimezone The language specific string printed for the UTC timezone. Defaults to 'Z'.

The language specific marker which separates an optional time zone component from a time. Empty by default.

\bibdatetimesep

The language specific separator printed between date and time components when printing time components along with date components (see the <datetype>dateusetime option in § 3.1.2.1). Defaults to a space for non-EDTF output formats, and 'T' for EDTF output format.

\finalandcomma Prints the comma to be inserted before the final 'and' in an enumeration, if applicable in the respective language.

\finalandsemicolon Prints the semicolon to be inserted before the final 'and' in an enumeration, if applicable in the respective language.

```
\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibordinal}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{$mkbibordinal}$}} \rangle
```

Takes an integer argument and prints it as an ordinal number.

```
\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibmascord}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibmascord}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{$\mbox{$mkbibmascord}}} \rangle \}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a masculine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

```
\mbox{mkbibfemord} \{ \langle integer \rangle \}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a feminine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

```
\mbox{mkbibneutord}\{\langle integer \rangle\}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but prints a neuter ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

```
\mkbibordedition\{\langle integer \rangle\}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but intended for use with the term 'edition'.

```
\mkbibordseries{\langle integer \rangle}
```

Similar to \mkbibordinal, but intended for use with the term 'series'.

4.10.3 用户可定义的尺寸和计数器 User-definable Lengths and Counters

This section corresponds to § 3.10.3 in the user part of the manual. The length registers and counters discussed here are meant to be altered by users. Bibliography and citation styles should incorporate them where applicable and may also provide a default setting which is different from the package default.

The hanging indentation of the bibliography, if applicable. This length is initialized to \parindent at load-time. If \parindent is zero length for some reason, \bibhang will default to 1em.

\biblabelsep The horizontal space between entries and their corresponding labels. Bibliography styles which use list environments and print a label should set \labelsep to \biblabelsep in the definition of the respective environment.

\bibitemsep The vertical space between the individual entries in the bibliography. Bibliography styles using list environments should set \itemsep to \bibitemsep in the definition of the respective environment.

\bibparsep The vertical space between paragraphs within an entry in the bibliography. Bibliography styles using list environments should set \parsep to \bibparsep in the definition of the respective environment.

abbrvpenalty The penalty used by \addabbrvspace, \addabthinspace, and \adddotspace, see § 4.7.4 for details.

lownamepenalty The penalty used by \addlowpenspace and \addlowpenspace , see § 4.7.4 for details.

highnamepenalty The penalty used by \addhighpenspace and \addhpthinspace, see § 4.7.4 for details.

biburlnumpenalty If this counter is set to a value greater than zero, Biblatex will permit linebreaks after numbers in all strings formatted with the \url command from the url package. This will affect urls and does in the bibliography. The breakpoints will be penalized by the value of this counter. If urls and/or does in the bibliography run into the margin, try setting this counter to a value greater than zero but less than 10000 (you normally want to use a high value like 9000). Setting the counter to zero disables this feature. This is the default setting.

biburlucpenalty Similar to biburlnumpenalty, except that it will add a breakpoint after all uppercase letters.

biburlcpenalty Similar to biburlnumpenalty, except that it will add a breakpoint after all lowercase letters.

4.10.4 辅助命令和钩子 Auxiliary Commands and Hooks

The auxiliary commands and facilities in this section serve a special purpose. Some of them are used by Biblatex to communicate with bibliography and citation styles in some way or other.

$\mbox{mkbibemph}\{\langle text \rangle\}$

A generic command which prints its argument as emphasized text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard \emph command. Apart from that, it uses \setpunctfont from § 4.7.1 to adapt the font of the next punctuation mark following the text set in italics. If the punctfont package option is disabled, this command behaves like \emph.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibitalic}}} \langle \mbox{\it mkbibitalic} \langle \mbox{\it text} \rangle \}$

Similar in concept to \mkbibemph but prints italicized text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard \textit command which incorporates \setpunctfont. If the punctfont package option is disabled, this command behaves like \textit.

$\mbox{mkbibbold} \{\langle text \rangle\}$

Similar in concept to \mkbibemph but prints bold text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard \textbf command which incorporates \setpunctfont. If the punctfont package option is disabled, this command behaves like \textbf.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibquote}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\$

A generic command which wraps its argument in quotation marks. If the csquotes package is loaded, this command uses the language sensitive quotation marks provided by that package. \mkbibquote also supports 'American-style' punctuation, see \DeclareQuotePunctuation in § 4.7.5 for details.

\mkbibparens{ $\langle text \rangle$ }

A generic command which wraps its argument in parentheses. This command is nestable. When nested, it will alternate between parentheses and brackets, depending on the nesting level.

\mkbibbrackets{ $\langle text \rangle$ }

A generic command which wraps its argument in square brackets. This command is nestable. When nested, it will alternate between brackets and parentheses, depending on the nesting level.

\bibopenparen\langle text\rangle\bibcloseparen

Alternative syntax for \mkbibparens. This will also work across groups. Note that \bibopenparen and \bibcloseparen must always be balanced.

$\begin{tabular}{ll} \verb&bibopenbracket & $\langle text \rangle \begin{tabular}{ll} \verb&bibopenbracke$

Alternative syntax for \mkbibbrackets. This will also work across groups. Note that \bibopenbracket and \bibclosebracket must always be balanced.

$\mbox{\sc Mkbibfootnote}\{\langle \textit{text} \rangle\}$

A generic command which prints its argument as a footnote. This is a wrapper around the standard LaTeX \footnote command which removes spurious whitespace preceding the footnote mark and prevents nested footnotes. By default, \mkbibfootnote requests capitalization at the beginning of the note and automatically adds a period at the end. You may change this behavior by redefining the \bibfootnotewrapper macro introduced below.

\mkbibfootnotetext $\{\langle text \rangle\}$

Similar to \mkbibfootnote but uses the \footnotetext command.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibendnote}}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{$mkbibendnote}$}} \langle \mbox{\mbox{$\it text}} \rangle \}$

Similar in concept to \mkbibfootnote except that it prints its argument as an endnote. \mkbibendnote removes spurious whitespace preceding the endnote mark and
prevents nested notes. It supports the \endnote command provided by the endnotes
package as well as the \pagenote command provided by the pagenote package and the
memoir class. If both commands are available, \endnote takes precedence. If no endnote support is available, \mkbibendnote issues an error and falls back to \footnote.
By default, \mkbibendnote requests capitalization at the beginning of the note and automatically adds a period at the end. You may change this behavior by redefining the
\bibendnotewrapper macro introduced below.

\mkbibendnotetext $\{\langle text \rangle\}$

Similar to \mkbibendnote but uses the \endnotetext command. Please note that as of this writing, neither the pagenote package nor the memoir class provide a corresponding \pagenotetext command. In this case, \mkbibendnote will issue an error and fall back to \footnotetext.

\bibfootnotewrapper{ $\langle text \rangle$ }

An inner wrapper which encloses the $\langle text \rangle$ argument of \mkbibfootnote and \mkbibfootnotetext. For example, \mkbibfootnote eventually boils down to this:

```
\footnote{\bibfootnotewrapper{text}}
```

The wrapper ensures capitalization at the beginning of the note and adds a period at the end. The default definition is:

```
\newcommand{\bibfootnotewrapper}[1]{\bibsentence #1\addperiod}
```

If you don't want capitalization at the beginning or a period at the end of the note, do not modify \mkbibfootnote but redefine \bibfootnotewrapper instead.

\bibendnotewrapper $\{\langle text \rangle\}$

Similar in concept to \bibfootnotewrapper but related to the \mkbibendnote and \mkbibendnotetext commands.

\mkbibsuperscript $\{\langle text \rangle\}$

A generic command which prints its argument as superscripted text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard LaTeX \textsuperscript command which removes spurious whitespace and allows hyphenation of the preceding word.

$\mbox{mkbibmonth}\{\langle integer \rangle\}$

This command takes an integer argument and prints it as a month name. Even though the output of this command is language specific, its definition is not, hence it is normally not redefined in localisation modules.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mkbibseason}}} \$

This command takes a season localisation string and prints the version of the string corresponding to the setting of the dateabbrev package option. Even though the output of this command is language specific, its definition is not, hence it is normally not redefined in localisation modules.

$\mbox{\mbox{mkyearzeros}} \langle \mbox{\it integer} \rangle \}$

This command strips leading zeros from a year or enforces them, depending on the datezeros package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

$\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\backslash$}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\backslash$}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\backslash}}}} \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\$

This command strips leading zeros from a month or enforces them, depending on the datezeros package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

$\mbox{\mbox{mkdayzeros}} \langle \mbox{\it integer} \rangle \}$

This command strips leading zeros from a day or enforces them, depending on the datezeros package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

$\mbox{\mbox{$\mbox{mktimezeros}}}\$

This command strips leading zeros from a number or preserves them, depending on the timezeros package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of time formatting macros.

$\forcezerosy{\langle integer \rangle}$

This command adds zeros to a year (or any number supposed to be 4-digits). It is intended for date formatting and ordinals.

$\forcezerosmdt{\langle integer \rangle}$

This command adds zeros to a month, day or time part (or any number supposed to be 2-digits). It is intended for date/time formatting and ordinals.

$\stripzeros{\langle integer \rangle}$

This command strips leading zeros from a number. It is intended for date formatting and ordinals.

<labelfield>width For every field marked as a 'Label field' in the data model, a formatting directive is created as per shorthandwidth above. Since shorthand is so marked in the default data model, this functionality is a superset of that described for shorthandwidth.

labelnumberwidth Similar to shorthandwidth, but referring to the labelnumber field and the length register \labelnumberwidth. Numeric styles should adjust this directive such that it corresponds to the format used in the bibliography.

labelalphawidth Similar to shorthandwidth, but referring to the labelalpha field and the length register \labelalphawidth. Alphabetic styles should adjust this directive such that it corresponds to the format used in the bibliography.

bibhyperref A special formatting directive for use with \printfield and \printtext. This directive wraps its argument in a \bibhyperref command, see § 4.6.4 for details.

bibhyperlink A special formatting directive for use with \printfield and \printtext. It wraps its argument in a \bibhyperlink command, see § 4.6.4 for details. The $\langle name \rangle$ argument passed to \bibhyperlink is the value of the entrykey field.

bibhypertarget A special formatting directive for use with \printfield and \printtext. It wraps its argument in a \bibhypertarget command, see § 4.6.4 for details. The $\langle name \rangle$ argument passed to \bibhypertarget is the value of the entrykey field.

volcitepages A special formatting directive which controls the format of the page/text portion in the argument of citation commands like \volcite.

volcitevolume A special formatting directive which controls the format of the volume portion in the argument of citation commands like \volcite.

date A special formatting directive which controls the format of \printdate (§ 4.4.1). Note that the date format (long/short etc.) is controlled by the package option date from § 3.1.2.1. This formatting directive only controls additional formatting such as fonts etc.

labeldate As date but controls the format of \printlabeldate.

<datetype>date As date but controls the format of \print<datetype>date.

A special formatting directive which controls the format of \printtime (§ 4.4.1). Note that the time format (24h/12h etc.) is controlled by the package option time from § 3.1.2.1. This formatting directive only controls additional formatting such as fonts etc.

labeltime As time but controls the format of \printlabeltime.

<datetype>time As time but controls the format of \print<datetype>time.

4.10.5 辅助长度计数器和其它功能 Auxiliary Lengths, Counters, and Other Features

The length registers and counters discussed here are used by Biblatex to pass information to bibliography and citation styles. Think of them as read-only registers. Note that all counters are LaTeX counters. Use \value{counter} to read out the current value.

\<labelfield>width For every field marked as a 'label' field in the data model, a length register is created as per shorthandwidth above. Since shorthand is so marked in the default data model, this functionality is a superset of that described for shorthandwidth. **\labelnumberwidth** This length register indicates the width of the widest labelnumber. Numeric bibliography styles should incorporate this length in the definition of the bibliography environment. \labelalphawidth This length register indicates the width of the widest labelalpha. Alphabetic bibliography styles should incorporate this length in the definition of the bibliography environment. This counter holds the highest number found in any extraalpha field. maxextraalpha This counter holds the highest number found in any extrayear field. maxextrayear refsection This counter indicates the current refsection environment. When queried in a bibliography heading, the counter returns the value of the refsection option passed to \printbibliography. This counter indicates the current refsegment environment. When queried in a bibrefsegment liography heading, this counter returns the value of the refsegment option passed to \printbibliography. This counter holds the setting of the maxnames package option. maxnames minnames This counter holds the setting of the minnames package option. This counter holds the setting of the maxitems package option. maxitems minitems This counter holds the setting of the minitems package option. This counter is incremented by Biblatex for every citation as well as for every entry in instcount the bibliography and bibliography lists. The value of this counter uniquely identifies a single instance of a reference in the document.

with \DeclareCiteCommand, holds the total number of valid entry keys passed to the

citetotal This counter, which is only available in the (loopcode) of a citation command defined

citation command.

citecount This counter, which is only available in the $\langle loopcode \rangle$ of a citation command defined with \DeclareCiteCommand, holds the number of the entry key currently being processed by the $\langle loopcode \rangle$.

multicitetotal This counter is similar to citetotal but only available in multicite commands. It holds the total number of citations passed to the multicite command. Note that each of these citations may consist of more than one entry key. This information is provided by the citetotal counter.

multicitecount This counter is similar to citecount but only available in multicite commands. It holds the number of the citation currently being processed. Note that this citation may consist of more than one entry key. This information is provided by the citetotal and citecount counters.

This counter holds the total number of items in the current list. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else. As an exception, it may also be used in the second optional argument to \printnames and \printlist, see § 4.4.1 for details. For every list, there is also a counter by the same name which holds the total number of items in the corresponding list. For example, the author counter holds the total number of items in the author list. This applies to both name lists and literal lists. These counters are similar to listtotal except that they may also be used independently of list formatting directives. For example, a bibliography style might check the editor counter to decide Whether or not to print the term "editor" or rather its plural form "editors" after the list of editors.

listcount This counter holds the number of the list item currently being processed. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.

liststart This counter holds the $\langle start \rangle$ argument passed to \printnames or \printlist. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.

liststop This counter holds the $\langle stop \rangle$ argument passed to \printnames or \printlist. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.

\currentlang The name of the currently active language for Biblatex. Can be used anywhere and defaults to the main document language. This is automatically switched inside entries which define langid, given suitable settings of the autolang and language options. Note that this does not track all document language changes, only the current Biblatex setting.

\currentfield The name of the field currently being processed by \printfield. This information is only available locally in field formatting directives.

\currentlist The name of the literal list currently being processed by \printlist. This information is only available locally in list formatting directives.

\currentname The name of the name list currently being processed by \printnames. This information is only available locally in name formatting directives.

4.10.6 多用途钩子 General Purpose Hooks

$AtBeginBibliography{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the bibliography. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed at the beginning of the list of references, immediately after the $\langle begin\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. This command may only be used in the preamble.

\AtBeginShorthands $\{\langle code \rangle\}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the list of shorthands. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed at the beginning of the list of shorthands, immediately after the $\langle begin\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. This command may only be used in the preamble.

This is just an alias for:

\AtBeginBiblist{shorthand}{code}

$\AtBeginBiblist{\langle biblistname \rangle} {\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the bibliography list $\langle biblistname \rangle$. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed at the beginning of the bibliography list, immediately after the $\langle begin\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$\AtEveryBibitem{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the bibliography. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately after the $\langle item\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$\AtEveryLositem{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the list of shorthands. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately after the $\langle item\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

This is just an alias for:

\AtEveryBiblistitem{shorthand}{code}

$AtEveryBiblistitem{\langle biblistname \rangle}{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the bibliography list named $\langle biblistname \rangle$. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately after the $\langle item\ code \rangle$ of \defbibenvironment. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$AtNextBibliography{\langle code \rangle}$

Similar to \AtBeginBibliography but only affecting the next \printbibliography. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

$AtEveryCite{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every citation command. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately before the $\langle precode \rangle$ of the command (see § 4.3.1). No bibliographic data is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$AtEveryCitekey{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed once for every entry key passed to a citation command. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately before the $\langle loopcode \rangle$ of the command (see § 4.3.1). The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$AtEveryMultiCite{\langle code \rangle}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every multicite command. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately before the multiprenote field (§ 4.3.2) is printed. No bibliographic data is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

$\AtNextCite{\langle code \rangle}$

Similar to \AtEveryCite but only affecting the next citation command. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

$AtEachCitekey{\langle code \rangle}$

Similar to \AtEveryCitekey but only affecting the current citation command. This command may be used in the document body. The $\langle code \rangle$ is appended to the internal hook locally when located in a citation, as determined by \ifcitation.

$\AtNextCitekey{\langle code \rangle}$

Similar to \AtEveryCitekey but only affecting the next entry key. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

$\AtNextMultiCite{\langle code \rangle}$

Similar to \AtEveryMultiCite but only affecting the next multicite command. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

$\AtDataInput[\langle entrytype \rangle] \{\langle code \rangle\}$

Appends the $\langle code \rangle$ to an internal hook executed once for every entry as the bibliographic data is imported from the bbl file. The $\langle entrytype \rangle$ is the entry type the $\langle code \rangle$ applies to. If it applies to all entry types, omit the optional argument. The $\langle code \rangle$ is executed immediately after the entry has been imported. This command may only be used in the preamble. Note that $\langle code \rangle$ may be executed multiple times for an entry. This occurs when the same entry is cited in different refsection environments or the sorting option settings incorporate more than one sorting scheme. The refsection counter holds the number of the respective reference section while the data is imported.

\UseBibitemHook

Executes the internal hook corresponding to \AtEveryBibitem.

\UseEveryCiteHook

Executes the internal hook corresponding to \AtEveryCite.

\UseEveryCitekeyHook

Executes the internal hook corresponding to \AtEveryCitekey.

\UseEveryMultiCiteHook

Executes the internal hook corresponding to \AtMultiEveryCite.

\UseNextCiteHook

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to \AtNextCite.

\UseNextCitekeyHook

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to \AtNextCitekey .

\UseNextMultiCiteHook

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to \AtNextMultiCite.

\DeferNextCitekeyHook

Locally un-defines the internal hook specified by \AtNextCitekey. This essentially defers the hook to the next entry key in the citation list, when executed in the $\langle precode \rangle$ argument of \DeclareCiteCommand (§ 4.3.1).

4.11 提示与警告

本节提供了关于 biblatex 宏包接口的一些附加提示,也将论述一些普遍性的问题和容易误解的概念。

4.11.1 条目集

条目集已经在§3.12.5节介绍过,本节主要讨论怎么在著录样式中处理条目集。从驱动的角度看,静态和动态的条目集并无差别。两者都以相同方式处理。只需要使用§4.4.1的\entryset命令遍历集的所有成员(以在@set条目的entryset域中的出现的顺序,或者它们传递给\defbibentryset命令的顺序进行遍历),并在最后加上\finentry命令即可。格式化则有集的成员各自的条目类型的驱动控制。

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{set}{%
  \entryset{}{}%
  \finentry}
```

需要注意:本宏包附带的 numeric 样式支持条目集细分,即集成员以一个字母或者其他记号来标记,标注命令可以引用整个集或者其中的某一具体成员。记号由样式文件以如下方式生成:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{set}{%
  \entryset
    {\printfield{entrysetcount}%
    \setunit*{\addnbspace}}
    {}%
  \finentry}
```

entrysetcount域保存了一个整数用于指示集成员在整个集中的位置。数字是转换为一个字母还是其他记号由域格式entrysetcount控制。所有驱动需要做的是打印域和一些空格(或者换行)。在标注中打印记号的方式类似。当顺序编码制样式给出\printfield{labelnumber}时,可以简单地加上entrysetcount域。

```
\printfield{labelnumber}\printfield{entrysetcount}
```

因为该域仅在处理标注指向一个集成员时定义,所以没有必要添加任何更多的判断。

4.11.2 电子出版信息

标准样式主要支持 arXiv 网站的文献⁶⁵。其它资源的支持很容易增加。标准样式以如下方式处理eprint域:

⁶⁵译者:arXiv 原先是由物理学家保罗·金斯巴格在 1991 年建立的网站,本意在收集物理学的论文预印本,随后括及天文、数学等其它领域。金斯巴格因为这个网站获得了 2002 年的麦克阿瑟奖。arXiv 原先挂在洛斯阿拉莫斯国家实验室,是故早期被称为「LANL 预印本数据库」。目前的 arXiv 落脚于康乃尔大学 [1],并在全球各地设有镜像站点。网站在 1999 年改名为 arXiv.org。

```
\iffieldundef{eprinttype}
  {\printfield{eprint}}
  {\printfield[eprint:\strfield{eprinttype}]{eprint}}
```

如果eprinttype域存在,上述代码将使用域格式 eprint:〈eprinttype〉。如果该格式未定义,\printfield自动退回到使用域格式 eprint。有两种预定义的域格式,typespecific(具体类型的) 域格式 eprint:arxiv 和通用域格式 eprint。

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{eprint}{...}
\DeclareFieldFormat{eprint:arxiv}{...}
```

换句话说,增加其他数据源的支持只需要定义一个名为 eprint:\(\textit{resource}\)的与格式,其中\(\textit{resource}\)是在eprinttype域中使用的标识。

4.11.3 外部摘要和注释

外部摘要和注释已经在§3.12.8节讨论过,本节为样式作者提供更多的背景知识。标准样式使用如下的宏(来自 biblatex.def)来处理摘要和注释:

如果abstract/annotation域未定义,上述代码将从外部文件中加载摘要和注释。\printfile将根据用户定义的前缀来搜索文件名。注意:必须显式地设置§3.1.2.1节的loadfiles包选项来打开\printfile功能。基于性能原因该功能默认是关闭的。

4.11.4 消除姓名歧义

在§ 3.1.2.3节引入的uniquename和uniquelist选项支持多种操作模式。本节用举例方式介绍不同模式的差别。uniquename选项消除labelname列表中各姓名间的歧义,uniquelist消除因maxnames/minnames截短导致的labelname列表歧义。两个选项可以单独使用也可以联合使用:

282

消除姓名歧义原理是根据由一个或多个姓名成分构成的'base'来确定需要在 其基础上添加什么 (如果存在的话) 使得姓名在当前参考文献节中是唯一的。消除 姓名歧义由如下命令声明的 uniquename 模板控制:

\DeclareUniquenameTemplate{\langle specification \rangle}

⟨specification⟩是\namepart命令列表,定义了确定 uniquename 信息使用的姓名成分。

$\langle namepart[\langle options \rangle] \{\langle namepart \rangle\}$

⟨namepart⟩是数据模型中的姓名成分,由\DeclareDatamodelConstant命令定义(见 § 4.2.3)。选项包括:

use=true, false default: false

在构建 uniquename 信息中仅使用〈namepart〉,如果存在相应的选项use'namepart'并且值为true。

base=true, false default: false

⟨namepart⟩是'base'的部分,'base'是用作唯一性区分的 namepart(s) 信息的主段。

默认的 uniquename 模板是:

```
\DeclareUniquenameTemplate{
  \namepart[use=true, base=true]{prefix}
  \namepart[base=true]{family}
  \namepart{given}
}
```

这意味着要区分的'base' 由姓 ('family') 和前缀 (如果useprefix选项是 true) 构成。消除歧义主要通过增加模板中任何非'base' 姓名成分来实现,这里就是名 ('given')成分。

4.11.4.1 单个姓名 (姓名间的区分)(uniquename) 下面从一些uniquename例子开始,考虑如下数据:

```
John Doe 2008
Edward Doe 2008
John Smith 2008
Jane Smith 2008
```

假设我们使用作者年制且设置 uniquename=false,这种情况下,我们得到如下引用标注:

```
Doe 2008a
Doe 2008b
Smith 2008a
Smith 2008b
```

因为姓有歧义,且所有的年都相同,所以年后附加的字符用来区分并消除歧义。然而,很多样式指南强制要求附加字符只能用于相同作者的区分,而不能用于作者相同的姓的区分。为了消除作者姓的歧义,需要增加姓名的其它完整部分或者缩写来区分。这一需要由uniquename选项处理,下面是使用了 uniquename=init 的引用标注:

J. Doe 2008
E. Doe 2008
Smith 2008a
Smith 2008b

uniquename=init 限制了用缩写来区分姓名。但因为'J. Smith' 仍然有歧义,所以没有增加。而使用 uniquename=full,标注如下:

J. Doe 2008
E. Doe 2008
John Smith 2008
Jane Smith 2008

为了说明 uniquename=init/full 和 allinit/allfull 的差别,我们下面介绍 'visible' 姓名的概念。'visible' 姓名是位于maxnames/minnames/uniquelist截短点前的姓名,比如,给出数据:

William Jones/Edward Doe/Jane Smith

John Doe

John Smith

当 maxnames=1, minnames=1, uniquename=init/full 时,我们得到如下的引用标注:

Jones et al.
Doe
Smith

在消除歧义的时候,uniquename=init/full 仅考虑可见的姓名。因为本例中所有的可见姓名的姓都是不同的,所有没有姓名的其他部分附加进来。比较一下使用uniquename=allinit 的输出:

Jones et al.

J. Doe
Smith

allinit 认为所有在labelname列表中的姓名,包括列表截短后已经隐藏并且由'et al.'代替的姓名。在本例中,'John Doe'与'Edward Doe'存在歧义。因为两个'Smiths' 无法通过添加缩写的方式区分,所以没有添加。现在来比较一下 uniquename = allfull 的输出: Jones et al.

J. Doe

John Smith

uniquename=mininit/minfull 选项类似于 init/full 仅考虑可见姓名,但仅执行最小的歧义消除。即,仅对姓列表的歧义进行处理,考虑如下数据:

John Doe/William Jones
Edward Doe/William Jones
John Smith/William Edwards
Edward Smith/Allan Johnson

使用 uniquename=init/full, 得到:

- J. Doe and Jones
- E. Doe and Jones
- J. Smith and Edwards
- E. Smith and Johnson

使用 uniquename=mininit/minfull, 得到:

- J. Doe and Jones
- E. Doe and Jones

Smith and Edwards

Smith and Johnson

'Smiths'并无歧义,因为姓名列表时没有歧义。mininit/minfull选项仅对姓的列表相同情况进行处理。全局的看姓的列表,注意当未截短的列表的可见名相同的时候,截短的列表时也可能是不同的,比如下面的数据:

John Doe/William Jones Edward Doe

使用 maxnames=1, uniquename=init/full:

- J. Doe et al.
- E. Doe

使用 uniquename=mininit/minfull:

Doe et al.

Doe

因为列表有'et al.'的不同,姓名列表就不歧义。

4.11.4.2 姓名列表 (列表间的区分) (uniquelist) 姓名列表也可能存在歧义问题。如果labelname列表由maxnames/minnames选项截短就可能产生歧义。这类问题由uniquelist选处理,考虑如下数据:

```
Doe/Jones/Smith 2005
Smith/Johnson/Doe 2005
Smith/Doe/Edwards 2005
Smith/Doe/Jones 2005
```

很多作者年制样式需要在标注中截短,比如使用 maxnames=1 选项,得到:

```
Doe et al. 2005
Smith et al. 2005a
Smith et al. 2005b
Smith et al. 2005c
```

因为截短后作者存在歧义,所以添加额外字符确保引用标注的唯一性。同样的,一些样式强制要求额外字符只能用于所有作者都相同的情况。为了区分作者列表,必须增加更多的姓名,这样就会超出maxnames/minnames选项设定的截短点。uniquelist选项即描述这一需求,当 uniquelist=true, 有:

```
Doe et al. 2005
Smith, Johnson et al. 2005
Smith, Doe and Edwards 2005
Smith, Doe and Jones 2005
```

uniquelist选项以条目为限重设maxnames/minnames。大体上,标注的 'et al.' 部分扩展到无歧义的点-而且也基本到此为止。uniquelist也可以与uniquename联合使用,考虑如下数据:

```
John Doe/Allan Johnson/William Jones 2009
John Doe/Edward Johnson/William Jones 2009
John Doe/Jane Smith/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Smith/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Edwards/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Edwards/Jack Johnson 2009
```

使用 maxnames=1, 得到:

```
Doe et al. 2009a

Doe et al. 2009b

Doe et al. 2009c

Doe et al. 2009d

Doe et al. 2009e

Doe et al. 2009f
```

使用 maxnames=1, uniquename=full, uniquelist=true 则有:

```
Doe, A. Johnson et al. 2009
Doe, E. Johnson et al. 2009
Doe, Jane Smith et al. 2009
Doe, John Smith et al. 2009
Doe, Edwards and Jones 2009
Doe, Edwards and Johnson 2009
```

使用 uniquelist=minyear,消除列表歧义仅在可见列表和labelyear相同的时候。这对于仅仅需要整个标注整体具有唯一性的作者年制样式是很有用的,但是不保证作者姓名的非歧义性。这一模式概念上域 uniquename=mininit/minfull 选项相关。考虑如下例子:

```
Smith/Jones 2000
Smith/Johnson 2001
```

使用 maxnames=1 和 uniquelist=true,得到:

```
Smith and Jones 2000
Smith and Johnson 2001
```

使用 uniquelist=minyear, 则得到:

```
Smith et al. 2000
Smith et al. 2001
```

使用 uniquelist=minyear,两个文献的作者是否相同并不清楚,但标注的整体是非歧义的,因为年份的不同。与此相反,uniquelist=true 需要消除作者列表的歧义即便这一信息对于参考文献表的唯一引用是不必要的,看看如下例子:

```
Vogel/Beast/Garble/Rook 2000
Vogel/Beast/Tremble/Bite 2000
Vogel/Beast/Acid/Squeeze 2001
```

使用 maxnames=3, minnames=1, uniquelist=true, 得到

```
Vogel, Beast, Garble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Tremble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Acid et al. 2001
```

使用 uniquelist=minyear 选项,则有:

```
Vogel, Beast, Garble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Tremble et al. 2000
Vogel et al. 2001
```

在最后一个引用中,uniquelist=minyear不重写maxnames/minnames,因为年份的不同,所以不需要消除与其它两个间的歧义。

4.11.5 浮动体和TOC/LOT/LOF中的追踪器

当引用命令出现在浮动体 (比如图和表的题注) 中,因为浮动体无论是物理上还是逻辑上都在文本流之外,这会导致的学术反向引用 (比如'ibidem') 和基于页码追踪器的反向引用难以区分,因此这种引用的逻辑很难在其中应用。为避免这种问题,引用和页码追踪器在所有的浮动体中临时关闭。而且,这些追踪器加上反向引用追踪器 (backref) 在目录,图和表目录中也临时关闭。666768

4.11.6 混合编程接口

Biblatex 宏包给样式作者提供了 2 个主要的编程接口即: bbx文件中使用的\DeclareBibliographyDriver 命令用来定义各类参考文献条目的驱动 (即条目的格式处理器),cbx文件中使用的\DeclareCiteCommand命令用来定义新的标注命令。然而有时候,混合使用这两个接口会很方便。比如\fullcite命令就可以打印类似于完整参考文献条目的长串引用,该命令定义大体如下:

```
\DeclareCiteCommand{\fullcite}
{...}
{\usedriver{...}{\thefield{entrytype}}}
{...}
{...}
```

如上所见,打印标注的核心代码简单地为当前的条目类型执行了\DeclareBibliographyDriver定义的驱动命令。当为长标注格式⁶⁹编写标注样式文件的时候,使用下面的结构是非常方便的:

```
\ProvidesFile{example.cbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex citation style]

\DeclareCiteCommand{\cite}
{\ldots\}
{\ldots\}
{\usedriver{\ldots\}{\cite:\thefield{entrytype}}}}
{\ldots\}

\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:article}{\ldots\}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:book}{\ldots\}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:inbook}{\ldots\}
\ldots\}
\ldots
```

288

⁶⁶译者:reference 引用,链接,引文?从交叉引用角度看呢?

⁶⁷译者:citation 引用,标注?

⁶⁸译者:ibidem 也需要看一下前面,到底什么意义

⁶⁹译者:verbose: 冗长的

混合接口的另一个有用情况是在参考文献表中使用交叉引用 (cross-references) 时。比如当打印@incollection 类型的条目,数据继承自@collection父条目,可由一个指向对应父条目的简短指针来代替。

- [1] Audrey Author: Title of article. In: [2], pp. 134–165.
- [2] Edward Editor, ed.: Title of collection. Publisher: Location, 1995.

实现参考文献表内的这种交叉引用的一种方法是将它们当成标注,并使用xref或 crossref域的值作为条目关键词(条目 bibtex 键),示例如下:

```
\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]

\DeclareCiteCommand{\bbx@xref}

{}
{...}% code for cross-references
{}
{}

{}

\DeclareBibliographyDriver{incollection}{%

...

\iffieldundef{xref}

{...}% code if no cross-reference

{\bbx@xref{\thefield{xref}}}%

...
}
```

当定义\bbx@xref命令时,\DeclareCiteCommand命令的 $\langle precode \rangle$, $\langle postcode \rangle$, 和 $\langle sepcode \rangle$ 参数留空,是因为上面例子中没有用到。交叉引用由\bbx@xref命令的 $\langle loopcode \rangle$ 参数打印。更多的关于xref域的细节见§2.2.3节以及§2.4.1节中的注意事项。在§4.6.2节我们也看到了\iffieldxref,\iflistxref,和\ifnamexref测试命令。这些都也可以用§4.4.1节的\entrydata命令来实现。

```
\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{incollection}{%
...
\iffieldundef{xref}
{...}% code if no cross-reference
{\entrydata{\thefield{xref}}{%
        % code for cross-references
        ...
}}%
...
```

289

4.11.7 使用标点追踪

4.11.7.1 标点基础 样式作者设计参考文献驱动时需要记住一点原则: 块和单元的标点是异步处理的。用例子最容易解释这一点,看下面一段代码:

```
\printfield{title}%
\newunit
\printfield{edition}%
\newunit
\printfield{note}%
```

如果没有edition域,那么这段代码的打印结果不会是:

```
Title. . Note
```

而会是

```
Title. Note
```

因为单元的标点追踪器是异步方式工作的。\newunit命令将不会立即打印标点。它仅是记录一个单元的边界并且将\newunitpunct命令放入标点缓存中。该缓存会有接下来的\printfield、\printlist或类似命令进行处理,且仅当这些命令各自处理的域或列表已定义的时候才会处理。像\printfield这样的命令在插入任何块和单元的标点之前将首先考虑3个因素:

- 是否有新的单元/块的输出请求?
 - = 前面是否有\newunit或者\newblock命令?
- 前面的命令是否有打印输出?
 - = 前面是否有\printfield或者相似命令?
 - = 该命令是否实际打印了任何东西?
- 现在是否要打印一些东西?要进行打印处理的域或列表是否已定义?

块和单元的标点只会在上述所有条件满足的时候才会输出。让我们再次考虑上面的例子:

```
\printfield{title}%
\newunit
\printfield{edition}%
\newunit
\printfield{note}%
```

如果edition域没有定义会发生什么呢?第一个\printfield命令打印了标题并设置一个内部的'new text'标志。第一个\newunit命令设置一个内部的'new unit'标志。这使没有任何标点输出。第二个\printfield命令不进行任何处理因为edition域未定义。接下来的\newunit命令再次设置'new unit'标志,仍然没有标点输出。第三个\printfield命令检测note域是否已定义,如果是,它会寻找'new text'和'new unit'标志。如果两个标志都存在,那么它会在打印 note 前插入标点缓存。然后它会清除'new unit'标志然后再次设置'new text'标志。

所有这些听起来似乎很复杂,但实际上,这意味着可以用顺序的方式写一个 具有很多部件的参考文献驱动。这种方法的优势在不使用标点追踪而实现上述代 码功能时会体现的很明显。如果不用标点追踪,那么会因为大量对所有可能存在 域的判断产生一个复杂的\iffieldundef判断命令集合。

```
\iffieldundef{title}%
    {\iffieldundef{edition}
        {\printfield{note}}
        {\printfield{edition}%
        \iffieldundef{note}%
        {\}
        {\printfield{note}}}

{\printfield{title}%
        \iffieldundef{edition}
        {\}
        {\printfield{edition}}%

\iffieldundef{edition}}%

\iffieldundef{note}
        {\printfield{note}}%

\iffieldundef{note}
```

4.11.7.2 常见错误 把单元的标点处理认为是同步处理的是一个相当常见的误解。这会导致当驱动中包含抄录文本⁷⁰时出现一些典型错误。考虑下面导致标点错位的错误代码段:

```
\printfield{title}%
\newunit
(\printfield{series} \printfield{number})%
```

这段代码将产生下面的结果:

```
Title (. Series Number)
```

这里发生了什么呢?第一个\printfield命令打印了标题,然后\newunit命令标记了一个新的单元边界但不打印任何内容。单元的标点由下一个\printfield命

⁷⁰这里 literal text 理解为原样文本,如实文本,逐字文本,抄录文本,照抄文本

令打印。这是前面提过的异步机制。然而因为左括号在下一个\printfield命令插入标点前立即打印,所以导致了错误的句点。当插入任何原样文本比如括号(还包括由\bibopenparen和\mkbibparens命令打印的括号)时,总需要将这些文本用\printtext命令包起来。要让标点追踪正常运转,需要让驱动知道所有插入的原样文本。这是\printtext命令的作用所在。\printtext命令联系标点追踪器确保标点缓存在原样文本打印前插入。它也设定内部'new text'标志。注意本例中还有第三处原样文本即\printfield{series} 后面的空格。在改正的例子中,我们将使用标点追踪器来处理该空格。

```
\printfield{title}%
\newunit
\printtext{(}%
\printfield{series}%
\setunit*{\addspace}%
\printfield{number}%
\printtext{()}%
```

尽管上面的代码能够如常工作,但处理括号、引号和其它包围某个域的标点是,推 荐的方式是定义一个域格式:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{parens}{\mkbibparens{#1}}
```

域格式可以同时用于\printfield和\printtext命令,因此我们可以利用它对若干个域用一堆括号进行包裹。

```
\printtext[parens]{%
  \printfield{series}%
  \setunit*{\addspace}%
  \printfield{number}%
}%
```

这里我们还需要处理没有 series 信息时的情况,因此进一步改进代码如下:

```
\iffieldundef{series}

{}

{\printtext[parens]{%

  \printfield{series}%

  \setunit*{\addspace}%

  \printfield{number}}%
```

最后的一点提示: 本地化字符串对于标点追踪器来说不是原样文本。因为\bibstring和相似命令能联系标点追踪器,因此就不需要用\printtext包裹起来。

4.11.7.3 高级用法 标点追踪器也可用来处理更复杂的情况。比如,考虑需要对location、publisher和 year根据数据是否提供以如下的格式打印:

```
...text. Location: Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location: Publisher. Text...
...text. Location: Year. Text...
...text. Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
```

这个问题可以用一个相当复杂的\iflistundef和\iffieldundef判断集进行处理,通过这些判断可以确定所有可能的域的组合:

```
\iflistundef{location}
 {\iflistundef{publisher}
    {\printfield{year}}
     {\printlist{publisher}%
     \iffieldundef{year}
       {}
        {, \printfield{year}}}
 {\printlist{location}%
  \iflistundef{publisher}%
    {\iffieldundef{year}
       {}
       {: \printfield{year}}}
    {: \printlist{publisher}%
     \iffieldundef{year}
        {}
        {, \printfield{year}}}%
```

可以应用\ifthenelse命令和 § 4.6.3讨论的布尔运算可使上面的代码更具可读性。但本质上是一样的。然而,也可以按顺序写成如下方式:

```
\newunit
\printlist{location}%
\setunit*{\addcolon\space}%
\printlist{publisher}%
\setunit*{\addcomma\space}%
\printfield{year}%
\newunit
```

在实际使用中,你会经常使用标点追踪器执行一些显式或隐式的组合判断,比如,考虑如下格式(注意当没有 publisher 时 location 后面的标点)

```
...text. Location: Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location: Publisher. Text...
...text. Location, Year. Text...
...text. Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
```

这可以用如下代码进行处理:

```
\newunit
\printlist{location}%

\iflistundef{publisher}
   {\setunit*{\addcomma\space}}
   {\setunit*{\addcolon\space}}%

\printlist{publisher}%

\setunit*{\addcomma\space}%

\printfield{year}%

\newunit
```

因为当没有 publisher 时 location 后面的标点的特殊性,我们需要用一个\iflistundef判断来确保正确性。剩下其它的则有标点追踪器处理。

4.11.8 本地化定制模型

样式规则可能包含某些规定,比如像'edition'之类的字符串怎么缩写或者需要表示成一些固定的形式。例如MLA样式指南要求作者在参考文献表的标题中使用'Works Cited'而不是'Bibliography'或'References'。本地化命令比如§ 3.9节的\DefineBibliographyStrings可以在cbx和bbx文件中处理这些情况。然而,重载样式文件及其翻译内容是相当不便的。这是§4.9.1节的\DeclareLanguageMapping命令发挥作用的地方。这一命令将一个lbx文件映射为某一babel/polyglossia语言的替代翻译。例如,可以创建一个名为french-humanities.lbx的文件提供适用于人文学科的法语翻译并在导言区或者配置文件中将其映射为babel/polyglossia语言french。

```
\DeclareLanguageMapping{french}{french-humanities}
```

如果正文的语言设置为 french, french-humanities.lbx 将替换french.lbx。回到前述的MLA示例,一个MLA样式可能带有一个american-mla.lbx 文件来提供符合MLA样式规则的字符串。它将在cbx和/或 bbx 文件中声明如下映射:

```
\DeclareLanguageMapping{american}{american-mla}
```

因为替换的lbx文件可以从标准的american.lbx 模型中继承字符串,所以american-mla.lbx 可以简化为:

替换的lbx文件必须保证本地化模型是完整的。这可以通过从相应的标准模型中继承来实现。如果语言 american 映射为american-mla.lbx,Biblatex 将不会加载american.lbx 触发该模型被明确要求加载。在上述示例中,继承'strings'和'extras'将导致 Biblatex 在american-mla.lbx 中应用修改前加载american.lbx。

注意:\DeclareLanguageMapping不用于处理语言的变体 (比如 American English 和 British English)) 或者babel/polyglossia语言别名 (比如 USenglish vs. american)。例如,babel/polyglossia提供了 USenglish 选项类似于 american。因此 Biblatex 附带一个USenglish.lbx 文件,该文件简单的从american.lbx 文件中继承所有数据 (而该文件又从english.lbx 文件中获取字符串)。换句话说,语言变体和babel/polyglossia 语言别名的映射发射在文件层,因此 Biblatex 的语言支持可以简单地增加额外的lbx文件来实现拓展。没有必要进行集中的映射,如果需要支持比如 Portuguese (babel/polyglossia: portuges),可以创建一个名为portuges.lbx 的文件。如果babel/polyglossia提供一个名为 brasil 的别名,可以创建一个brasil.lbx 文件并可从portuges.lbx 中继承数据。相比之下,\DeclareLanguageMapping主要用于处理文体上的变化,像'humanities 对 natural sciences' or 'MLA 对 APA'等,这通常是建立在现有的lbx文件基础上的。

4.11.9 编组

在标注和著录样式中,可能需要设置标志或保存一些值以便后面使用。这种情况下,理解宏包执行的基本编组结构很关键。一条经验法则是,无论诸如 § 4.6节讨论的样式作者命令是否存在,所有的工作都是在一个大的编组内进行的,因为本宏包的作者接口都是局部的。当存在参考文献数据时,至少存在一个额外的编组,下面是一些基本规则:

• 由\printbibliography或类似命令打印的整个文献表是在一个编组中处理。表中的每个条目都是在一个额外的编组中,这一编组包含了\defbibenvironment的(item code)和所有的驱动代码。

- 由\printbiblist命令打印的整个文献表是在一个编组中处理。
 表中的每个条目都是在一个额外的编组中,这一编组包含了\defbibenvironment的(item code)和所有的驱动代码。
- 所有由\DeclareCiteCommand命令定义的标注命令都是在一个编组中处理,该编组包含由〈precode〉、〈sepcode〉、〈loopcode〉,和〈postcode〉等参数构成的完整标注代码。每词执行的〈loopcode〉都包含在一个额外的编组中。如果指定了任何的〈wrapper〉,包含〈wrapper〉代码和标注代码的整个单元都在一个额外的编组中。
- 除了由\DeclareCiteCommand定义的所有后端命令会产生编组外,所有的'autocite' 和 'multicite' 定义也都会产生一个额外的编组。
- \printfile, \printtext, \printfield, \printlist, 和\printnames命令也形成 编组。这意味着所有的格式化指令都是在它们自身的编组中处理。
- 所有的lbx文件都是在一个编组中加载和处理。如果一个lbx文件包含的代码不是\DeclareBibliographyExtras的一部分,那么该定义是全局的。

注意: 在标注和著录样式中使用\aftergroup是不可靠的,因为在一定环境中应用的编组的精确层数在宏包的未来版本中可能发生变化。上述说明中如果说某些东西在一个编组中处理,这意味着至少存在一个编组,也可能存在多层嵌套的编组。

4.11.10 命名空间

为减小命名冲突的风险,LaTeX 宏包通常在其内部宏名前加上一个代表该宏包的短字符串。例如: 如果foobar宏包需要一个内部使用的宏,它通常会命名为\FB@macro或\foo@macro而不是\macro or \@macro。下面是 Biblatex 使用或推荐使用的前缀字符串:

- blx 所有的宏名像\blx@name的宏严格作为内部使用。这也应用于计数器名,长度名,布尔开关等。这些宏可能会以非后向兼容的方式改变,它们可能会重命名设置删除掉而不会有更多的说明。这种改变也不会在版本修改历史和版本发布信息中出现。简而言之: 不要在任何样式中使用以 blx 字符串开头的宏。
- abx 以 abx 为前缀的宏也是内部使用,但会相当稳定。但仍应优先使用正式的作者接口提供的工具,当有些情况下使用某一 abx 宏可能会比较方便。
- bbx 建议在著录样式中内部使用的宏名的前缀
- cbx 建议在标注样式中内部使用的宏名的前缀
- lbx 建议在本地化模型中内部使用的宏名的前缀。本地化模型需要添加第二个前缀来指定语言,比如一个为西班牙语本地化模型定义的内部宏可以命名为\lbx@es@macro。

附录 Appendix

A 驱动层的默认数据源映射

These are the driver default source mappings.

A.1 bibtex

The bibtex driver is of course the most comprehensive and mature of the Biblatex/Biber supported data formats. These source mapping defaults are how the aliases from sections § 2.1.2 and § 2.2.5 are implemented.

```
\DeclareDriverSourcemap[datatype=bibtex]{
  \map{
    \step[typesource=conference, typetarget=inproceedings]
    \step[typesource=electronic, typetarget=online]
    \step[typesource=www,
                                typetarget=online]
  }
  \map{
    \step[typesource=mastersthesis, typetarget=thesis, final]
    \step[fieldset=type,
                                    fieldvalue=mathesis]
  }
  \map{
    \step[typesource=phdthesis, typetarget=thesis, final]
    \step[fieldset=type,
                              fieldvalue=phdthesis]
  }
  \map{
    \step[typesource=techreport, typetarget=report, final]
    \step[fieldset=type,
                               fieldvalue=techreport]
  }
    \step[fieldsource=address,
                                     fieldtarget=location]
    \step[fieldsource=school,
                                     fieldtarget=institution]
    \step[fieldsource=annote,
                                     fieldtarget=annotation]
    \step[fieldsource=archiveprefix, fieldtarget=eprinttype]
    \step[fieldsource=journal,
                                     fieldtarget=journaltitle]
    \step[fieldsource=primaryclass, fieldtarget=eprintclass]
    \step[fieldsource=key,
                                     fieldtarget=sortkey]
    \step[fieldsource=pdf,
                                     fieldtarget=file]
  }
}
```

B 默认继承设置 Default Inheritance Setup

The following table shows the Biber cross-referencing rules defined by default. Please refer to §§ 2.4.1 4.5.11 for explanation.

Types		Fields		
Source	Target	Source	Target	
*	*	ids	-	
		crossref	-	
		xref	-	
		entryset	-	
		entrysubtype	-	
		execute	-	
		label	-	
		options	-	
		presort	-	
		related	-	
		relatedoptions	-	
		relatedstring	-	
		relatedtype	-	
		shorthand	-	
		shorthandintro		
		sortkey		
mvbook, book	inbook, bookinbook, suppbook	author	author	
		author	bookauthor	
mvbook	book, inbook, bookinbook, suppbook	title	maintitle	
		subtitle	mainsubtitle	
		titleaddon	maintitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	
mvcollection,	collection, reference, incollection,	title	maintitle	
mvreference	inreference, suppcollection	subtitle	mainsubtitle	
		titleaddon	maintitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	
mvproceedings	proceedings, inproceedings	title	maintitle	
		subtitle	mainsubtitle	
		titleaddon	maintitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	
book	inbook, bookinbook, suppbook	title	booktitle	
		subtitle	booksubtitle	
		titleaddon	booktitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	

Types		Fields		
Source	Target	Source	Target	
collection, refer	rence incollection, inreference, suppcollection	title	booktitle	
		subtitle	booksubtitle	
		titleaddon	booktitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	
proceedings	inproceedings	title	booktitle	
		subtitle	booksubtitle	
		titleaddon	booktitleaddon	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	
periodical	article, suppperiodical	title	journaltitle	
		subtitle	journalsubtitle	
		shorttitle	-	
		sorttitle	-	
		indextitle	-	
		indexsorttitle	-	

C 默认的排序方式

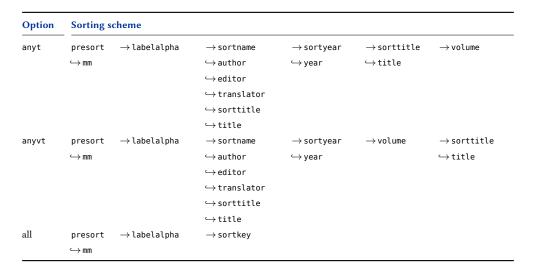
C.1 Alphabetic Schemes 1

The following table shows the standard alphabetic sorting schemes defined by default. Please refer to \S 3.5 for explanation.

Option	Sorting s	scheme			
nty	presort	ightarrow sortname	ightarrow sorttitle	ightarrow sortyear	ightarrow volume
	$\hookrightarrow mm$	\hookrightarrow author	\hookrightarrow title	\hookrightarrow year	
		\hookrightarrow editor			
		$\hookrightarrow \texttt{translator}$			
		\hookrightarrow sorttitle			
		\hookrightarrow title			
nyt	presort	$\rightarrow \texttt{sortname}$	ightarrow sortyear	ightarrow sorttitle	ightarrow volume
	$\hookrightarrow mm$	\hookrightarrow author	\hookrightarrow year	\hookrightarrow title	
		\hookrightarrow editor			
		$\hookrightarrow \texttt{translator}$			
		\hookrightarrow sorttitle			
		\hookrightarrow title			
nyvt	presort	$\rightarrow \texttt{sortname}$	ightarrow sortyear	$\to {\tt volume}$	ightarrow sorttitle
	$\hookrightarrow mm$	\hookrightarrow author	\hookrightarrow year		\hookrightarrow title
		\hookrightarrow editor			
		$\hookrightarrow \texttt{translator}$			
		\hookrightarrow sorttitle			
		\hookrightarrow title			
all	presort	ightarrow sortkey			
	\hookrightarrow mm				

C.2 Alphabetic Schemes 2

The following table shows the alphabetic sorting schemes for alphabetic styles defined by default. Please refer to § 3.5 for explanation.



C.3 Chronological Schemes

The following table shows the chronological sorting schemes defined by default. Please refer to § 3.5 for explanation.

Option	Sorting s	cheme			
ynt	presort	ightarrow sortyear	ightarrow sortname	ightarrow sorttitle	
	$\hookrightarrow mm$	\hookrightarrow year	\hookrightarrow author	\hookrightarrow title	
		\hookrightarrow 9999	\hookrightarrow editor		
			\hookrightarrow translator		
			\hookrightarrow sorttitle		
			\hookrightarrow title		
ydnt	presort	ightarrow sortyear (desc.)	ightarrow sortname	ightarrow sorttitle	
	$\hookrightarrow mm$	\hookrightarrow year (desc.)	\hookrightarrow author	\hookrightarrow title	
		\hookrightarrow 9999	\hookrightarrow editor		
			\hookrightarrow translator		
			\hookrightarrow sorttitle		
			\hookrightarrow title		
all	presort	ightarrow sortkey			
	$\hookrightarrow mm$				

D biblatexml

The biblatexml XML datasource format is designed to be an extensible and modern data source format for Biblatex users. There are limitations with BibTeX format .bib files, in particular one might mention UTF-8 support and name formats. Biber goes some way to addressing the UTF-8 limitations by using a modified version of the btparse C library but the rather archaic name parsing rules for BibTeX are hard-coded and specific to simple Western names.

biblatexml is an XML format for bibliographic data. When Biber either reads or writes biblatexml format datasources, it automatically writes a RelaXNG XML schema for the datasources which is dynamically generated from the active Biblatex datamodel. There is no static schema for biblatexml datasources because the allowable fields etc. depend on the data model. The format of biblatexml datasources is relatively self-explanatory—it is usually only necessary to generate a biblatexml datasource from existing BibTeX format datasources (using Biber's 'tool' mode) in order to understand the format. Biber also allows users to validate biblatexml datasources against the data model generated schema.

Since the biblatexml format is XML and depends on the data model and the data model is extensible by the user (see § 4.5.4), the biblatexml format can deal with extensions that BibTeX format data sources cannot, e.g. new nameparts, options at sub-entry scope. Since it is an XML format, it is relatively easy to transform it into other XML formats or HTML using standard XML processing libraries and tools.

Here is an explanation of the format with examples. By convention, biblatexml files have a .bltxml extension and kpsewhich understands this file extension.

D.1 Header

biblatexml files begin with the standard XML header:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
```

The schema model, type and schema type namespace are given in the following line:

When Biber generates biblatexml data sources, it automatically adds this line and points the schema model (href) attribute at the automatically generated RelaXNG XML schema for ease of validation.

D.2 Body

The body of a biblatexml data source looks like:

```
<bltx:entries
  xmlns:bltx="http://biblatex-biber.sourceforge.net/biblatexml">
  <bltx:entry id="" entrytype="">
  </bltx:entry>
  .
  .
  .
  .
  .
  .
```

```
<bltx:entry id="" entrytype="">
</bltx:entry>
</bltx:entries>
```

The body is one or more entry elements inside the top-level entries element and everything is in the bltx namespace. An entry has an id attribute corresponding to a BibTeX entry key and a entrytype attribute corresponding to a BibTeX entrytype. For example, the biblatexml

Corresponds to the BibTeX .bib

```
@book{key1,
}
```

In general, the XML elements in a biblatexml format datasource file have names corresponding to the fields in the datamodel, just like BibTeX format datasources. So for example, the BibTeX format source

```
@book{key1,
    TITLE = {...},
    ISSUE = {...},
    NOTE = {...}
}
```

would be, in biblatexml

The following exceptions to this simple mapping are to be noted

D.2.1 Key aliases

Citation key aliases are specified like this:

```
<bltx:ids>
     <bltx:key>alias1</bltx:key>
     <bltx:key>alias2</bltx:key>
</bltx:ids>
```

this corresponds to the BibTeX format

```
@book{key1,
   IDS = {alias1,alias2}
}
```

D.2.2 Names

Name specifications in biblatexml are somewhat more complex in order to generalise the name handling abilities of Biblatex. The user has to be more explicit about the name parts and this allows a much great scope for the handling of different types of names and name parts. A name in biblatexml format looks like this

```
<bltx:names type="author" morenames="1" useprefix="true">
 <bltx:name gender="sm">
    <bltx:namepart type="given">
      <bltx:namepart initial="J">John</bltx:namepart>
      <bltx:namepart initial="A">Arthur</bltx:namepart>
    </bltx:namepart>
    <bltx:namepart type="family">Smith</bltx:namepart>
    <bltx:namepart type="prefix" initial="v">von</bltx:namepart>
 </bltx:name>
 <bltx:name useprefix="false">
   <bltx:namepart type="given">
      <bltx:namepart>Raymond</bltx:namepart>
    </bltx:namepart>
    <bltx:namepart type="family">Brown</bltx:namepart>
 </bltx:name>
</bltx:names>
```

A name list field is contained in the names element with the mandatory type attribute giving the name of the name list. Things to note:

• The optional morenames attribute performs the same task as the BibTeX datasource format 'and others' string at the end of a name.

- Note that optional useprefix option can be specified can be specified at the level
 of a name list or an individual name in the name list. This is impossible with
 BibTeX datasources.
- Individual names may have an optional gender attribute which must be one of those defined in the datamodel 'gender' constant list. This is currently not used by standard styles but is available in Biblatex name formats if necessary.
- A name list is composed of one or more name elements.
- Each name is composed of name parts of a type defined by the data model 'nameparts' constant.
- Each name part may have an option initial attribute which makes explicit the initial of the name part. If this is not present, Biber attempts to automatically determine the initial from the name part.
- Name parts may have name parts so that compound names can be handled.

Ignoring the biblatexml-only features, a corresponding BibTeX format datasource would look like this:

```
AUTHOR = {von Smith, John Arthur and Brown, Raymond and others}
```

D.2.3 Lists

Datasource list fields (see § 2.2.1) can be represented in two ways, depending on whether there is more than one element in the list:

```
<bltx:publisher>London</bltx:publisher>
  <bltx:location>
      <bltx:item>London</bltx:item>
        <bltx:item>Moscow</bltx:item>
      </bltx:location>
```

D.2.4 Ranges

Datasource range fields (see § 2.2.1) are represented like this:

A range field is a list of ranges, each with its own item. A range item has a start element and an optional end element, since ranges can be open-ended.

D.2.5 Dates

Datasource date fields (see § 2.2.1) can be represented in two ways, depending on whether they constitute a date range:

The type attribute on a date element corresponds to a particular type of date defined in the data model.

D.2.6 Related Entries

Related entries are specified as follows:

This corresponds to the BibTeX format:

```
@book{key1,
   RELATED = {rel2,rel2},
   RELATEDTYPE = {reprint},
   RELATEDSTRING = {Somestring},
   RELATEDOPTIONS = {skipbiblist}
}
```

As per \S 4.5.1, the string and options attributes are optional.

E 选项范围 Option Scope

The following table provides an overview of the scope (global/per-type/per-entry) of various package options.

Option	Scope				
	Load-time	Global	Per-type	Per-entry	
abbreviate	•	•			
alldates	•	•	-	_	
alldatesusetime	•	•	-	_	
alltimes	•	•	_	-	
arxiv	•	•	-	_	
nutocite	•	•	_	-	
utopunct	•	•	_	_	
utolang	•	•	_	-	
ackend	•	-	_	-	
ackref	•	•	-	_	
ackrefsetstyle	•	•	-	_	
ackrefstyle	•	•	-	_	
ibencoding	•	•	-	_	
ibstyle	•	_	_	_	
ibwarn	•	•	_	_	
lock	•	•	_	_	
itecounter	•	•	_	_	
itereset	•	•	_	_	
itestyle	•	_	_	_	
itetracker	•	•	_	_	
learlang	•	•	_	_	
atamodel	•	_	_	_	
ataonly	_	_	•	•	
ate	•	•	_	_	
abeldate	•	•	_	_	
<pre><datetype>date</datetype></pre>	•	•	_	_	
ateabbrev	•	•	_	_	
atecirca	•	•	_	_	
ateera	•	•	_	_	
ateerauto	•	•			
ateuncertain	•	•			
atezeros	•	•			
efernumbers		•			
	•	•	_	_	
oi 	•	•	_	_	
print <pre>company to inite</pre>	•	•	_	_	
<pre>(namepart>inits</pre>	•	•	_	_	
regorianstart	•	-	_	_	
yperref	•	•	_	_	
bidtracker	•	•	_	_	
demtracker	•	•	_	_	
ndexing	•	•	•	•	
sbn	•	•	_	_	
ulian	•	•	-	_	
abelalpha	•	•	•	-	
abelnamefield	-	_	_	•	
abelnumber	•	•	•	_	
abeltitle	•	•	•	_	
abeltitlefield	_	-	_	•	
abeltitleyear	•	•	•	_	
abeldateparts	•	•	•	_	
abeltime	•	•	_	_	
abeldateusetime	•	•	_	_	
<pre>(datetype>time</pre>	•	•	_	_	
<pre>(datetype>dateusetime</pre>	•	•	_	-	
anguage	•	•	_	-	
oadfiles	•	•	_	_	

Option	Scope					
	Load-time	Global	Per-type	Per-entry		
loccittracker	•	•				
maxalphanames	•	•	•	•		
naxbibnames	•	•	•	•		
naxcitenames	•	•	•	•		
naxitems	•	•	•	•		
naxnames	•	•	•	•		
naxparens	•	•	_	_		
ncite	•	-	_	_		
ninalphanames	•	•	•	•		
ninbibnames	•	•	•	•		
nincitenames	•	•	•	•		
nincrossrefs	•	•	-	-		
ninxrefs	•	•	-	-		
ninitems	•	•	•	•		
innames	•	•	•	•		
natbib	•	-	_	-		
noinherit	-	_	_	•		
otetype	•	•	_	_		
pcittracker	•	•	_	_		
ppenbib	•	•	_	_		
pagetracker	•	•	_	_		
parentracker	•	•	_	_		
unctfont	•	•	_	_		
efsection	•	•	_	_		
efsegment	•	•	_	_		
afeinputenc	•	•	-	-		
econds	•	•	-	-		
ingletitle	•	•	•	-		
kipbib	-	_	•	•		
kipbiblist	-	_	•	•		
kiplab	-	_	•	•		
ortcase	•	•	_	_		
ortcites	•	•	-	_		
orting	•	•	_	_		
ortnamekeyscheme	-	_	_	•		
ortlocale	•	•	-	_		
ortlos	•	•	_	_		
ortupper	•	•	_	_		
tyle	•	-	_	_		
erseinits	•	•	_	_		
exencoding .	•	•	_	_		
imezeros	•	•	_	_		
imezones	•	•	-	-		
niquelist	•	•	•	•		
niquename	•	•	•	•		
niquetitle	•	•	•	_		
niquebaretitle	•	•	•	_		
niquework 	•	•	•	_		
niqueprimaryauthor	•	•	_	_		
rl	•	•	_	_		
seprefix se <name></name>	•	•	•	•		

F 更新历史

This revision history is a list of changes relevant to users of this package. Changes of a more technical nature which do not affect the user interface or the behavior of the package are not included in the list. More technical details are to be found in the CHANGES.org file. The numbers on the right indicate the relevant section of this manual.

3.7	2016-	12-08
•••		

Corrected default for \bibdateeraprefix
Added \DeclareSortInclusion
Added \relateddelim <relatedtype></relatedtype>
3.6 2016-09-15
Corrected some documentation and fixed a bug with labeldate localisation strings.
3.5 2016-09-10
Added \ifuniquebaretitle test
Documented \labelnamesource and \labeltitlesource 4.2.4.1
Added \bibdaterangesep
Added refsection option to \DeclareSourcemap 4.5.3
Added suppress option to inheritance specifications 4.5.11
Added \ifuniquework
Changed \DeclareStyleSourcemap so that it can be used multiple times $4.5.3$
Added \forcezerosy and \forcezerosmdt
$^{ m Changed}$ \mkdatezeros to \mkyearzeros, \mkmonthszeros and \mkdayzeros . $4.10.4$
Added namehash and fullhash for all name list fields
Generalised giveninits option to all nameparts
Added inits option to \DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme 4.5.6
Added \DeclareLabelalphaNameTemplate
Added full EDTF Levels 0 and 1 compliance for parsing and printing times 2.3.8
Changed dates to be fully EDTF Levels 0 and 1 compliant. Associated tests and localisation strings
Added timezeros
Added mktimezeros
Changed iso8601 to edtf
Added \DeclareUniquenameTemplate 4.11.4
Removed experimental RIS support

sortnamekeyscheme and useprefix can be now be set per-namelist and per-nam	
Added \DeclareDelimcontextAlias	??
Added Estonian localisation (Benson Muite)	
Reference contexts may now be named	3.7.10
Added notfield step in Sourcemaps	4.5.3
3.4 2016-05-10	
Added \ifcrossrefsource and \ifxrefsource	4.6.2
Added data annotation feature	3.6
Added package option minxrefs	3.1.2.1
Added \ifuniqueprimaryauthor and associated global option	4.6.2
Added \DeprecateField, \DeprecateList and \DeprecateName $\ldots \ldots$	4.4.1
Added \ifcaselang	4.6.2
Added \DeclareSortTranslit	4.5.6
Added uniquetitle test	4.6.2
Added \namelabeldelim	3.10.1
New starred variants of the \assignrefcontext* macros	3.7.10
New context-sensitive delimiter interface	??
Moved prefixnumbers option to \newrefcontext and renamed to labelprefix	3.7.10
Added \DeclareDatafieldSet	4.5.2
3.3 2016-03-01	
New macros for auto-assignment of refcontexts	3.7.10
Schema documentation for biblatexml	D
Sourcemapping documentation and examples for biblatexml	4.5.3
Changes for name formats to generalise available name parts	4.4.2
useprefix can now be specified per-namelist and per-name in biblatexml datasources	
New sourcemapping options for creating new entries dynamically and looping map steps	
Added noalphaothers and enhanced name range selection in \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate	455
Added \DeclareDatamodelConstant	
Renamed firstinits and sortfirstinits	1.3.4
	456

Removed messy experimental endnote and zoterordf support for Biber
$Added \verb \nonameyeardelim$
Added \extpostnotedelim
3.2 2015-12-28
Added pstrwidth and pcompound to <code>\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate</code> $4.5.5$
Added \AtEachCitekey
3.1 2015-09
Added \DeclareNolabel
Added \DeclareNolabelwidthcount
3.0 2015-04-20
Improved Danish (Jonas Nyrup) and Spanish (ludenticus) translations
labelname and labeltitle are now resolved by Biblatex instead of Biber for more flexibility and future extensibility
New \entryclone sourcemap verb for cloning entries during sourcemapping 4.5.3
New \pernottype negated per-type sourcemap verb $\dots \dots \dots$
New range calculation command \frangelen 4.6.4
New bibliography context functionality
Name lists in the data model now automatically create internals for ∞ tests and booleans
2.9a 2014-06-25
resetnumbers now allows passing a number to reset to
2.9 2014-02-25
Generalised shorthands facility
Sorting locales can now be defined as part of a sorting scheme 4.5.6
$Added \ sortinithash \ \ldots \ $
Added Slovene localisation (Tea Tušar and Bogdan Filipič)
$Added \verb \mkbib italic$
Recommend begentry and finentry bibliography macros 4.2.3
2.8a 2013-11-25
Split option language=auto into language=autocite and language=autobib . 3.1.2.1

2.8 2013-10-21 polyglossia support Corrected Dutch localisation 2.7a 2013-07-14 Bugfix - respect maxnames and uniquelist in \finalandsemicolon Corrected French localisation 2.7 2013-07-07 Added field eventtitleaddon to default datamodel and styles 2.2.2 Added \ifentryinbib, \iffirstcitekey and \iflastcitekey 4.6.2 Added postpunct special field, documented multiprenote and multipostnote special 4.3.2 Added \UseBibitemHook, \AtEveryMultiCite, \AtNextMultiCite, \UseEveryCiteHook, \UseEveryCitekeyHook, \UseEveryMultiCiteHook, \UseNextCiteHook, \UseNextCitekeyHook, \UseNextMultiCiteHook, Fixed \textcite and related commands in the numeric and verbose styles . . 3.8.2 Added multicite variants of \volcite and related commands 3.8.6 Added citation delimiter \textcitedelim for \textcite and related commands to Updated Russian localisation (Oleg Domanov) Fixed Brazilian and Finnish localisation 2.6 2013-04-30 New options for $\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate \dots 4.5.5$ Added \DeclareLabeldate and retired \DeclareLabelyear 4.5.10

Added starred variants of \citeauthor and \Citeauthor
Restored original url format. Added urlfrom localisation key 4.9.2.15
Added \AtNextBibliography
Fixed related entry processing to allow nested and cyclic related entries
Added Croatian localisation (Ivo Pletikosić)
Added Polish localisation (Anastasia Kandulina, Yuriy Chernyshov)
Fixed Catalan localisation
Added smart "of" for titles to Catalan and French localisation
Misc bug fixes
2.5 2013-01-10
Made url work as a localisation string, defaulting to previously hard-coded value 'URL'.
Changed some Biber option names to cohere with Biber 1.5.
New sourcemap step for conditionally removing entire entries 4.5.3
Updated Catalan localisation (Sebastià Vila-Marta)
2.4 2012-11-28
Added relatedoptions field
Added \DeclareStyleSourcemap
Renamed \DeclareDefaultSourcemap to \DeclareDriverSourcemap 4.5.3
Documented \DeclareFieldInputHandler, \DeclareListInputHandler and \DeclareNameInputHandler.
Added Czech localisation (Michal Hoftich)
Updated Catalan localisation (Sebastià Vila-Marta)
2.3 2012-11-01
Better detection of situations which require a Biber or 上下X re-run
New append mode for \DeclareSourcemap so that fields can be combined 4.5.3
Extended auxiliary indexing macros
Added support for plural localisation strings with relatedtype 4.5.1
Added \csfield and \usefield
Added starred variant of \usebibmacro 4.6.4
$Added \verb \ if bibmacroundef, \verb \ if field format undef, \verb \ if list format undef and \\ \verb \ if name format undef$
Added Catalan localisation (Sebastià Vila-Marta)
Misc bug fixes

2.2 2012-08-17

Misc bug fixes	
$Added \verb \revsdnamepunct $	
$Added \verb ifterseinits$	
2.1 2012-08-01	
Misc bug fixes	
Updated Norwegian localisation (Håkon Malmedal)	
Increased data model auto-loading possibilities	
2.0 2012-07-01	
Misc bug fixes	
Generalised singletitle test a little	
Added new special field extratitle year	
Customisable data model	
$Added \verb \DeclareDefaultSourcemap $	
Added labeltitle option	3
Added new special field extratitle	
Made special field labeltitle customisable	
Removed field reprinttitle	
Added related entry feature	
$Added \verb \DeclareNoinit $	
Added \DeclareNosort	
Added sorting option for \printbibliography and \printshorthands $\ \dots \ 3.7.2$	
Added ids field for citekey aliasing	
Added sortfirstinits option	3
Added data stream modification feature	
Added customisable labels feature	
Added \citeyear* and \citedate*	